特高级教师

点拨®

知识
方法
素养

本书阅读策略9招·写作技法10招



八年级 英语 下

(WY版)

含教材习题答案

吉林教育出版社

教辅资料站

电子教辅 试卷练习
知识总结 备课资源

扫码关注获取更多学习资料

特高级教师

点拨®

知识
方法
素养

八年级 英语 下 （WY 版）

主　　编：荣德基
本册主编：刘树春



提分一定有方法

吉林教育出版社

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

点拨 不只提分

这次考试你又是全班第一，有啥秘密操作呀？

《点拨》在手，高分我有。

《点拨》是什么？来给我讲讲！

来！搬板凳，记笔记！

来来来，晒晒你“朗读 敲黑板者”的范儿，分角色模仿人物表演朗读。

“敲黑板”栏目，无声的老师教我们怎么学知识。

批考点：标题作用

高度概括文章内容，是全文的线索。

“批考点”，深挖课文考点。

“阅读策略”，解密阅读题的答题方法。

“符号标注”，我养成了“读书必标注”的好习惯哦！

【句法分析】two hours 表示时间时视为一个整体，作主语时谓语动词用单数形式。

eg: Three years is a short time.

You have to study hard.

敲黑板 注意：英语中表示时间、距离、金额、度量等的词语作主语时，通常视作一个整体，谓语动词要用单数形式。

“文字批注”，既锻炼我的思维能力，也提高了我的语言表达能力哦！

阅读策略

推理判断法（应用于阅读理解中的深层理解题。做这类题时，我们需要纵观全文，理清文章脉络，推断作者意图，然后对所有的信息进行分析，推理判断出正确答案。）

拓展阅读

《点拨》一册在手，分数素养全有！

《点拨》，我要一套！

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料



目录

Module 1 Feelings and impressions

魔法六维导图 …… 1

记忆大师 …… 1

Unit 1 It smells delicious. …… 3

Unit 2 I feel nervous when I speak Chinese. …… 9

Unit 3 Language in use …… 18

素养：如何摆脱语言不通的尴尬（embarrassment） …… 17

Module 2 Experiences

魔法六维导图 …… 27

记忆大师 …… 27

Unit 1 I've also entered lots of speaking competitions. …… 29

Unit 2 They have seen the Pyramids. … 36

Unit 3 Language in use …… 45

素养：英雄们的经历 …… 39

Module 3 Journey to space

魔法六维导图 …… 54

记忆大师 …… 54

Unit 1 Has it arrived yet? …… 56

Unit 2 We have not found life on any other planets yet. …… 62

Unit 3 Language in use …… 70

素养：中国探月（CLEP）知多少 …… 65

Module 4 Seeing the doctor

魔法六维导图 …… 77

记忆大师 …… 77

Unit 1 I haven't done much exercise since I got my computer. …… 79

Unit 2 We have played football for a year now. …… 85

Unit 3 Language in use …… 92

素养：注意健康睡眠 …… 90

Module 5 Cartoons

魔法六维导图 …… 101

记忆大师 …… 101

Unit 1 It's time to watch a cartoon. … 103

Unit 2 Tintin has been popular for over eighty years. …… 109

Unit 3 Language in use …… 117

素养：学会笑对生活 …… 107

Revision module A …… 126

Module 6 Hobbies

魔法六维导图 …… 132

记忆大师 …… 132

Unit 1 Do you collect anything? …… 134

Unit 2 Hobbies can make you grow as a person. …… 140

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 3 Language in use ····· 147
素养：养成讲卫生的好习惯····· 136
培养多读书、读好书的爱好····· 143

Module 7 Summer in Los Angeles

魔法六维导图····· 156
记忆大师····· 156
Unit 1 Please write to me and send me some photos! ····· 158
Unit 2 Fill out our form and come to learn English in Los Angeles!··· 164
Unit 3 Language in use ····· 173
素养：汉语桥 ····· 167

Module 8 Time off

魔法六维导图····· 182
记忆大师····· 182
Unit 1 I can hardly believe we're in the city centre. ····· 184
Unit 2 We thought somebody was moving about. ····· 191
Unit 3 Language in use ····· 199
素养：探索奇观（wonders）之美 ····· 194

Module 9 Friendship

魔法六维导图····· 207
记忆大师····· 207
Unit 1 Could I ask if you've mentioned this to her? ····· 209
Unit 2 I believe that the world is what you think it is. ····· 217
Unit 3 Language in use ····· 225
素养：培养“交际能力”素养····· 215

Module 10 On the radio

魔法六维导图····· 234
记忆大师····· 234
Unit 1 I hope that you can join us one day. ····· 236
Unit 2 It seemed that they were speaking to me in person. ····· 241
Unit 3 Language in use ····· 249
素养：世界著名广播公司 ····· 245
Revision module B ····· 258

参考答案及点拨 ····· 265
教材习题参考答案 ····· 272

微信公众号
教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料



全书考点索引

单词（按字母顺序排列）

above …… 196
active …… 89
afford …… 32
allow …… 189
almost …… 202
alone …… 68
another …… 22
appear …… 121
as …… 114
avoid …… 239
believe …… 188
certain …… 170
communicate …… 68
crazy …… 160
create …… 115
daily …… 90
director …… 238
discover …… 59
dream …… 32
else …… 22
encourage …… 144
enjoy …… 16
enough …… 68
enter …… 31
even …… 221
ever …… 31
exercise …… 83
expect …… 114
explain …… 212
famous …… 188
farther …… 60
fifteen-year-old …… 40
fight …… 105
fill …… 171
glasses …… 15
hardly …… 187
headache …… 81
health …… 83
hero …… 106
hidden …… 222
honest …… 230
hope …… 14
human …… 195
humorous …… 106
hurt …… 81
ill …… 81
impossible …… 67
include …… 223
interest …… 144
interview …… 239
introduce …… 214
invite …… 34
just …… 58
keep …… 151
last …… 168
latest …… 59
laugh …… 107
lead …… 113
list …… 160
lovely …… 6
lucky …… 8
mean …… 238
mention …… 213
mess …… 114
message …… 13
miss …… 42
mix …… 42
move …… 41
much …… 22
must …… 137
national …… 239
need …… 33
nervous …… 16
news …… 59
none …… 67
nor …… 203
own …… 115
pass …… 221
path …… 197
patient …… 214
perhaps …… 91
pleasure …… 145
practise …… 177
prefer …… 170
progress …… 169
promise …… 195
proud …… 16
provide …… 169
pull …… 197
purpose …… 247
quite …… 14
realise …… 254
refuse …… 213
regret …… 214
return …… 73
satisfy …… 116
seem …… 246
send …… 41
separate …… 212
share …… 229
shelf …… 137
silence …… 221
since …… 82
sleepy …… 90
somebody …… 196
somewhere …… 136
sound …… 8
spend …… 15
success …… 145
suggestion …… 223
surprise …… 229
total …… 162
touch …… 222
treat …… 213
trust …… 222
until …… 229
valuable …… 137
waste …… 189
wear …… 15
weigh …… 161
while …… 196
win …… 32
with …… 138
without …… 121
yet …… 58

短语（按字母顺序排列）

a bit …… 7
a bit of …… 136
as a result …… 145
as well as …… 116
as…as …… 73
at the end of… …… 161
at the moment …… 40
be able to …… 177
be done …… 7
be harmful to …… 83
be popular with …… 121
be sure …… 8
be up to …… 58

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料



can't help doing sth. …… 106
can't wait to do sth. …… 14
catch a cold …… 82
close down …… 253
close to …… 246
count down …… 43
day by day …… 222
depend on …… 169
ever since ……115
far away …… 60
feel sure of oneself …… 214
find it+*adj.*+to do sth. …… 42
get lost …… 202
had better …… 162
have a look …… 137
have a problem with... …… 212
have a try …… 7
have a wonderful time …… 49
have fun …… 229
hear from... …… 14
how long …… 43
hundreds of millions of …… 66
in a few days …… 16
in hospital …… 96
in order to do sth. …… 60
in person …… 247
in the 1980s ……115
join in …… 215
keep doing sth. …… 106
keep sb./sth.+*adj.* …… 49
look down at …… 246
look forward to …… 43
make up …… 34
not only…but also… …… 151
not…any more …… 202
not…but… …… 247
on air …… 239
on the way …… 96
once a week …… 247
one of… …… 40
point out …… 189
run out of …… 151
search for …… 61
set up …… 96
show sb. around …… 238
show sb. sth. …… 138
so far …… 42
so…that… …… 186
some…others… …… 144
stay in touch (with sb.) …… 170
take part in …… 89
take up …… 188
take your temperature …… 82
thanks for... …… 13
the rest of... …… 50
the Robinsons …… 41
three times a day …… 83
tidy up …… 136
try out …… 177
turn off …… 96
wake up …… 196
what's more …… 49
win the heart of sb. ……113

句型（按字母顺序排列）

Could I speak to…,please? …211
I'm afraid +(that) 从句 …… 6
It is+*adj.*+of sb.+to do sth. … 253
It's time to do sth. …… 105
That's a pity. …… 33
What a delicious smell! …… 5
Why don't we…? …… 90
Would you like to do sth.? …… 5

辨析（按本书页码排列）

辨析：lively 与 lovely …… 6
辨析：a bit 与 a little …… 7
辨析：sound 与 sound like … 8
辨析：wear，put on，have… on，dress …… 15
辨析：spend，pay，cost 与 take …… 15
辨析：else 和 other …… 22
辨析：how long，how soon，how often …… 43
辨析：one，it 与 that …… 50
辨析：just 和 just now …… 58
辨析：yet 和 already …… 59
辨析：discover，find …… 59
辨析：far away 与 faraway … 60
辨析：search，search for …… 61
辨析：none 和 no one …… 67
辨析：alone 与 lonely …… 68
辨析：ill 和 sick …… 81
辨析：hurt，injure 与 wound 81
辨析：since 和 for …… 82
辨析：have a cold 和 catch a cold …… 82
辨析：sleepy，sleep 与 asleep 90
辨析：perhaps，probably，possibly 和 maybe …… 91
辨析：in hospital 和 in the hospital …… 96
辨析：laugh 与 smile …… 107
辨析：create，discover 与 invent ……115
辨析：satisfied 和 satisfying …116
辨析：must，may 和 can't … 137
辨析：with 与 in …… 138
辨析：pleasure，pleasant，pleased …… 145
辨析：keep，borrow 与 lend … 151
辨析：at the end of，in the end 和 by the end of …… 161
辨析：can 与 be able to …… 177
辨析：so…that 与 such… that …… 187
辨析：hardly 与 hard …… 187
辨析：believe 与 believe in… 188
辨析：be famous for，be famous as 与 be famous to … 188
辨析：point out，point to 与 point at …… 189
辨析：above，over 与 on … 196
辨析：path，road 与 street 197
辨析：separate 与 divide … 212
辨析：join，join in 与 take part in …… 215
辨析：pass 与 past …… 221
辨析：suggestion 与 advice … 223

语法（按本书页码排列）

表示感官的系动词（M1） … 23
现在完成时（1）（M2） …… 50
现在完成时（2）（M3） …… 74
现在完成时（3）（M4） …… 97
几种时态的区分（M5） … 122
简单句的基本句型（M6）… 152
并列复合句（M7） …… 178
that 引导的宾语从句（M8）… 203
whether/if 及疑问词引导的宾语从句（M9） …… 230
宾语从句的时态（M10）… 254

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

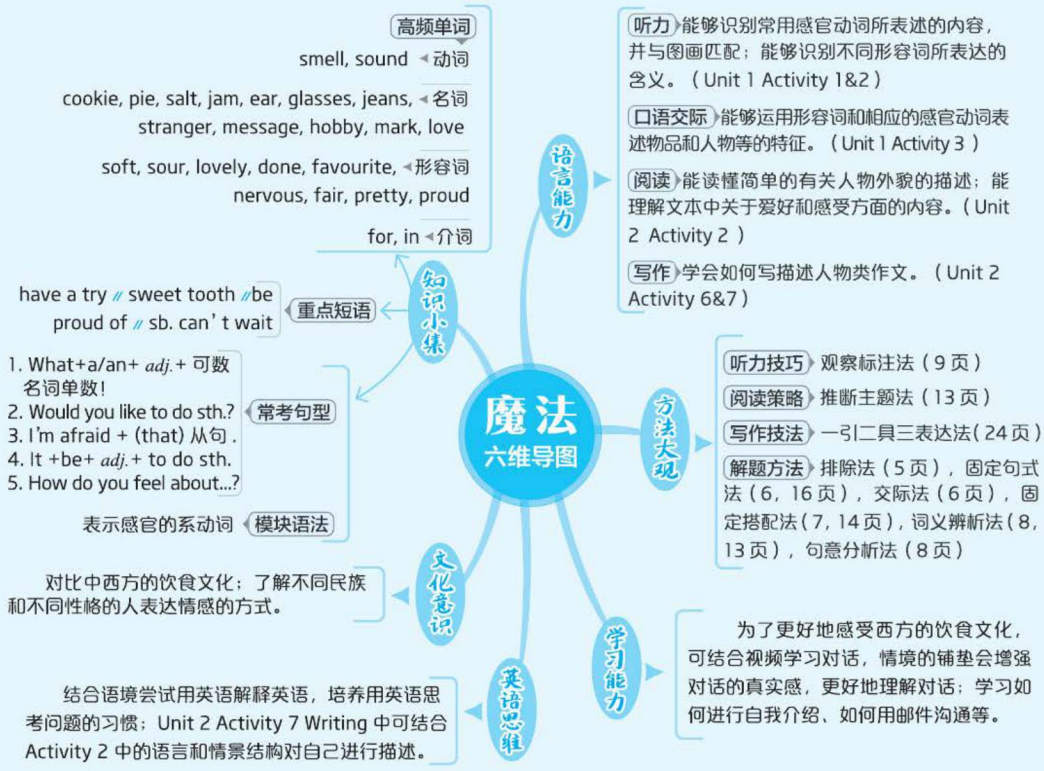
三步阅读学习法

课标中 对“读”的要求		1. 能根据上下文和构词法推断、理解生词的含义。 2. 能理解段落中各句子之间的逻辑关系。 3. 能找出文章中的主题，理解故事的情节，预测故事情节的发展和可能的结局。 4. 能读懂相应水平的常见体裁的读物。 5. 能根据不同的阅读目的运用简单的阅读策略获取信息。 6. 能利用词典等工具书进行阅读。 7. 课外阅读量应累计达到 15 万词以上。
课标中 对“写”的要求		1. 能根据写作要求，收集、准备素材。 2. 能独立起草短文、短信等，并在教师的指导下进行修改。 3. 能使用常见的连接词表示顺序和逻辑关系。 4. 能简单描述人物或事件。 5. 能根据图示或表格写出简单的段落或操作说明。
考情分析		阅读技能和写作技能是英语学科考试主要考查的两项内容，且阅读量近年来呈上升趋势，在有些省份的中考中写作分数所占的百分比也有所增加。阅读方面要求学生具有理解各种题材和体裁的书面材料并从各种材料中获取信息的能力，写作上要求学生具有运用所学语言知识与技能进行信息沟通、再现生活经历、描述周围事物、发表意见和观点的能力。简言之，就是要求学生在大量的语言材料有效输入与积累的基础上有可观的输出。
目　的		三步阅读学习法——整体式语篇学习法的目的是让学生在完整的语境中感知文本，在阅读中解读语言所表达的含义，在实际交流中体会语言所起的作用。从而提高学生的阅读技能、培养学生的阅读策略及自主阅读能力。
三步 阅读学习法	读前	有创意的读前活动是阅读课的导入关键，学生通过参与一些与课文话题相关的活动，激活了思维，从而产生阅读的愿望，并对课文进行有效的预测。
	读中	通过围绕 scanning，skimming 和 detailed reading 设置的一系列的活动，学生学会在阅读中思考，并逐步掌握一些阅读技巧，真正提高阅读水平。
	读后	阅读后的说和写活动是检查阅读理解效果和巩固运用语言材料的阶段。学生可通过复述、续写、缩写、改写、创写等读后活动，实现从语言输入到输出的迁移。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Module 1 Feelings and impressions

词汇表听写



记忆大师

Unit 1 It smells delicious.

必背单词

1.smell *v.* 有……的气味；闻；闻出 →smelled/smelt（过去式）→smelled/smelt（过去分词）

2.soft *adj.* 软的；柔软的 →softly *adv.* 软地，柔软地

3.lovely *adj.* 令人愉快的；可爱的 →love *n.* 爱 →*v.* 喜爱

4.done *adj.* 做完的 →do *v.* 做

5.try *n.* 尝试；努力 →*v.* 尝试 →tried（过去式）→tried（过去分词）

6.sound *v.* 听起来；令人觉得 →*n.* 声音

7.salt *n.* 盐；食盐 →salty *adj.* 咸的

8.favourite *n.* 最喜欢的人或事 →*adj.* 最喜欢的

9.sour *adj.* 酸的；馊的

10.cookie *n.* 小甜饼；曲奇饼

11.pizza *n.* 比萨饼

12.pie *n.* 馅饼；派

13.jam *n.* 果酱

必背短语

14.on top 在顶端，在上面

15.a bit 有点儿

16.have a try 尝一尝；试试看

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

17.in the middle 在中间

18.lots of 许多

19.make an apple pie 做个苹果派

20.be sure 确信

必背句子

21.**What** a delicious **smell**! 多好闻的气味啊！

22.**Would** you **like** to try some? 你想尝一些吗?

23.**I'm afraid** I don't like cheese. 恐怕我不喜欢奶酪。

24.It's my **lucky** day! 今天是我的幸运日！

Unit 2 I feel nervous when I speak Chinese.

必背单词

1.**nervous** *adj.* 情绪不安的；紧张的→more nervous（比较级）更紧张的→most nervous 最紧张的

2.**pretty** *adj.* 秀丽的；标致的→prettier（比较级）更秀丽的；更标致的→prettiest（最高级）最秀丽的；最标致的

3.**proud** *adj.* 感到自豪的，感到骄傲的→pride *n.* 自豪；骄傲

4.**stranger** *n.* 陌生人→strange *adj.* 陌生的，奇怪的

5.**hobby** *n.* 业余爱好→hobbies *pl.*

6.**glasses** *n.* [用复数]眼镜

7.**jeans** *n.* [用复数]牛仔裤

8.**fair** *adj.*（头发）金色的，浅褐色的

9.**message** *n.* 电子邮件；口信；信息

必背短语

10.hear from... 收到……的来信

11.can't wait 等不及了

12.arrive at 到达

13.each other 互相

14.as well 也

15.be proud of 为……而感到自豪

16.be afraid of... 害怕……

必背句子

17.**Thanks for** your last message.

谢谢你的上一封电子邮件。

18.I'm quite tall, **with** short fair hair, and I **wear** glasses.

我相当高，梳着金色短发，而且我戴眼镜。

19.**How** do you **feel about coming** to China?

你觉得来中国怎么样?

20.But I can't **tell** you **how excited** I am about going to China!

但是我无法向你表达我要去中国的兴奋之情！

Unit 3 Language in use

必背短语

1.shake hands 握手

2.look like 看起来像

3.would like 要；想要

必背句子

4.**How** are you today?

今天你感觉如何?

5.What **is** he **like**?

他是什么性格?

6.They may be a bit **noisy** sometimes,but they are quite **friendly**.

有时他们可能有点吵，但是他们是相当友好的。

必背语法

7.It **tastes** good. 它尝起来很好。

8.You **look** very pretty. 你看起来非常漂亮。

9.It doesn't **smell** fresh. 它闻起来不新鲜。

10.I **feel** nervous when I speak Chinese.

当我讲汉语时，我感觉紧张。

微信公众号
教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 1 It smells delicious.

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

Listening and vocabulary 听力与词汇

1 Listen and number the pictures. 听录音，给图画标上序号。

课文听力1

feel 摸起来　look 看起来　smell 闻起来　soft 柔软的　sour 酸的
strong 浓的　sweet 甜的　taste 尝起来

2 Listen again and complete the sentences. 再听一遍录音完成句子。

1. The cookie *tastes sweet*. 这个小甜饼尝起来很甜。
2. The milk _____. 牛奶_____。
3. This bed _____. 这张床_____。
4. Tom _____. 汤姆_____。

3 Listen and read. 听一听，读一读。

课文朗读3

Tony: Mm... What a delicious smell/smel/! ① Your pizza looks so nice.
嗯……多香的气味啊！你的比萨饼看起来真不错。

Betty: Thanks! Would you like to try some? ② 谢谢！你想尝一些吗?

Tony: Yes, please.It looks lovely/ˈlʌvli/ ③, it smells delicious, and mm, it tastes good.
好的，请来一点。它看起来很可爱，闻起来很香，嗯，尝起来很好吃。

Daming: What's that on top? 在（比萨饼）上面那是什么?

Betty: Oh, that's cheese.Do you want to try a piece? 噢，那是奶酪。你想尝一块吗?

Daming: Ugh! No, thanks.I'm afraid I don't like cheese. ④ It doesn't smell fresh.It smells too strong and it tastes a bit ⑤ sour/ˈsaʊə/.
咳！不，谢谢。恐怕我不喜欢奶酪。它闻起来不新鲜。它闻起来太浓了，尝起来有点儿酸。

Betty: Well, my chocolate cookies/ˈkʊkiz/are done/dʌn/ ⑥ now.Have a try/traɪ/ ⑦!
哦，我的巧克力饼干现在做好了。尝尝吧!

Daming: Thanks! They taste really sweet and they feel soft/sɒft/ in the middle.
谢谢！它们尝起来真的很甜，中间感觉很柔软。

Tony: Are you cooking lots of different things? You look very busy!
你在做许多不同的东西吗？你看起来很忙!

Betty: Yes, I am! There's some pizza/ˈpiːtsə/ and some cookies, and now I'm making an apple pie and a cake.
是的，我很忙！有一些比萨饼和一些小甜饼，现在我正在做一个苹果馅饼和一个蛋糕。

Daming: Apple pie/paɪ/ sounds/saʊndz/ ⑧ nice.I have a sweet tooth, you know.Shall I get the sugar?
苹果馅饼听起来不错。我喜欢吃甜食，你是知道的。要不要我来（给你）拿糖?

Betty: Yes, please.Oh, are you sure ⑨ that's sugar? Taste it first.It might be salt/sɔːlt/!

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

好的，来点。噢，你确定那是糖吗？先尝一尝。它可能是盐！

Daming: No, it's OK.It tastes sweet.It's sugar. 不，没问题。它尝起来很甜。它是糖。

Tony: What's this? It tastes sweet too. 这是什么？它尝起来也很甜。

Betty: That's strawberry jam/dʒæm/, for/fɔː/ the cake. 那是草莓酱，为蛋糕准备的。

Daming: Good, everything tastes so sweet! It's my lucky[10] day!

真棒，所有的东西尝起来都如此甜！今天是我的幸运日！

Everyday English 日常英语

· I'm afraid ... 恐怕……

· Have a try! 尝一尝！

· It's my lucky day! 今天是我的幸运日！

Now check （√） what Betty is making. 现在用（√）标出贝蒂正在做的东西。

4 Complete the sentences with the words in the box. 用方框中的单词完成句子。

lovely 可爱的　soft 柔软的　sour 酸的
strong 浓的　sugar 糖　sweet 甜的

1. I bought a large chocolate cake,because I love _____ food.
   我买了一个大巧克力蛋糕，因为我爱_____食物。
2. Dried fish has a _____ taste.You don't need much of it in the dish.
   鱼干有一种_____味道。你的菜里不需要太多。
3. She does not put _____ in tea because she does not like sweet tea.
   她没有把_____放入茶中，因为她不喜欢甜茶。
4. The milk has gone _____ overnight, so we cannot drink it.
   牛奶过夜已经_____，所以我们不能喝。
5. The bed feels _____ and comfortable.
   这张床摸起来_____、舒服。
6. Apple pie sounds _____.It is my favourite/ˈfeɪvərət/.
   苹果派听起来_____。它是我的最爱。

5 Complete the table with the words in the boxes in Activities 1 and 4.

用活动 1 和活动 4 中方框里的单词完成表格。

Ear/ɪə/ 耳朵	*sound* 听起来	*quiet*... 安静的……
Eye 眼睛		
Hand 手		
Mouth 嘴		
Nose 鼻子		

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Pronunciation and speaking 发音与会话

6 Listen and underline the words the speaker stresses. 听并在朗读者重读的单词下画线。

1. It smells too strong and it tastes a bit sour. 它闻起来（气味）太浓了，尝起来有点儿酸。
2. They taste really sweet and they feel soft in the middle. 它们尝起来真的很甜，中间感觉很柔软。

Now listen again and repeat. 现在再听一遍，然后重复。

7 Work in pairs.Ask and answer about the things in the box.Say why you like or do not like them. 结对练习。问答有关方框中的事物。说一说你为什么喜欢或不喜欢它们。

bananas 香蕉　flowers 花　ice cream 冰激凌　pop music 流行音乐
silk T-shirts 丝绸 T 恤衫

—*Do you like bananas*? 你喜欢香蕉吗?

—*Yes, I do.They taste delicious. Do you like flowers*? 是的，我喜欢。它们尝起来好吃。你喜欢花吗?

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用　　•考点批注

★What a delicious smell!

① 本句为感叹句，感叹句的用法如下：

感叹句
- What引导：What+a/an+形容词+可数名词单数(+主语+谓语)!
- What引导：What+形容词+不可数名词/可数名词复数(+主语+谓语)!
- How引导：How+形容词/副词(+主语+谓语)!

e.g.What a clever boy! 多聪明的一个男孩啊!

What tall buildings! 多高的楼啊!

How delicious the food is! 这食物多香啊!

★巧变感叹句——"一断二加三换位"法

"一断"即在谓语后面断开，使句子分成两部分。

① He works / hard.

② He is /a good worker.

"二加"即在第二部分前加 how（强调形容词、副词）或 what（强调名词）。

① He works （how）hard.

② He is （what）a good worker.

考题在线 1 _____ special classes we had! We have learned a lot about paper cutting. [青岛]

A. What　　B. What a　　C. How a　　D. How

点拨:用排除法解题。感叹句由 what 或 how 引导，what 后跟被强调的名词（短语）；how 后跟被强调的形容词或副词。这里强调的是名词短语 special classes, 故排除 C、D 项，classes 为复数，排除 B 项。

"三换位"即把第一部分和第二部分互换位置，句号换感叹号。

① How hard he works!

② What a good worker he is!

★Would you like to try some?

② **Would you like to do sth.? 你想要做某事吗?**

Would you like to do sth.? 意为"你想要做某事吗？"带有委婉的语气，用来提出建议或发出邀请。其肯定回答常用"Yes, I'd like/love to."　"Sure, that sounds great."等；其否定回答常用"I'd like/love to, but..."等。

e.g. —Would you like to play tennis with me? 你想和我一起打网球吗?

敲黑板

Would you like...? 句型用来表示邀请或建议，此句型中可用 some，不可用 any；可用 something，不可用 anything。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

would like sth.
想要某物
would like to do sth.
想要做某事
would like sb. to do sth.
想要某人做某事

—Yes, I'd like to. 是的，我想打。/I'd like to, but I have to do my homework first. 我想打，但是我得先做家庭作业。

考题在线 2 —Would you like _____ a film with us tonight?
—Sorry,I have to help my mother do housework. [大庆]
A. see B. to see C. seeing D. to seeing
点拨:用固定句式法解题。Would you like to do sth.? 意为“你想要做某事吗？”为固定句式。

考题在线 3 —Would you like to go to Shanghai Disneyland with me in July?
—_____ [宿迁]
A. Yes, I'd like to. B. It doesn't matter.
C. Have a good time! D. You're welcome.

★lovely 是“love+ly”构成的形容词，而不是副词。常见的以-ly结尾的形容词还有：
friendly 友好的；
daily 日常的；每天的；
monthly 每月的；
motherly 慈母般的

★It looks lovely...

③ **lovely** /ˈlʌvli/ *adj.*(***very enjoyable and pleasant or very kind***) 令人愉快的；可爱的；亲切友好的

lovely 形容词，既可以修饰人，也可以修饰物。

e.g. It's a lovely day. Mrs Black is walking in the park with her lovely daughter. 今天天气真好。布莱克夫人和她可爱的女儿正在公园里散步。

一语辨异：

She made a lovely cage for her pet bird, so the lively bird can jump and sing in it. 她为她的宠物鸟制作了一个可爱的笼子，这样这只活泼的鸟就可以在里面跳跃、唱歌了。

辨析：lively 与 lovely

lively	强调“活泼，生动”等意义。
lovely	强调“可爱，令人愉快”之意。

考题在线 4 用括号内所给单词的正确形式填空。
You've been such a _____(love) couple for 30 years. [乐山改编]

★I'm afraid I don't like cheese.

④ **I'm afraid+(that) 从句**

e.g. I'm afraid (that) he won't come. 恐怕他不会来了。
—Will he be late again? 他会再次迟到吗？
—I'm afraid so/not. 恐怕会 / 不会吧。

考题在线 5 —Mum, I don't have anybody to play with. Can I have a pet?
—_____ Our apartment is too small. [自贡]
A. Why not? B. I hope so.
C. Anything else? D. I'm afraid not.
点拨:此题用交际法。根据问句提出的请求“我可以养个宠物吗？”和答语中“公寓太小”可推测是对对方请求的否定。

拓展：be afraid to do sth. 害怕做某事
be afraid of doing sth. 害怕做某事
be afraid of sth. 害怕某物

I'm afraid 意为“恐怕”，是一种提出异议、说出令人不快事实的委婉说法。

I'm afraid 之后可接 so 或 not，表示前面所提到的情况，表肯定时用 so；表否定时用 not。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★It smells too strong and it tastes a bit sour.

⑤ a bit 一点儿；有点儿

e.g. She's a bit/a little afraid of the teacher. 她有点儿怕老师。（修饰形容词）

The patient feels a bit/a little better today.
病人今天感觉好点儿了。（修饰比较级）

Will you please turn down the radio a bit/a little?
请你把收音机调低一点儿，好吗？

I've got only a bit of/a little money today.
我今天只挣了一点儿钱。（修饰不可数名词）

知识微课

★辨析：a bit 与 a little

- 相同点：作副词"稍微，有点儿"，都可以修饰形容词、副词、比较级、动词。
- 不同点：a bit 修饰不可数名词时必须用 a bit of，a little 可以直接修饰不可数名词。

考题在线 6 —Do the twins look the same?
—No, Jane is _____ taller than Claire. [长沙]
A. little B. more C. a little

点拨：考查形容词比较级的修饰词。句意为"这对双胞胎看起来一样吗？""不，简比克莱尔更高一点。" 修饰比较级的词（组）有：much, a lot, far, a little, a bit, even 等。

★Well, my chocolate cookies are done now.

⑥ be done 做好了，完成了

be done 意为"做好了，完成了"，其中 done 为形容词，意为"做完的"。

e.g. The work is done. 工作做完了。

考题在线 7 完成句子。
我的家庭作业做完了。
My homework _____ _____.

★Have a try!

⑦ have a try 试试看，尝试一下

try 是名词，意为"尝试；努力"。

e.g. I will have a try even though I fail. 哪怕失败，我也要尝试一下。

He tries to get good grades. 他努力取得好成绩。try 还可以用作动词

More and more foreigners are trying learning Chinese now.
现在越来越多的外国人尝试学中文。

I tried my best to learn English well. 我尽最大努力学好英语。

Try on your shoes to make sure they fit.
试穿一下你的鞋子，确保它们合适。

- try to do sth. 设法做某事
- try doing sth. 尝试做某事
- try one's best（to do sth.）尽某人最大努力（做某事）
- try on 试穿

考题在线 8 Chinese parents always try their best _____ a good education environment for their kids. [贵阳]
A. provide B. to provide C. providing

点拨：用固定搭配法解题。try one's best to do sth. 为固定搭配，意为"尽某人最大努力做某事"。

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料



★Apple pie sounds nice.

⑧ sound/saʊnd/ *v.* **听起来；令人觉得**

e.g. That idea sounds great. 那个主意听起来很棒。

【易错点】 辨析：sound 与 sound like

sound	系动词，意为“听起来”，其后常跟形容词作表语。	The music sounds nice. 这音乐听起来不错。
sound like	意为“听起来像”，like 为介词，其后一般跟名词或代词。	That sounds like a good idea. 那听起来像是个好主意。

考题在线 9 —Do you enjoy Chinese folk songs?

—Yes, the folk songs _____ nice. **[福建A卷改编]**

A. sound B. smell C. look

点拨：用词义辨析法解题。欣赏歌曲需要用耳朵听，sound 听起来，smell 闻起来，look 看起来。

★Oh, are you sure that's sugar?

be sure of/about sth. 对某事有把握。
be sure of doing sth. 意为“一定会做某事”，主语是人。
be sure to do sth. 意为“一定、必定会做某事”，主语不一定是人。

⑨ be sure 确定……，确信……

e.g. I'm not sure where he will go. 我不确定他要去哪里。

I am quite sure of this. 我对这事把握很大。

I left a message in order to be sure of keeping in touch with her. 我留了个口信，为了确保与她保持联系。

Be sure to come here tomorrow. 明天一定要来这里。

考题在线 10 —Are you going camping this afternoon?

—A typhoon is coming. I'm not sure _____ the road to the mountains will be closed. **【导学号：9465610】[南京]**

A. which B. what C. whether D. why

★It's my lucky day! lucky 形容词，在句中可以作表语或定语。

luck *n.* 运气
↓
lucky *adj.* 幸运的
↓
unlucky *adj.* 不幸的
↓
luckily *adv.* 幸运地
↓
unluckily *adv.* 不幸地

⑩ lucky /ˈlʌki/ *adj.* **(*having good luck*) 幸运的**

e.g. I'm lucky to have a friend like you. 我很幸运能有像你这样的朋友。

考题在线 11 There was a car accident on Xinhua Road yesterday. _____, nobody was hurt.

A. Lucky B. Luckily

C. Unlucky D. Unluckily

点拨：用句意分析法解题。由上句句意“昨天在新华路上发生了一起车祸。”及空格后句意“没有人受伤”可知答题空处应表示“很幸运”，且此处应用副词作状语。

考题在线答案 1. A 2. B 3. A 4. lovely 5. D 6. C 7. is done 8. B 9. A 10. C 11. B

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

(答案见265页)

听力技巧

观察标注法(在听力训练开始之前，应注意观察听力问题，从已给出的问题中获取有用的信息，必要时做好标注。也就是我们平时所说的“三分观察三分标，剩下四分要听好”。因此听力的很多工夫在“听”之外。)

听力过程

课文听力1

听教材 Activity 1，完成下列习题

听第一段对话，选择正确选项。

1.It tastes _____.

A.salty　　B.delicious　　C.sweet

听第二段对话，选择正确选项。

2.The milk smells _____.

A.sour　　B.good　　C.delicious

听第三段对话，选择正确选项。

3.This bed feels a bit _____.

A.hard　　B.soft　　C.smooth

听第四段对话，选择正确选项。

4.Tom looks very _____.

A.weak　　B.tall　　C.strong

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见265页)

一、根据汉语或首字母提示完成句子

1.This little cat looks l_____ and we all love it.

2.I'm _____ (确信的) that our dreams will come true through our efforts. [安徽]

3.I don't think I can do it, but I will t_____.

4.Many green fruits are _____ (酸的).

5.Xinjiang food t_____ delicious. Most people like eating it.

二、根据汉语完成句子，每空一词

6. 老师说：“别害怕犯错，我们可以从错误中吸取教训！” [兰州]

“Don't _____ _____ of making mistakes and we can learn from them!”said the teacher.

7. 有您这样的老师，我是多么幸运啊！

_____ _____ I am to have a teacher like you! [重庆]

8. 这件毛衣摸起来很软。

The sweater _____ _____.

9. 玲玲不擅长拉小提琴，但她想试一试。

Lingling isn't good at playing the violin but she wants to _____ _____ _____.

10. 我妈妈爱吃甜食。

My mother _____ _____ _____ _____.

Unit 2 I feel nervous when I speak Chinese.

课时导入

Ⅰ. 课文原文、译文及导读

原文译文·导读　　导读批注

Reading and vocabulary 阅读和词汇

批体裁：应用文

Pre-reading (读前)

1.What do you look like?

2.What are your hobbies?

3.How do you feel about going abroad?

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

批文章结构：

并列结构

- Welcome to China
  - The greeting to Lingling
  - The appearance of Sally
  - The hobbies of Sally
  - Sally's feelings about coming to China

1 **Work in pairs.Look at the pictures and describe the girls.Use the words in the box to help you.** 结对练习。看图片并描述一下女孩们。用方框中的单词帮助你。

glasses 眼镜　jeans 牛仔裤　long 长的　nervous 紧张的
fair（头发）金色的　pretty 漂亮的　proud 感到骄傲的
short 短（矮）的　stranger 陌生人　tall 高的　young 年轻的

2 **Read Sally's email and find her picture in Activity 1.**
读萨莉的邮件，并找出活动 1 中她的照片。

课文朗读 2

While-reading（读中）

1. How does Sally come to China?
2. How does Sally feel when she leaves her parents for a few days?
3. Is Sally proud of her brother? Why?

FROM: Sally 来自：萨莉

TO: Lingling 写给：玲玲

SUBJECT: Re: Welcome to China. 主题：回复：欢迎来到中国。

Hi Lingling, 玲玲，你好：

Thanks for ① your last message/ˈmesɪdʒ/ ②. It was great to hear from ③ you, and I can't wait to ④ meet you.

感谢你的上一封电子邮件。很高兴收到你的邮件，我迫不及待地想见到你。

I hope ⑤ you will know me from my photo when I arrive at the airport. I'm quite ⑥ tall, with short fair/feə/ hair, and I wear ⑦ glasses /ˈglɑːsɪz/ ⑧. I'll wear jeans/dʒiːnz/ and a T-shirt for the journey, but I'll also carry my warm coat.I've got your photo— you look very pretty /ˈprɪti/. I'm sure we'll find each other!

当我到达机场时，我希望你能根据我的照片认出我。我个子相当高，留着短短的金发，并且我戴着眼镜。这次旅行我将穿牛仔裤和 T 恤衫，不过我还拿着暖和的外套。我收到你的照片了——你看起来非常漂亮，我确信我们将找到对方！

Thanks for telling me about your hobbies/ˈhɒbiz/.You sound just like me! I spend ⑨ a lot of time playing classical music with my friends at school, but I also like dance music— I love dancing! I enjoy ⑩ sports as well, especially tennis.My brother is in/ɪn/the school tennis team — I'm very proud/praʊd/ ⑪ of him! He's good at everything, but I'm not. Sometimes I get bad marks/mɑːks/ at school, and I feel sad.I should work harder.

谢谢你告诉我有关你的业余爱好。听起来你和我很相像！我花大量的时间在学校里和朋友们演奏古典音乐，但我也喜欢舞曲——我爱跳舞！我还喜欢运动，特别是网球。我的哥哥在学校的网球队——我很为他自豪！他擅长一切，但我不

批句子赏析：

第 1 段最后一句中"and I ... to meet you"表达出作者想见到玲玲的急迫心情；第 4 段最后一句"But I ... about going to China!"则是作者对即将来到中国激动之情难以言表的体现，使感情得以升华。

第 2 段刻画 Sally 外貌，语言简洁形象，仅几个词语就如绘画素描般把人物栩栩如生地勾勒出来。quite tall, short fair hair, wear glasses, wear jeans and a T-shirt, carry my warm coat 等体现出作者深厚的语言功力。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

行。有时候在学校里我取得不好的成绩，我感觉很难过。我应该更加努力学习。

You asked me, "How do you feel about coming to China?" Well, I often feel a bit sad at first when I leave my mum and dad for a few days, and I'm quite shy when I'm with strangers/ˈstreɪndʒəz/.I feel nervous /ˈnɜːvəs/[12] when I speak Chinese, but I'll be fine in a few days[13].I'm always sorry when I don't know how to do[14] things in the right way, so please help me when I'm with you in China!Oh, I'm afraid of flying too.But I can't tell you how excited I am about going to China!

你问我，"对将要来中国感觉如何？"哦，最初，当我要离开妈妈和爸爸几天时，我经常觉得有点难过，并且与陌生人在一起时，我很害羞。当我讲汉语时，我感觉紧张，但是几天之后我就会好起来。当我不知道如何用正确的方式去做事情时，我总是很难过，所以当我和你在中国时请帮助我！噢，我也害怕坐飞机。但是我没法向你表达我对去中国的兴奋之情！

批 情感：

get bad marks at school	sad
leave my mum and dad	a bit sad
be with strangers	quite shy
speak Chinese	nervous
don't know how to do things in the right way	sorry
travel by plane	afraid

See you next week! 下周见！

Love/lʌv/, 爱你的，

Sally 萨莉

Post-reading（读后）

写作小练笔

☞（答案见23页）

3 Match the questions with the paragraphs. 将问题与段落匹配起来。

a) What are your hobbies? 你的业余爱好是什么？

b) How do you feel about coming to China? 关于来中国你的感觉如何？

c) What do you look like? 你长什么样？

4 Read the sentences. 读句子。

She's quite tall, with short fair hair, and she's wearing glasses.She's wearing a T-shirt and carrying a warm coat. 她的个子相当高，留着短短的金发，戴着眼镜。她穿着一件T恤衫，拿着一件暖和的外套。

Now describe the people.Use the sentences above to help you. 现在描述这些人。用上面的句子帮助你。

1. the girl in Picture B in Activity 1 活动1照片B中的女孩
2. your classmates 你的同班同学

Learning to learn 学会学习

Remember that talking to other people is not just speaking and understanding the language.It's how you look, how you sound and what you do.Watch people in films as they talk to others in English.Do you do the same when you talk in Chinese?

记住与别人交谈不仅仅是说话和理解语言。还要注意你的样子、你的声音和你的举止。当影片中的人物用英语和别人谈话时，观察他们。你在使用汉语谈话时也这样做吗？

5 Answer the questions. 回答问题。

How does Sally feel when she... 当萨莉……时，她感觉如何

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

1. gets bad marks at school? 在学校里取得不好的成绩?

2. leaves her mum and dad? 离开她的妈妈和爸爸?

3. is with strangers? 和陌生人在一起?

4. speaks Chinese? 讲汉语?

5. does not know how to do things in the right way? 不知道如何用正确的方法做事?

6. travels by plane? 乘飞机旅行?

6 Complete the passage with the correct form of the words in the box.

用方框中单词的正确形式完成短文。

fair 金色的　hobby 业余爱好　mark 分数　message 信息　proud 感到自豪的

Jenny is my classmate.She is pretty and has (1) _____ hair.She always gets good (2)_____ at school.She has lots of (3) _____ like playing the piano and swimming.She is also in the school tennis team.She is good at everything.One day she sent me a (4) _____.She asked me to help her with her English homework because I am good at English.She wanted my help! I was (5) _____ of myself.

珍妮是我的同班同学。她很漂亮，留着 (1)_____头发。她在学校里总是取得好的 (2)_____。她有许多的 (3)_____，像弹钢琴和游泳。她还在学校的网球队。她擅长一切。一天，她发一条 (4)_____给我。她让我帮助她做英语家庭作业，因为我擅长英语。她需要我的帮助！我为自己 (5)_____。

Writing 写作

7 Write a message to your pen friend and describe yourself.Say: 给你的笔友写一则消息来描述自己。说:

·what you look like 你的样子

I have short black hair and... 我留着短短的黑发，并且……

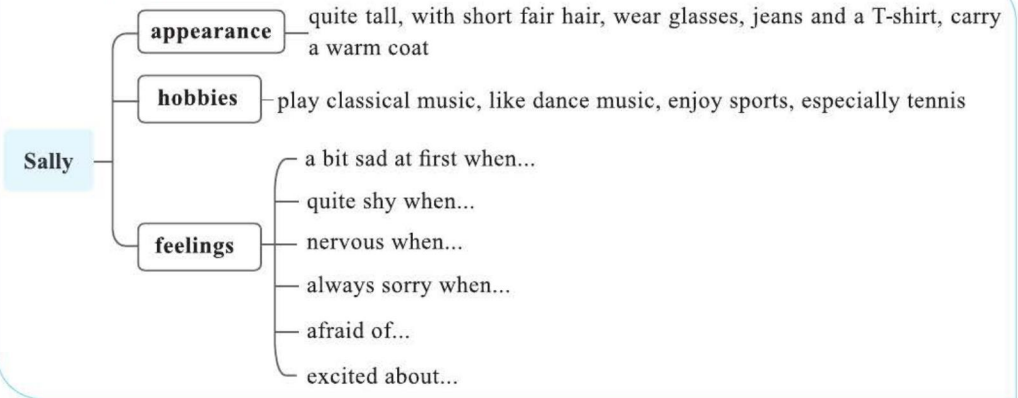
·how you feel when... 当……时，你感觉怎么样

I feel nervous when... 当……时，我感觉紧张。

·what your hobbies are 你的业余爱好

I like playing basketball and... 我喜欢打篮球和……

课文背诵指南



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读60分

(答案见265页)

阅读策略

推断主题法(在做主旨大意题时，应根据文章的内容和逻辑关系，作出符合原文的归纳、概括或评价，选出最佳答案。)

阅读过程

拓展阅读

一、速读文章，完成下面的句子

1. ⊙ Sally mainly tells Lingling about _____ in Paragraph 3.

(归纳概括题)

二、细读文章，完成下列题目

2. "Pretty" in Paragraph 2 means _____ in Chinese. (词义猜测题)

A. 秀丽的，标致的　　B. 高大的

C. 活泼的　　D. 害羞的

3. What are Sally's hobbies? (细节理解题)

A. Playing tennis and reading.

B. Playing classical music and dancing.

C. Playing and reading.

D. Playing computer games and watching TV.

4. _____ is quite tall,with short fair hair and wears glasses. (细节理解题)

A. Lucy　B. Amy　C. Lingling　D. Sally

5. How does Sally feel when she speaks Chinese? (细节理解题)

A. Sad.　　B. Nervous.

C. Proud.　　D. Happy.

☞温馨提示：本书中此板块带⊙的题均运用阅读策略中讲解的方法。

Ⅲ. 考点精讲点拨 稳拿中考基础20分

•考点应用　　•考点批注

★Thanks for your last message.

① Thanks for... 因……而感谢

thanks for...=thank you for...

e.g. Thanks for your help.=Thank you for helping me. 感谢您的帮助。

Thanks to the doctor, I am well again. 多亏这位医生，我身体又康复了。

thanks to...=because of.../with the help of... 多亏/因为……

考题在线1 —The population of the poor is getting smaller and smaller.

—_____ the government, their living conditions have improved. [宜昌]

A. As for　B. Thanks to　C. As a result of　D. Thanks for

点拨：用词义辨析法解题。As for "至于"；Thanks to "多亏，由于"；As a result of "结果是"；Thanks for "因……而感谢"。结合句意可知，"多亏政府的帮助，他们的生活条件提高了"。

get/receive a message 收到信息
leave a message 留言
send a message 发送信息
take a message 传口信

② message /'mesɪdʒ/ *n.* 电子邮件；口信；信息

e.g. I received a message from Lily. 我收到一封来自莉莉的电子邮件。

n. 电子邮件

I have an important message for you. 我有一条重要信息要告诉你。

n. 口信；信息

考题在线2 When Peter comes, please ask him to leave a _____. [呼和浩特]

A. notice　B. message　C. sentence　D. information

一语辨异：

You can search for more information about the news on the Internet. Then leave us a message. 你可以在网上搜索这条新闻的更多信息。然后给我们留个言。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

点拨：用固定搭配法解题。leave a message 意为“留言”，是固定短语。

★ hear from 相当于 get/receive a letter from sb.，hear 后不能直接跟名词 letter，e-mail 等，而 get/receive 后跟名词 letter，e-mail 等之后才能接 from sb.。

★It was great to hear from you, and I can't wait to meet you.

③ **hear from... 收到……的来信**

e.g. Did you hear from your friend last month?=Did you get/receive a letter from your friend last month? 上个月你收到你朋友的来信了吗？

考题在线 3 根据所给中文意思完成句子。

很高兴收到你的来信。

It's great to _____ _____ you. [天津]

④ **can't wait to do sth. 迫不及待做某事**

e.g. I can't wait to know the result of the exam.

我迫不及待地想知道考试结果。

We can't wait for Christmas to come.

我们等圣诞节的到来都等不及了。

★ can't wait 跟动词不定式，意为“迫不及待做某事”，如果接名词或代词时，则用 can't wait for sth.。

考题在线 4 根据汉语提示完成句子。

暑假快到了，我迫不及待想和家人去旅游了。

It's almost summer vacation. I just can't _____ to go _____ holiday with my family. [乐山]

★I hope you will know me from my photo when I arrive at the airport.

⑤ **hope** /həʊp/ *v.* **希望**

e.g. I hope you are better. 我希望你好些了。

My brother hopes that he can go to school by bus.

=My brother hopes to go to school by bus. 我弟弟希望乘公交去上学。

hope to do sth. 希望做某事
hope + that 从句 希望……
I hope so. 我希望如此。

考题在线 5 He hopes that he will be an astronaut in the future.（同义句转换）

He _____ _____ be an astronaut in the future. [乐山]

★I'm quite tall, with short fair hair, and I wear glasses.

⑥ **quite** /kwaɪt/ *adv.* **很；非常；相当**

e.g. The box is quite/very heavy. 这个箱子非常重。

quite 可修饰形容词、副词或动词，在修饰形容词或副词时相当于 very。

辨析：quite 与 very

quite	常用于“quite+a/an+ 形容词 + 可数名词单数”结构
	可以直接放在动词前修饰动词
very	常用于“a+very+ 形容词 + 可数名词单数”结构
	very 与 much 合在一起修饰动词，且一般位于句末

考题在线 6 —Would you please join us?

—Sorry, but I'm not _____. 【导学号：9465610】

A. good a quite player　　B. quite a good player

C. a quite good player　　D. quite good a player

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

⑦ **wear** /weə(r) / *v.* **穿；戴**

e.g. He always wears glasses. 他总是戴着眼镜。

辨析：wear, put on, have...on, dress

wear	表示状态，常与衣帽、鞋袜、饰品等搭配。
put on	表示动作，意为“穿上；戴上”，常与衣帽、鞋袜等搭配。
have...on	表示状态，意为“穿着；戴着”，无进行时态。
dress	后常接人作宾语，意为“给某人穿衣服”，强调动作。其常用搭配有 get dressed, dress up 等。

e.g. Put on more clothes,and don't always wear that coat/have that coat on.You should also learn to dress yourself.

多穿点衣服，不要总是穿那一件外套。你还应该学会给自己穿衣服。

考题在线 7 根据汉语意思完成句子。

戴眼镜的那位女教师中等身材。 [十堰]

The woman teacher _____ _____ is of medium build.

速记小筏：巧记不同的“穿”



表状态 wear+衣服 have+衣服+on

表动作 put on+衣服 dress+sb.

⑧ **glasses** / ˈglɑːsɪz/ *n.* **眼镜**

e.g. Mr Wang always wears a pair of glasses. 王先生总是戴着一副眼镜。

考题在线 8 根据汉语意思完成句子。

托马斯今天戴了一副眼镜，看上去很滑稽。 [盘锦]

Thomas wears _____ _____ _____ _____ today. He looks funny.

★glasses 本身是复数名词，意为“眼镜”。表示“一副眼镜”用 a pair of glasses。

★I spend a lot of time playing classical music with my friends at school...

⑨ **spend** /spend/ *v.* **花费**

辨析：spend, pay, cost 与 take

（1） +spend+  /  +on sth./(in) doing sth.

e.g. I spend lots of time on football/(in) playing football.

我在足球 / 踢足球上花费了许多时间。

（2） +pay+  +for sth.

e.g. I paid 100 *yuan* for this dress. 我买这件连衣裙花了 100 元。

（3）Sth.+cost+  +  .

e.g. The book cost me ten *yuan*. 这本书花费了我 10 元。

（4）It takes+  +  +to do sth.

e.g. It takes me half an hour to go to school. 去学校花费我半小时。

考题在线 9 We should _____ more time talking with our teachers so that they can understand us better. [贵阳]

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

A. pay　　B. spend　　C. take

点拨：用固定句式法解题。sb.+spend(s)+time+(in)doing sth. 某人花费时间做某事，为固定搭配。

★I enjoy sports as well, especially tennis.

⑩ **enjoy** /ɪnˈdʒɔɪ/ *v.*(***to get pleasure from sth.***) 喜欢

e.g. Did you enjoy MTV? 你喜欢音乐电视频道吗?

My brother enjoys reading. 我哥哥喜欢阅读。

考题在线 10 People enjoy _____ *zongzi* on the Dragon Boat Festival. [岳阳]

A. eat　　B. eating　　C. to eat

- enjoy 后常接名词、代词、动词的 -ing 形式作宾语。
- enjoy oneself (=have a good/great time) 玩得开心

★...I'm very proud of him!

⑪ **proud** /praʊd/ *adj.* 感到自豪的；感到骄傲的

e.g. Betty won at last and we were very proud of her.

贝蒂最终获胜了，我们为她感到非常骄傲。

We should take pride in the success. 我们应该对这次成功感到自豪。

考题在线 11 根据括号中所给汉语提示填空。

Our country is becoming stronger and stronger and I'm _____（自豪的）of her. [扬州]

★ pride 名词，意为"骄傲；自豪"，take pride in... 意为"为……自豪/骄傲"，同 be proud of。

★I feel nervous when I speak Chinese, but I'll be fine in a few days.

⑫ **nervous** /ˈnɜːvəs/ *adj.* 紧张的；情绪不安的

e.g. The little thing makes him nervous. 这件小事使他紧张。

考题在线 12 —I do feel a little _____ about making a speech.

—Take it easy. The more you prepare, the better you will feel. [荆州]

A. angry　　B. disappointed　　C. nervous　　D. bored

点拨：考查形容词辨析。angry 生气的；disappointed 失望的；nervous 紧张的；bored 无聊的。根据空后"演讲"和答语中"别紧张"可知演讲时感到紧张。

- feel nervous 感到紧张
- get nervous 变得焦躁不安
- make sb. nervous 使某人烦躁不安
- nervous about 对……紧张不安

⑬ **in a few days** 在几天之后

e.g. —How soon will he be back? 他多久会回来?

—In about a month. 大约在一个月之后。

考题在线 13 I'm going out. I'll be back _____ an hour. [武威]

A. at　　B. on　　C. in　　D. from

点拨：考查介词的用法。在一般将来时态的句子中，引导时间状语用介词 in，表示"……之后"。

★"in+一段时间"表示"在一段时间之后"，多用于将来时态，提问时用 how soon。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★I'm always sorry when I don't know how to do things in the right way...

⑭ “特殊疑问词 + 动词不定式”的用法

e.g. Will you please tell me what to do next? 请你告诉我下一步做什么好吗?

Please tell me how to repair the bike. (简单句)

=Please tell me how I can repair the bike. (复合句) 请告诉我怎样修理自行车。

“特殊疑问词 + 动词不定式”构成的简单句和复合句可互相转换。

考题在线 14 根据所给的汉语意思，用英语完成句子。

我们还没有决定什么时候探望爷爷奶奶。

We haven't decided _____ _____ _____ our grandparents.

[广州]

★ how to do 属于“特殊疑问词+动词不定式”结构，在句中作宾语。能跟“特殊疑问词+动词不定式”这一结构作宾语的单词(词组)有：decide, know, forget, learn, remember, show, wonder, find out, tell, explain 等。

考题在线答案 1. B 2. B 3. hear from 4. wait; on 5. hopes to 6. B 7. wearing glasses 8. a pair of glasses 9. B 10. B 11. proud 12. C 13. C 14. when to visit

核心素养之文化意识

如何摆脱语言不通的尴尬（embarrassment）

假如你要出国旅行（travel abroad），语言可能是你最担心的障碍，那么怎样才可以有一次愉快的出国之旅呢?

①简单词汇的记忆

出行之前，一定要先了解你的目的地的地理、风俗等，努力记住一些关键词（如街道名称、车站名称、景点名称），还要记住一些简单的表达，如问路(asking the way)、点餐(taking orders)等。

②形象的肢体语言(body language)

这就要你提前了解你将要去的国家的风俗习惯了，看看他们的肢体语言是不是跟我们的相同，以免闹出笑话。有时候形象的肢体语言比直接说出来更能说明问题。

③智能化的手机软件

在你的智能手机上下载一款实用的翻译软件（如：谷歌翻译等），能够提供多种语言的相机实时翻译、语音翻译以及文字翻译，这真是你的国外旅行神器啊!

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见265页)

一、根据句意及首字母或汉语提示补全单词

1. Jack has brown hair and he doesn't wear _____ (眼镜). [新疆]
2. I'm sorry she is not at home at the moment. Can I take a m_____ for you?
3. I have some _____ (爱好), such as reading, writing and so on.
4. She was so n_____ about her first speech that she couldn't sleep. [杭州]
5. When I got bad _____ (分数), I felt sad.

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6. You'd better not talk to _____(strange) when you walk alone.
7. It's great _____ (hear) from you.
8. Thanks for _____ (give) us a ride to catch the train on time. [长春]
9. My sister enjoys _____ (dance) and she hopes to be a dancer.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

10. As a student, you should learn how _____ (solve) problems.

三、单项选择

11._____ is quite easy for people to find any place in the world with the help of online maps. [乐山]

A. That B. It C. One

12.Welcome you all to Guangyuan and enjoy _____ here. [广元]

A. you B. your C. yourselves

13.—I will try my best to win in the School Talent Show.

—If so,all of us will be _____ you.[泰安]

A. proud of B. careful with

C. strict with D. worried about

14.Lily looks _____. And I often see her sit in the classroom _____.

A. quiet; quiet B. quietly; quietly

C. quiet; quietly D. quietly; quiet

15.You'd better _____ more time communicating with your parents so that they can understand you better.

A. cost B. spend

C. take D. pay

四、根据汉语完成句子，每空一词

16.你觉得《变形金刚4：绝迹重生》这部电影怎么样?

_____ _____ _____ _____ _____ the film *Transformers:Age of Extinction*?

17.约翰喜欢汉语歌曲，罗丝也喜欢汉语歌曲。

John likes Chinese songs; Rose likes Chinese songs _____ _____.

18.你能告诉我如何到达车站吗?

Could you tell me _____ _____ _____ to the station?

19.昨天我收到了妈妈的来信。

I _____ _____ my mum yesterday.

20.我希望有一天能见到我的笔友。

I hope _____ _____ my pen pal one day.

Unit 3 Language in use

I. 课文原文、译文

Language practice 语言练习

It tastes good. 它尝起来很好。

You look very pretty. 你看起来非常漂亮。

It doesn't smell fresh. 它闻起来不新鲜。

I feel nervous when I speak Chinese. 当我讲汉语时，我感觉紧张。

1 Look at the picture.Complete the sentences. 看图，完成句子。

The cookies *taste delicious*. 小甜饼尝起来很香。

1. The bananas _____. 香蕉_____。

2. The students _____. 学生们 _____。

3. The flowers _____. 花_____。

4. The juice _____. 果汁_____。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

5. The chairs _____. 椅子_____。

6. The music _____. 音乐_____。

2 Write sentences about yourself.Use the words in the box to help you.

写出关于你自己的句子。用方框中的单词帮助你。

feel 摸起来	look 看起来	smell 闻起来	sound 听起来	taste 尝起来

I like this dress very much.It feels comfortable. 我非常喜欢这条连衣裙。它摸起来很舒服。

3 Put the words in the box into the correct columns. 把方框中的单词放入正确的栏中。

beautiful 漂亮的	dark 暗色的	fair 金色的	friendly 友好的	nice 好看的
old 年老的	pretty 漂亮的	proud 感到自豪的	quiet 安静的	short 矮的
shy 害羞的	strict 严格的	tall 高的	young 年轻的	

What does he/she look like? 他 / 她长什么样?	What is he/she like? 他 / 她这个人怎么样?
beautiful 漂亮的	*friendly* 友好的

4 Work in pairs.Use the table in Activity 3 to ask and answer questions about the people.

结对练习。用活动 3 的表格来问答关于这些人的问题。

your mum 你的妈妈

A: *What does your mum look like?* ① 你的妈妈长什么样?

B: *She's tall and beautiful.* 她高而且漂亮。

A: *What is your mum like?* 你的妈妈是个怎样的人?

B: *She's friendly.* 她很友好。

1. your dad 你的爸爸
2. your maths/Chinese/music teacher 你的数学 / 语文 / 音乐老师
3. your uncle 你的叔叔
4. your best friend 你最好的朋友

5 Complete the conversation with the correct form of the words in the box.You need to use some of the words more than once. 用方框中单词的正确形式完成对话。你需要用有些单词不止一次。

be 是	look 看起来	taste 尝起来

Jane: Hi, Alex! How are you today? 你好，亚历克斯！你今天感觉如何?

Alex: Great! 好极了!

Jane: You (1) _____ very happy! 你 (1)_____非常高兴!

Alex: Oh, yes.My mum made a cake for me.Here, have some.It really (2) _____ delicious!

噢，是的。我的妈妈给我做了一个蛋糕。给，吃点吧。它真的 (2) _____很香!

Jane: Thanks.It (3) _____ very pretty too.Mm, you're right.It's nice.

谢谢。它 (3) _____也非常漂亮。嗯，你是对的。它味道不错。

Alex: And another ② good thing is, my friend Ben is coming to stay.

还有一件好事是，我的朋友本要来住。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Jane: Oh, really? What (4) _____ he like? 哦，真的？他 (4) _____什么样的人？

Alex: He's really friendly and kind. 他真的很友好、很善良。

Jane: What does he (5) _____ like? 他 (5) _____什么样？

Alex: Well, he's tall and thin.He's good at sport.Would you like to meet him?

哦，他高而且瘦。他擅长运动。你想去见他吗？

Jane: Yes, I'd like to. 是的，我想。

6 Complete the passage with the words in the box. 用方框中的单词完成短文。

close 靠近　friendly 友好的　look 看　meet 遇见　noisy 吵闹的　with 和……一起

Americans usually shake hands with each other when they first (1) _____.When two Americans are talking, they do not stand too (2)_____ to each other.If they meet some friends at a party while they are talking (3) _____ someone else[3], they usually bring their friends into the conversation. Americans (4) _____ each other in the eye when they talk. They may be a bit (5) _____ sometimes, but they are quite (6) _____.

当美国人第一次 (1)_____时，他们通常彼此握手。当两个美国人谈话时，他们彼此站得不太 (2)_____。当他们在聚会上正 (3)_____别人谈话时，如果他们遇到一些朋友，他们通常把朋友带入谈话中。当美国人谈话时，他们 (4)_____彼此的眼睛。有时候他们可能是有点 (5)_____，但是他们相当 (6)_____。

7 Write about how things feel, look, smell, sound or taste.Use the words in the box to help you. 写一写事物摸起来、看起来、闻起来、听起来、尝起来怎么样。用方框中的单词帮助你。

beautiful 漂亮的　comfortable 舒服的　delicious 美味的　fresh 新鲜的　great 极好的
hot 热的　nervous 紧张的　nice 好的　noisy 吵闹的　quiet 安静的　round 圆的
strong 浓的　sweet 甜的

Flowers look beautiful.They smell nice. 花看起来漂亮。它们闻起来很好。

8 Work in pairs.Describe a thing in the box to your partner.Your partner should guess what it is.Use the words in the box in Activity 7 to help you. 结对练习。向你的伙伴描述方框中的一件物品。你的伙伴应该猜测它是什么。用活动 7 方框中的单词帮助你。

a basketball 一个篮球　a bird 一只鸟　a cat 一只猫　a flower 一朵花　a hamburger 一个汉堡包
a lantern 一个灯笼　a plane 一架飞机　grass 草　the sun 太阳

A: *It looks beautiful.* 它看起来漂亮。

B: *Is it a flower?* 它是一朵花吗？

A: *No, it isn't. It's round and hot.* 不，它不是。它又圆又热。

B: *Is it a lantern?* 它是一个灯笼吗？

A: *No, it isn't.It's much*[4] *hotter and bigger than a lantern.* 不，它不是。它比灯笼热得多、大得多。

B: *Is it the sun?* 它是太阳吗？

A: *Yes, you're right.* 是的，你对了。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

9 **Listen and complete the notes.What is the speaker complaining about?**

听录音，完成笔记。说话者在抱怨什么？

课文听力9

The music:_____ 音乐：_____

The room:_____ 房间：_____

The food:_____ 食物：_____

The drink:_____ 饮料：_____

The people:_____ 人们：_____

Around the world 世界各地

Polite expressions 有礼貌的表达

In the West, people are quite open about their feelings.Many people hug each other when they meet.People are friendly and informal.They usually use given names,even at work. It is polite for people to say "thank you" very often, even to their family members.

在西方，人们对于情感相当开放。许多人见面时彼此拥抱。人们很友好而且很随便。他们通常叫（对方的）名字，甚至在工作中。对于人们来说，经常说"谢谢你"是有礼貌的，甚至是对他们的家庭成员。

Module task: Writing a description of a classmate 模块任务：写一篇描述一个同班同学的文章

10 **Think about one of your classmates:** 想一想你的一个同班同学：

age 年龄　hair 头发　hobbies 业余爱好
face 脸　height 身高　size 体型

11 **Write a description of him/her.** 写一篇描述他 / 她的文章。

My friend is fourteen years old.He is tall and looks strong.He plays football well...

我的朋友 14 岁。他高而且看起来很强壮。他足球踢得很好……

12 **Work in groups.Share your description with your classmates.Let them guess who he/she is.**

小组练习。和你的同班同学分享你的描述。让他们猜测他 / 她是谁。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用　　•考点批注

★What does your mum look like?

① What does sb./sth. look like? 的用法

What does sb./sth. look like? 意为"某人 / 某物是什么样子？"一般用来询问某人 / 某物的外貌或外部特征。表示人的外貌特征的形容词有 tall, short, pretty, old, young 等。

e.g. —What does Mary look like? 玛丽长什么样子？

—She is tall with short hair. 她个子很高，留着短发。

—What's Tom like? 汤姆是个什么样的人？

—He's very shy. 他很害羞。

考题在线 1 —What does your brother look like?

★"What's sb./sth. like?"通常询问某人 / 某物的性格或内在特征。表示人的性格特征的形容词有 nice, kind, friendly, shy, clever 等。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

—_____.

A. He is outgoing　　B. He is really tall and thin

C. He is a student　　D. He is in hospital

点拨：考查交际用语。问句句意为“你的弟弟长什么样?”根据 look like 可知询问人物外貌。

★And another good thing is,my friend Ben is coming to stay.

② **another** /əˈnʌðə(r) / *adj.*(***one more***) 另一，又一

e.g. Let's find another way to work out the problem.

咱们找另一种方法来解决这道题吧。another 此处用作形容词，意为“另一，再一”，通常指三者或三者以上的另一个。

We need another four chairs.

=We need four more chairs. 我们还需要 4 把椅子。

I don't like this sweater. Please show me another.

我不喜欢这件毛衣，请给我拿另一件看看。

“another+基数词(大于1)+复数名词”相当于“基数词(大于1)+more+复数名词”，意为“再……，还……”。

another 也可以作代词，意为“另一个；又一个”。

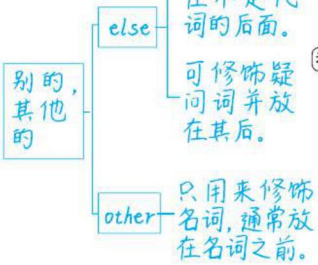
考题在线 2 —This room is too small. I'd like to ask for _____.

—Sure. We have rooms available here. [武汉]

A. another　　B. the other

C. one　　D. it

★辨析 else 和 other



★If they meet some friends at a party while they are talking with someone else, they usually bring their friends into the conversation.

③ **else** /els/ *adj.* 别的；其他的

e.g.Do you have anything else to say? 你还有别的事情要说吗?

Who else do you know here? 你还认识这里的其他人吗?

考题在线 3 —What _____ do you have to do besides _____ the room at home?

—I have to take out the trash.

A. else; cleaning　　B.else; clean

C. other; cleaning　　D. other; clean

点拨：else 可用作形容词，修饰疑问代词时，常放在疑问代词的后面，other 作形容词时常用于名词前；besides 是介词，后接动词的 -ing 形式。

★类似可以修饰比较级的词(组)还有 a lot, far, even, a little, a bit 等。

(1)“比较级 +and+ 比较级”表示“越来越……”；(2)“the+ 比较级，the+ 比较级”表示“越……，越……”。

★It's much hotter and bigger than a lantern.

“much+ 形容词 / 副词比较级”意为“……得多”

④ **much** 修饰比较级的用法

much 用来加强语气。

e.g.It's much colder today than it was yesterday. 今天比昨天冷得多。

The room is a bit larger than that one. 这个房间比那个稍大点。

She runs faster and faster. 她跑得越来越快。

The more you eat, the fatter you will be. 你吃得越多，你就会越胖。

考题在线 4 —Lisa, how is your cousin?

—He is _____ now. Thank you. [玉林]

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

A. more healthier　　B. much healthier
C. very healthier　　D. healthiest

考题在线答案　1. B　2. A　3. A　4. B

Ⅲ. 模块语法沙龙　夺取中考语法满分

表示感官的系动词

考点 1 概念及构成

考向：系动词也称连系动词，本身有词义，不能单独作谓语，后面必须接形容词或名词等作表语，构成系表结构，说明主语的状况、性质、特征等情况。



e.g. My grandfather is 70,but he still looks cool.
我爷爷七十岁了，但看起来依然帅气。

考题在线 1　—Look, Linda. The flowers in our classroom came out in one night.
—I can't believe it. They are beautiful and colorful. They _____ great.　[乐山]
A. sound　　B. smell　　C. taste

考点 2 用法

考向 1：不同的感官系动词

系动词	含义	例句
feel	摸起来	This dress feels soft. 这件连衣裙摸起来很柔软。
taste	尝起来	The soup tastes sweet. 汤尝起来很甜。
look	看起来	He looks a bit sad. 他看起来有点伤心。
smell	闻起来	The flowers smell sweet. 这些花闻起来很香。
sound	听起来	The idea sounds great. 这个主意听起来好极了。

考题在线 2　用所给词的适当形式填空。
The red roses _____ (smell) sweet.　[兰州]

考题在线 3　The air _____ fresh after the rain. And the sky is blue.　[河北]
A. feels　　B. tastes
C. smells　　D. sounds

考向 2：表示感官的系动词与系动词 be 不同，其否定和疑问形式要借助助动词 do 或 does。

e.g. He doesn't look very tired.
他看起来不是很累。
Does the milk smell sour?
牛奶闻起来有股馊味吗?

考题在线 4　This piece of music sounded beautiful last night.(改为否定句)
This piece of music _____ _____ beautiful last night.

点拨：此题考查否定句。句中的 sounded 为系动词 sound 的过去式，变否定句时应借助助动词 did。

考题在线答案　1. B　2. smell　3. C　4. didn't sound

Ⅳ. 写作一课一法　夺取中考写作 20 分

写作小练笔

This is Sally. She's quite tall with short fair hair, and she wears glasses. She'll wear jeans and a T-shirt for the journey, but she'll also carry her warm coat.

She likes playing classical music and dance music. She also enjoys sports, especially tennis.

She feels nervous when she speaks Chinese, but she'll be fine in a few days. She's always sorry when she doesn't know how to do things in the right way, so she asks Lingling to help her in China! Oh, she

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

is afraid of flying. But she is excited about going to China!

此类文章可以用第一人称做自我介绍，也可以用第三人称介绍朋友，但需注意人称的变化和动词的形式！

本文结合原文介绍了Sally的appearance, hobbies, feelings。层次清晰，语言简练。画线词的穿针引线为本文添彩！

模块话题［怀化］

每个人的一生中都会有令自己难忘的人。回想一下自己的成长过程，对你影响最深的老师是谁？请你根据以下要点提示，以“The Nicest Teacher in My Heart”为题，写一篇英语短文。

subject	Chinese/math/English...teacher
appearance（外貌）	tall/short/of medium height/heavy/thin/..., ordinary-looking（相貌平常的）/beautiful/handsome...
personality（性格）	friendly/kind/popular/love to smile...
reasons（原因）	do a good job/be strict with/be like a mother/father/encourage me to...
其他	...

注意：

1. 文中请勿使用真实的人名、校名和地名；
2. 内容可参考表格中的要点适当发挥；
3. 词数：80左右；
4. 文章的开头已给出，但不计入总词数。

The Nicest Teacher in My Heart

Junior high school days will be over. I have some special memories. One of them is about a teacher. In my heart, _____

_____

_____

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

1. 在组织写作思路时，要从外貌、性格和喜欢的原因进行写作。

2. 谈论老师应该采用第三人称，谈论自己的感受应该使用第一人称。

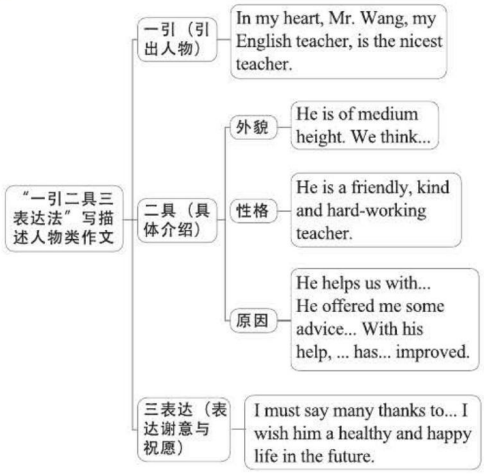
3. 谈论老师的情况以及自己喜欢的原因可采用一般现在时；谈论老师对自己的帮助需采用一般过去时。

写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

“一引二具三表达法”写描述人物类作文

一引：根据提示引出人物；二具：具体介绍人物；三表达：表达谢意与祝愿。

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）



经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	nicest, handsome, impress, friendly, hard-working,notice,encourage,improve,healthy
短语	of medium height, be strict with,not only...but also...,encourage sb. to do sth., as much as possible, with one's help
句子	① We think he is very handsome. ② Mr. Wang noticed that I was worried about my poor pronunciation. ③ I wish him a healthy and happy life in the future.

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

The Nicest Teacher in My Heart

Junior high school days will be over. I have some special memories. One of them is about a teacher. In my heart, Mr. Wang, my English teacher, is the

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

nicest teacher. He is of medium height. We think he is very handsome. He is a friendly, kind and hard-working teacher. He is strict with us in English. He helps us with English not only in class but also after class. About two years ago, Mr. Wang noticed that I was worried about my poor pronunciation. So he offered me some advice and encouraged me to improve it. He also gave me chances to speak as much as possible in class. With his help, my pronunciation has greatly improved.

I must say many thanks to Mr. Wang. I wish him a healthy and happy life in the future.

名师点评：本文用"一引二具三表达法"写心中最好的老师，思路清晰，内容全面，语言流畅。

第一：介绍自己最喜欢的老师是谁，引出话题，信息点（English teacher）及感情点（nicest）表达完整、充分。

第二：具体介绍所喜欢的老师的外貌（of medium height...）、性格（friendly, kind and hard-working...）和喜欢的原因等。使用了not only...but also..., worried about, offered sb. some advice 等精彩的短语，为文章添彩不少。

第三：结尾紧扣主题，表达谢意与祝愿。



Ⅴ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

☞（答案见265页）

一、针对性训练

1. —_____?

—She is very friendly but a little strict.

A. What does your sister like

B. What is your sister like

C. What does your sister look like

D. How is your sister

2. —Is there _____ in the classroom?

—No, it is empty. Everyone is listening to a speech in the school hall.

A. else anyone　　B. anyone else

C. other someone　　D. someone others

3. —What about these two coats?

—_____ of them fits me. Could you show me _____ one?

A. Either; other　　B. Neither; another

C. Neither; else　　D. Either; another

4. If more people give up driving cars, the air will get much _____ in a few days.

A. clean　　B. cleaner

C. the cleanest

5. It's very dangerous for the children _____ swimming without adults.

A. go　　B. going

C. to go　　D. went

二、语法专练

6. The cheese cake _____ so good that I can't wait to eat it. [温州]

A. tastes　　B. feels

C. sounds　　D. smells

7. —What do you think of the fish soup?

—Well, it _____ a bit salty. [乐山]

A. looks　　B. smells

C. tastes

8. The pizza smells _____.Let me have one first. [乐山]

A. well　　B. good

C. bad

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

9. The fish you bought yesterday smells _____.You'd better throw it away. [淮安]

A. good　　B. bad

C. well　　D. badly

10. —What do you think of the dish I cooked for you?

—I haven't had it yet.However,it _____ good. [荆州]

A. tastes　　B. smells

C. sounds　　D. feels

三、模块知识浓缩

根据汉语提示完成短文

Today Mum told me she would take me to visit my grandparents.I thought I should give them a surprise. I wore a soft T-shirt, a tight pair of _____[11]（牛仔裤） and new sports shoes. I colored my hair _____[12]（金色的；浅褐色的 ）.Especially, I also wore a pair of glasses. After breakfast, Mum and I started by bicycle. On the way, a _____[13]（陌生人） asked us the way.He was a bit _____[14]（紧张的） but very polite and gave us a good impression.

When we got to my grandparents' house, they didn't recognize me and only looked at me.I shook my grandma's hand and introduced myself with a smile.Haha! She said I was quite pretty and smart.I looked _____[15]（可爱的） with the glasses.She said she _____[16]（为……而感到骄傲） me.But she said I was stupid to get my hair fair.She liked black hair.

My grandma made us some soup, cheese and _____[17]（小甜饼；曲奇饼） for lunch.The soup was a little _____[18]（酸的） and salty. But the cheese _____[19]（闻起来） delicious and looked fresh.I couldn't wait _____[20]（试试看）.We had a good day with my grandparents.

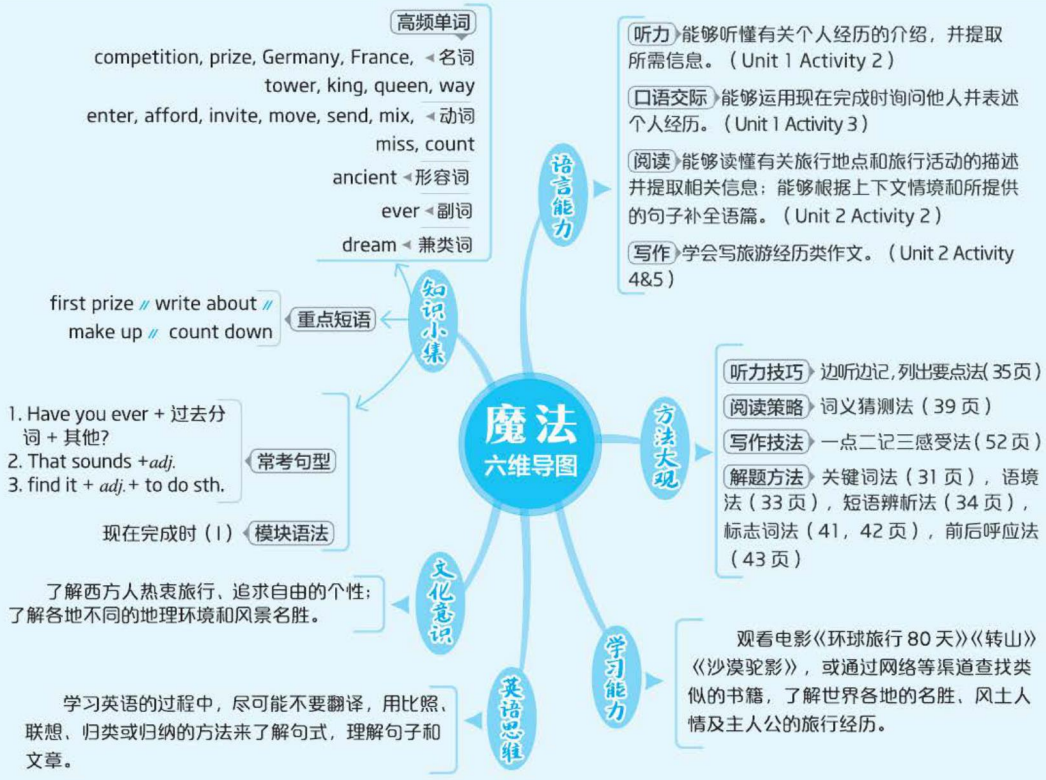
There are no secrets to success. It is the result of preparation, hard work, and learning from failure.
成功没有诀窍，它是筹备，苦干以及在失败中汲取教训的结果。



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Module 2 Experiences

词汇表听写



记忆大师

Unit 1 I've also entered lots of speaking competitions.

必背单词

1. **ever** *adv.* 曾经；从来；在任何时候
2. **dream** *v.* 做梦；梦到；梦想 →**dreamed/dreamt**（过去式）→**dreamed/dreamt**（过去分词）
3. **afford** *v.*（有财力）买得起，付得起 →**afford to do sth.** 干某事负担得起
4. **invite** *v.* 邀请 →**invitation** *n.* 邀请
5. **enter** *v.*（使）参加；（使）报名
6. **competition** *n.* 比赛；竞争
7. **prize** *n.* 奖品；奖项

必背短语

8. enter a competition 参加比赛
9. first prize 一等奖
10. good luck 好运
11. think about 思考；考虑
12. write about 编写；写作
13. make up 编写；创作
14. invite sb. to do sth. 邀请某人去做某事

必背句子

15. **Have** you ever **won any** prizes before?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

以前你曾得过奖吗?

16.But I **can't** afford it.

但是我负担不起。

17.That's **a pity**.

那很遗憾。

Unit 2 They have seen the Pyramids.

必背单词

1.**move** *v.* 搬家；改变……的位置 →**movement** *n.* 搬动

2.**send** *v.* 派遣去；命令……去 →**sent**（过去式）→**sent**（过去分词）

3.**Germany** *n.* 德国 →**German** *adj.* 德国的，德语的，德国人的

4.**France** *n.* 法国 →**French** *adj.* 法语的，法国的，法国人的

5.**way** *n.* 方面；态度 →**ways** *pl.*

6.**mix** *v.* 相混合；融合 →**mixes**（第三人称单数形式）

7.**miss** *v.* 惦念；怀念；想念 →**misses**（第三人称单数形式）

8.tower *n.* 塔

9.ancient *adj.* 古老的；古代的

10.king *n.* 国王；君王

11.queen *n.* 女王；王后

必背短语

12.at the moment 目前；现在

13.for example 例如

14.be different from 和……不同

15.in many ways 在许多方面

16.all over the world 全世界

17.count down 倒数；倒计时

18.look forward to 渴望；期盼

必背句子

19.They **have been to** many **interesting** places.

他们去过许多有趣的地方。

20.They find **it** hard **to spell** and pronounce the words.

他们发现拼、读单词很难。

21.However, they still **enjoy learning** it.

然而，他们仍然喜欢学它。

Unit 3 Language in use

必背短语

1.what's more 此外；而且；更有甚者

2.find out 弄清楚；搞明白

3.something special 特别的东西

4.a pair of 一双；一副；一对

5.lack of 缺少

必背句子

6.Have you ever **wanted to save** the trees in the forest?

你曾想过挽救森林中的树木吗?

7.The world **needs** more trees—buy one today,watch it grow bigger and **feel proud**!

世界需要更多的树——今天买下一棵树，看着它成长，由此你会感到自豪!

8.I've done **so many** things!

我已经做了很多事情!

必背语法

9.**Have** you ever won any prizes before?

你以前获过一些奖项吗?

10.I **haven't travelled** much. 我不常旅游。

11.They **have been to** many interesting places.

他们去过许多有趣的地方。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 1 I've also entered lots of speaking competitions.

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

Listening and vocabulary 听力与词汇

1 Listen and number the words as you hear them. 听录音，给你所听到的词标号。

ever① ☐ exciting ☐ tired ☐ visit ☐ wonderful ☐

曾经 ☐ 令人兴奋的 ☐ 累的 ☐ 参观 ☐ 极好的☐

课文听力1

2 Listen again and choose the correct answer. 再听一遍，选出正确的答案。

1. Lingling has visited/hasn't ever visited the US. 玲玲参观过 / 从未参观过美国。
2. Betty has asked/hasn't asked her parents. 贝蒂已经问了 / 还未问她父母。
3. Lingling has travelled/hasn't travelled by plane. 玲玲乘飞机旅行过 / 没有乘飞机旅行过。

3 Listen and read. 听一听，读一读。

课文朗读3

Tony: Hi, Lingling. What are you doing? 你好，玲玲。你在做什么?

Lingling: I'm entering/ˈentərɪŋ/② a competition/ˌkɒmpəˈtɪʃn/. 我在参加一个竞赛。

Tony: What kind of competition? 什么类型的竞赛?

Lingling: A speaking competition. 一个演讲竞赛。

Tony: Great. It'll help you improve your speaking. And maybe you will win③ a prize/praɪz/.

很好。它将会帮助你提高你的演讲水平。或许你还会获奖。

Lingling: The first prize is "My dream /driːm/④ holiday". 一等奖是"我梦想的假日"。

Tony: Have you ever/ˈevə/ won any prizes before? 你曾经得过奖吗?

Lingling: No, I haven't. I've always wanted to go on a dream holiday. But I can't afford/əˈfɔːd/⑤ it. The plane tickets are too expensive.

不，没有。我总是想度过一个梦想假日。但是我负担不起。飞机票太昂贵了。

Tony: Well, good luck! I've also entered lots of speaking competitions, but haven't won any prizes. I've stopped trying now.

哦，好运！我也参加了许多演讲比赛，但是没有获得任何奖项。现在我已经不再尝试了。

Lingling: That's a pity.⑥ Have you ever thought about other kinds of competitions?

那很遗憾。你曾经考虑过其他种类的竞赛吗?

Tony: What do you mean? 什么意思?

Lingling: Look! Here's a writing competition: Around the World in 80 Days. To win it⑦, you need⑧ to write a short story about a place you've visited.

看！这儿有一个写作竞赛：80 天环游世界。要想获胜，你需要写一个有关你已经参观过的地方的简短的故事。

Tony: That sounds wonderful, but I haven't travelled much. How can I write about it?

那听起来棒极了，但是我不常旅游。我怎么写呢?

Lingling: Don't worry. It doesn't need to be true! You can make it up⑨.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

不用担心。它不需要是真实的！你可以编一个（故事）。

Tony: You're right. I'll try. I hope I will win, then I will invite/ɪnˈvaɪt/[10] you to come with me.

你说得对。我会试一试。我希望我会获胜，然后邀请你和我一起（去环游世界）。

Lingling: Sorry! The first prize is only the book called[11] *Around the World in 80 Days*!

不好意思！一等奖仅是那本名叫《80 天环游世界》的书！

Everyday English 日常英语

·Good luck! 好运！

·That's a pity. 那很遗憾。

·That sounds wonderful! 那听起来棒极了！

Now check (√) what Lingling and Tony have or have not done.

用（√）标出玲玲和托尼做过的或没有做过的事情。

Name 名字	Experiences 经历	Yes 做过	No 没做过
Lingling 玲玲	has won some prizes. 获得过一些奖项。		
	has always wanted to go on a dream holiday. 一直想度过一个梦想假日。		
Tony 托尼	has entered lots of speaking competitions. 参加过许多演讲比赛。		
	has won some prizes. 获得过一些奖项。		
	has travelled a lot. 经常旅行。		

4 Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about what Lingling and Tony have or have not done. 结对练习。问答有关玲玲和托尼做过或没有做过的事情的问题。

—*Has Lingling ever won any prizes before?* 玲玲以前获得过一些奖项吗？

—*No, she hasn't.* 不，她没有。

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in the box.

用方框中单词的正确形式完成句子。

afford 负担得起　competition 竞赛　dream 梦想
invite 邀请　pity 遗憾　prize 奖项

1. Her _____ was to study at a good university one day.
   她的_____是有一天在一所好大学里学习。
2. When I was in school, I won many _____ for my writing.
   当我在学校的时候，我获得了许多有关写作的_____。
3. You must enter the music _____! You will beat everybody.
   你必须参加音乐_____！你将击败每个人。
4. My family cannot _____ to buy a ticket for the match.
   我的家庭不能_____买一张比赛的票。
5. It is a(n)_____ that you did not come to see the film with us.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

你没有和我们一起来看电影是个_____。

6. John _____ his new friends to his birthday party last week.

约翰上周_____他的新朋友们参加他的生日聚会。

Pronunciation and speaking 发音与会话

6 Read and predict which words the speaker is likely to stress. 读并预测说话者可能重读的单词。

—Have you ever wanted to travel around the world? 你曾经想过环游世界吗?

—Yes, I have.I've always wanted to travel around the world. 是的，我想过。我一直想环游世界。

—Have you ever visited New York? 你曾经参观过纽约吗?

—No, I haven't. I've never visited the US. 不，没有。我从来没有参观过美国。

—Have you ever entered a competition? 你曾经参加过竞赛吗?

—No, I haven't. I haven't entered any competitions. 不，没有。我没参加过任何竞赛。

Now listen and check. 现在听一听，检查一下。

7 Work in pairs.Read the conversations in Activity 6 aloud. 结对练习。大声读出活动 6 的会话。

8 Work in pairs.Ask and answer questions about yourself. 结对练习。问答有关你自己的问题。

—*Have you ever visited...*? 你曾经参观过……吗?

—*Yes, I have./No, I haven't. I've...* 是的，参观过。/ 不，没参观过。我已经……

Ⅱ. 考点精讲点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

·考点应用

·考点批注

★ever

① **ever** /'evə/ *adv.* 曾经；从来；在任何时候

e.g. Have you ever been to Beijing? 你曾经去过北京吗?

Have you ever spoken to a foreigner? 你曾经同外国人说过话吗?

考题在线 1 —_____ you ever _____ Han Hong sing live?

—Of course.A couple of times in different cities. [玉林]

A.Have;seen　　B.Did;see

C.Do;see　　D.Are;seeing

方法真题练

点拨:此题用关键词法。由关键词 ever 可知，说明到现在为止的经历，所以用现在完成时。

★ ever 表示"曾经"，常用于现在完成时的疑问句中。可构成短语 ever since"从……起"。

★I'm entering a competition.

② **enter** /'entə/ *v.*（使）参加；（使）报名

e.g. Has Mr. Green entered the competition? 格林先生参加比赛了吗?

I entered the room and found some flowers on the table.

我进入房间，发现桌子上有一些花。enter 动词,"进入",与 go in/into 同义。

考题在线 2 Simon looks worried because he _____ a writing competition and now he's waiting for the result.

A. received　　B. entered　　C. took part　　D. passed

★ enter 此处用作及物动词，意为"(使)参加；(使)报名"，多指参加考试、比赛等，与 take part in 意思相近。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★enter 常用短语：
① enter the exam 参加考试
② enter the competition 参加比赛
③ enter the army 参军

点拨：考查动词辨析。receive 收到；enter 参加；take part 若跟宾语需带上 in；pass 通过。根据宾语 a writing competition 可知用 entered。

★And maybe you will win a prey.

③ **win** /wɪn/ *v.* ***(to be the most successful in a contest or competition)*** 赢；获胜

e.g. He who does not hope to win has already lost.
不希望赢的人已经输了。

Tom won first prize in the writing competition.
汤姆在写作竞赛中赢得了一等奖。

They beat us in the basketball match last Monday.
上周一他们在篮球比赛中打败了我们。



● win(won, won) 其宾语往往是比赛、奖项、奖金、名誉、财产、战争等。
● beat(beat, beaten) 其宾语是比赛、竞争中的对手或战争中的敌人。

考题在线 3 —Great! Our women's volleyball team _____ the gold medal in Rio Olympic Games on Saturday.
—Yes. We saw the great spirit of Chinese women's volleyball team once again.
A. won　　B. beat　　C. lost　　D. missed



点拨：考查动词辨析。win“获得；赢得”，后常跟奖品、奖项、荣誉等名词；beat“打败”，后常跟某人、某团体、队伍等名词；lose“丢失”，后跟丢失的物品或人等；miss“思念；错过”。中国女排赢得了金牌，所以谓语动词应该用 win 的过去式 won。

★The first prize is "My dream holiday".

dream 此处用作名词，意为“梦想”，只用于名词作定语，常用其单数形式。

● dream 梦；梦想（名词）
have a good/bad dream 做美/噩梦
● dream 做梦；梦到；梦想（动词）
dream of/about 梦见；梦想

④ **dream** /driːm/ *n.* **梦想**

e.g. The house in the picture is so lovely. It is my dream house.
图片中的这座房子太可爱了。它是我梦寐以求的房子。

China Dream is made up of every ordinary person's dream. We should do our best to make our dream come true.
中国梦由每个普通人的梦想组成。我们应该尽自己最大的努力去实现我们的梦想。

She dreams of becoming a teacher. 她梦想着成为一名老师。

考题在线 4 Whenever I see the birds, I'll _____ flying in the sky.
A. think up　　B. dream of
C. work on　　D. pick up



★But I can't afford it.

⑤ **afford** /əˈfɔːd/ *v.* **（有财力）买得起，付得起**

e.g. Many people can't afford a new house now.
现在许多人买不起新房子。

The family could not afford to send her to college.
家里没有足够的钱供她上大学。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Reading will afford you much pleasure. 阅读会给你提供很多乐趣。

考题在线 5 I am afraid we can not _____ to take a taxi. Let's go by underground instead. [天津]

A. refuse B. afford C. forget D. fall

点拨:考查词义辨析。refuse 意为"拒绝"; afford 意为"买得起; 付得起"; forget 意为"忘记"; fall 意为"摔倒"。根据句意分析可知应该用"afford to do sth.", 意为"负担得起做某事"。

afford
常接在 can, could, be able to 后,表示负担得起,常用于否定句和疑问句中
后可接名词、代词或动词不定式作宾语
后可接双宾语,即 afford sb. sth. "为某人提供某物"

★That's a pity.

⑥ That's a pity. 真可惜。/ 很遗憾。

e.g. —I lost my wallet. 我把钱包弄丢了。

—Oh, that's a pity. 哎呀, 真可惜。

It's a pity to throw the food away. 扔掉这些事物真可惜。

It's a pity that you can't stay longer. 你不能再多停留些时间, 真是可惜。

① that's/what a pity 真可惜
② it's a pity to do sth. 做某事可惜
③ it's a pity (that)... ..... 真可惜

考题在线 6 —Let's go for a picnic on Saturday, James.

—_____ I have to do my homework at home. [内江]

A. What a pity! B. Don't worry.

C. Best wishes. D. How come?

点拨:用语境法解题。根据答语第二句 I have to do my homework at home. 可知詹姆斯觉得很可惜他去不了。What a pity 真可惜; Don't worry 意为"别担心"; Best wishes 意为"最美好的祝福"; How come 意为"为什么, 怎么会那样"。

★To win it, you need to write a short story about a place you've visited.

⑦ 动词不定式短语作目的状语的用法

to win it 是动词不定式短语作目的状语。

e.g. To improve your listening, you can listen to the radio every morning. 要提高你的听力水平, 你可以每天早上听广播。

The government set up a working party to look into the problem. 政府成立了一个工作小组来调查那个问题。

动词不定式短语作目的状语时可以位于句首,与后面的句子用逗号隔开,也可以位于句末,意为"为了做某事"。

考题在线 7 —What should I do, doctor?

—_____ healthy, you should take more exercise. [达州]

A. Keep B. Keeping C. To keep

点拨:考查非谓语动词的语法。答语句意为"为了保持健康, 你应该多做运动"。此处为动词不定式表目的。

⑧ need /ni:d/ v. 需要

need 作实义动词,意为"需要",后面可接名词、代词或动词不定式。可用于肯定句、疑问句或否定句中。

e.g. He needs to have a good rest. 他需要好好休息一下。

They don't need your help. 他们不需要你的帮助。

The flowers need watering. 这些花需要浇水。

He needn't worry about it. 这件事他无需担心。

敲黑板 need 后接动词 -ing 形式时表示被动意义。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

need 作情态动词时，没有人称和数的变化，后接动词原形，常用于否定和疑问句中。由must引导的一般疑问句的否定回答用needn't，意为"不必"，相当于don't have to。

Need he do this homework first? 他需要先做这个作业吗?

考题在线 8 The designer has tried every possible way to make the robot light, so you _____ worry about its weight. [安徽]

A. must B. may C. can't D. needn't

★You can make it up.

融黑板 make up 是"动词+副词"型短语，人称代词作宾语时，要放在make和up中间。名词作宾语时，放在副词的前后均可。

⑨ **make up** 编写；创作

e.g. Can you make them up into stories or novels?
你能把它们编写成故事或小说吗?

We need one more person to make up a team.
我们还需要一个人才组成一个队。 组成

考题在线 9 The teacher asked the students to _____ a story about a trip to the moon. [随州]

A. give up B. turn up C. cut up D. make up

点拨:用短语辨析法解题。give up 放弃; turn up 调大(音量); cut up 切碎; make up 编造。结合空后的 a story 可知此处表示"编写故事"。

★I hope I will win,then I will invite you to come with me.

⑩ **invite** /ɪnˈvaɪt/ *v.* ***(to ask sb. to come to a social event)*** 邀请

- invite sb. to do sth. 邀请某人做某事
- invite sb. to... 邀请某人去……

e.g. He invited Mary to have dinner. 他邀请玛丽吃晚餐。

I often invite my friends to my home. 我经常邀请我的朋友们来我家。

invite 的名词形式为 invitation，常与介词 to 连用。receive an invitation 收到一个邀请函

考题在线 10 Harry invited me _____ with him when his parents were out of town. [天津]

A. stay B. stayed C. staying D. to stay

点拨:考查非谓语动词。invite sb. to do sth. 是固定结构，意为"邀请某人做某事"，所以选用 to stay。

★The first prize is only the book called *Around the World in 80 Days*!

⑪ 过去分词短语作后置定语的用法

★ called 是动词 call 的过去分词，意为"名叫，叫作"，过去分词短语 called Around the World in 80 Days 作 book 的后置定语，call 与 book 存在动宾关系。类似的单词还有 named, written 等。

e.g. The girl called Lucy is my teacher. 那个叫露西的姑娘是我的老师。

考题在线 11 Smartphones _____ by Huawei are getting more and more popular around the world. 【导学号: 9465610】[成都]

A. made B. making C. to make

点拨:考查非谓语动词。过去分词 made 在句中作后置定语，修饰名词 Smartphones，和所修饰的名词是被动关系，相当于被动语态的定语从句 that was made。

考题在线答案 1.A 2.B 3.A 4.B 5.B 6.A 7.C 8.D 9.D 10.D 11.A

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

☞(答案见265页)

听力技巧

边听边记，列出要点法(听录音时，边听边记对解题大有好处。根据问题记录音中的地点、人名、数据及主要情节或论点，把回答问题的关键词语及内容记录下来，但记录的前提是不影响听，可以用符号或其他自己能看懂的方式快速记录。)

听力过程

听教材 Activity 1，完成以下习题



1. Has Lingling ever been to the US?

A.Yes, she has.

B.No, I haven't.

C.No, she hasn't.

2. Lingling wants to go and visit Betty _____.

A. today B. next year C. next week

3. _____ hasn't asked her parents.

A. Betty B. Lingling C. Li Lei

4. Has Lingling ever travelled by plane?

A.Yes, I have.

B.Yes, she has.

C.No, she hasn't.

5. Lingling thinks travelling by plane is very _____.

A. boring B. exciting C. terrible

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

☞(答案见265页)

一、根据汉语或首字母提示写出正确的单词

1. Mo Yan is the first Chinese to win the Nobel(诺贝尔) Literature P_____.
2. Tom has never entered any writing _____(比赛).
3. Thank you very much for _____(邀请) me to your party. [遂宁]
4. Lin Tao didn't e_____ the football match, because he didn't feel well.
5. Everyone has his or her own d_____ about life, study, hobbies, vacation and so on.

二、用方框中所给词的适当形式填空

experience, maybe, ever, dream, win

6. _____ she can come here before seven o'clock.
7. I had a wonderful _____during the holiday.
8. Grace _____ this game every time we play. [河北改编]
9. —Have you _____ visited the Great Wall?
   —Yes, I have been there three times.
10. The boy _____ about becoming a pilot (飞行员) one day.

三、单项选择

11. I can't afford _____ a ticket for the match.

A. buy B. buys

C. to buy D. buying

12. _____ Chinese culture, many college students go to foreign countries every year.

A. Spreading B. Spread

C. Spreads D. To spread

13. My friend invited me _____ the art club and I accepted it with pleasure. [上海]

A. join B. to join

C. joined D. joining

14. The baby is crying. Please do something to make him _____.

A. stop to cry B. stop crying

C. to stop crying D. stops crying

15. Tom, have you ever read the book *A Tale of Two Cities* _____ by Charles Dickens ?
   —Yes, I finished reading it last winter

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

vacation.

A. wrote　　B. to write

C. writing　　D. written

四、根据汉语完成句子，每空一词

16. 你能编一个关于老鼠和大象的故事吗?

Can you _____ _____ a story about a mouse and an elephant?

17. 为了赶上早班车，我们不得不快速地起床。

_____ _____ the early bus, we have to get up quickly.

18. 你想参加哪种类型的比赛?

What _____ _____ competitions would you like to enter?

19. 他正在考虑如何提高他的演讲水平。

He is _____ _____ how to improve his speaking.

20. 许多人都想有朝一日能环游世界。

Many people want to _____ _____ _____ _____ one day.

Unit 2 They have seen the Pyramids.

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文及导读

导读批注

批 体裁：记叙文

批 文章结构：递进

Part 1 (Para 1–Para 2)
Where they are and the reason

→ Mike and his family are in Cairo in Egypt.

Part 2 (Para 3–Para 4)
What they have done

→ • They have been to many interesting places.
• They have begun to learn Arabic.

Part 3 (Para 5)
How they feel about coming back to America

→ They are very happy.

原文译文 · 导读

Reading and vocabulary 阅读和词汇

Pre-reading (读前)

1. Have you ever been to Egypt?
2. What do you know about this country?

1 Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions. 结对练习。问答这些问题。

1. Which interesting places in China have you visited?
你参观过中国哪些有趣的地方?
2. Have you ever seen the Great Wall? 你曾经见过长城吗?
3. Have you ever visited another country? 你曾经参观过另一个国家吗?

2 Read the passage and answer the questions. 读文章，回答问题。

While-reading (读中)

课文朗读 2

1. Where are the Robinsons?
2. When and why did they move here?
3. What have they done in Egypt?
4. How do they feel about coming back to America?

Mike Robinson/ˈrɒbɪnsən/ is a fifteen-year-old① American boy and his sister Clare/kleə/ is fourteen. At the moment②, Mike and Clare are in Cairo in Egypt/ˈiːdʒɪpt/, one of③ the biggest and busiest cities in Africa.

迈克·罗宾逊是一个 15 岁的美国男孩，他的妹妹克莱尔 14 岁。现在，

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

迈克和克莱尔在埃及的开罗，非洲最大、最繁忙的城市之一。

They moved/mu:vd/ ④ here with their parents two years ago. Their father, Peter/'pi:tər/, works for a very big company. The company has offices in many countries, and it has sent/sent/ ⑤ Peter to work in Germany/'dʒɜ:məni/, France/frɑ:ns/ and China before. Peter usually stays in a country for about two years. Then the company moves him again. His family always goes with him.

两年前他们和父母搬到这里。他们的父亲，彼得，在一个很大的公司上班。这家公司在许多国家都有办事处，以前派彼得去德国、法国和中国工作过。彼得通常在一个国家呆上大约两年。然后，公司再派他去别的地方。他的家人总是跟随着他。

The Robinsons ⑥ love seeing the world.They have been to many interesting places. For example, in Egypt, they have seen the Pyramids/'pɪrəmɪdz/, travelled on a boat on the Nile/naɪl/ River, and visited the palaces and towers/'taʊəz/ of ancient/'eɪnʃənt/kings/kɪŋz/ and queens/kwi:nz/.

罗宾逊一家人喜欢游览世界。他们去过许多有趣的地方。比如，在埃及，他们见过金字塔，在尼罗河上乘船游览过，并且参观了古代国王和王后们的宫殿和塔楼。

Mike and Clare have also begun to learn the language of the country, Arabic/'ærəbɪk/.This language is different from English in many ways/weɪz/, and they find it hard to ⑦ spell and pronounce the words. However, they still enjoy learning it. So far ⑧ they have learnt to speak German, French, Chinese and Arabic. Sometimes they mix /mɪks/ ⑨ the languages."It's really fun," said Clare.

迈克和克莱尔也开始学习这个国家的语言——阿拉伯语。这种语言在许多方面都不同于英语，并且他们发现这些单词的拼写和发音都很难。然而，他们仍然很喜欢学习这种语言。到目前为止，他们已经学会说德语、法语、汉语和阿拉伯语了。有时候，他们会混淆这些语言。"这真的很有趣。"克莱尔说。

The Robinsons are moving again.The company has asked Peter to work back in the US. Mike and Clare are happy about this. They have friends all over the world, but they also miss/mɪs/ ⑩ their friends in the US.They are counting/kaʊntɪŋ/down ⑪ the days.

罗宾逊一家人又要搬走了。公司已经让彼得返回美国工作。迈克和克莱尔对这个消息感到很开心。他们在世界各地都有朋友，但他们也思念美国的朋友们。（随着回国日期的临近，）他们开始倒着数日子了。

批 词语赏析：

第三段介绍在埃及的旅行，作者巧妙运用see, travel, visit 三个动词，把游览"金字塔、尼罗河、宫殿和塔楼"描述得栩栩如生。现在完成时有助于过去语境的回味，让人有回味无穷之感。

批 句子赏析：

第四段第三句用however表达转折，体现出作者在学习上知难而进的精神，说明作者是一个热爱语言学习的人。

批 词语赏析：

动词短语count down（倒数）使文章就如逼真的电影画面，表达出作者一家返乡的急迫心情。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Post-reading（读后）

写作小练笔

☞（答案见51页）

Learning to learn 学会学习

When you read a passage about travel, use a map to find out where the places are,and the names of the other countries, regions and cities nearby.

当你阅读有关旅行的文章时，用一张地图来找出这些地方在哪儿以及附近的其他国家、地区及城市的名称。

1. How long have the Robinsons been in Egypt? 罗宾逊一家人在埃及呆了多长时间?
2. Why do they live in Cairo? 他们为什么居住在开罗?
3. What have they seen and done in Egypt? 他们在埃及看了什么，做了什么?
4. What do Mike and Clare find difficult about Arabic? 关于阿拉伯语，迈克和克莱尔发现什么困难?
5. Who do they miss in the US? 他们思念美国的谁?
6. Are they looking forward to going home? 他们期盼着回家吗?

3 Complete the passage with the correct form of the words in the box.

用方框中单词的正确形式完成短文。

ancient 古老的	count 数	example 例子
king 国王	mix 相混合	queen 女王

Mike and Clare live in Cairo in Egypt because their father works there.They have visited many places in Egypt. For (1)_____, they have seen the Pyramids, and they have visited the (2)_____ palaces of the (3)_____ and (4)_____ of Egypt.Mike and Clare have learnt a little Arabic, and when they speak it, they often(5)_____ it with German, French and Chinese.Recently, their father's company has asked him to go back to the US.Mike and Clare are (6)_____ down the days.

迈克和克莱尔住在埃及的开罗，因为他们的父亲在那里工作。他们参观了埃及的许多地方。(1)_____，他们看过金字塔，并且他们参观过埃及(3)_____和(4)_____的(2)_____宫殿。迈克和克莱尔学习了一点阿拉伯语，当他们讲阿拉伯语时，他们经常把它和德语、法语和汉语(5)_____。最近，他们父亲的公司让他返回到美国。迈克和克莱尔开始(6)_____日子了。

Writing 写作

4 Work in pairs.Think of a special trip.Write notes and explain:

结对练习。想一次特殊的旅行。写下注释并解释：

·where you went 你去过哪里

·when you went there 你什么时候去的那里

·why it was special 它为什么特殊

5 Write sentences to describe what you have seen or done.Use the passage in Activity 2 to help you. Now write a passage about your experiences.

写句子来描述你看过或做过的事情。用活动2里的短文帮助你。

现在写一篇关于你的经历的文章。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

核心素养之文化意识

英雄们的经历



仰望珠峰，人们想到的不仅是新西兰人埃德蒙·希拉里(Edmund Hillary)和尼泊尔人丹增·诺尔盖(Tenzing Norgay)第一次在海拔8848.13米处的激情相拥，还有走在他们前面的马洛里(Mallory)和欧文(Irvine)。1924年6月8日，马洛里和欧文在队友放弃登顶之后，离开6号营地向顶峰进发。直到第二天，这两位优秀的登山家依然没有回来。虽然马洛里和欧文长眠于珠峰上，但是之前马洛里在回答为什么要登上珠峰时说的话"因为它在那里"一直激励着越来越多的登山者踏上漫漫险途。珠峰成为检验人类智慧、勇气和体能的神圣考场。攀登珠峰已不仅仅是体育活动，更成为人类回归自然、挑战极限、战胜自我的精神象征。

课文背诵指南

- The Robinsons' experiences
  - personal information
    - age: 15, 14
    - come from: America
    - now in: Cairo, Egypt
  - moved here with parents
    - Their father... works for...
    - His family... goes with...
  - love seeing the world
    - have been to many interesting places
    - have seen...
  - learn Arabic
    - different from..., hard to spell and pronounce...
    - enjoy learning
  - are moving again
    - asked Peter to work back in the US
    - happy, miss their friends

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读60分

(答案见265页)

阅读策略

词义猜测法(通过因果关系、同义词或反义词的关系，构词法、例证法、上下文语境以及文章中的定义或解释来推理和猜测该词的大体意思。)

阅读过程

拓展阅读

一、速读文章，选择正确答案

1.So far Mike and Clare have learnt to speak _____ languages. (归纳概括题)

A. one　B. two　C. three　D. four

二、细读文章，完成下列题目

2.How old is Mike? (细节理解题)

A. Fourteen.　B. Fifteen.

C. Sixteen.　D. Seventeen.

3.The word "ancient" in Paragraph 3 means "_____" in Chinese. (词义猜测题)

A. 古代的，古老的　B. 旧的

C. 现代的　D. 崭新的

4.Mike and Clare find it _____ to spell and pronounce the words. (细节理解题)

A. easy　B. fun

C. hard　D. interesting

5.Are Mike and Clare looking forward to going home? (细节理解题)

A.Yes,they are.　B.No,they aren't.

C.Yes,they aren't.　D.No,they are.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注 •考点应用

敲黑板 year 用单数形式

fifteen-year-old 是“基数词 - 可数名词单数 - 形容词”构成的复合形容词，只能作定语。

★Mike Robinson is a fifteen-year-old American boy and his sister Clare is fourteen.

① fifteen-year-old 15 岁的

e.g. She has a three-year-old daughter. 她有一个三岁的女儿。

This is a 20-metre-tall building. 这是一栋 20 米高的楼。

敲黑板 “基数词 +year(s) old”也意为“……岁的”，但只能作表语。

Her daughter is three years old. 她的女儿三岁了。

They live in a three-room apartment. 他们住在一所三个房间的公寓里。

“基数词 - 可数名词单数”也可构成复合形容词，只能作定语。

考题在线 1 Wu Dajing, a _____ Chinese skater, set a new world record at the Winter Olympics in PyeongChang in 2018.

A. 25-years-old　　B. 25 year old

C. 25-year-old　　D. 25 years old

点拨：本题考查复合形容词结构。25-year-old 为“基数词 - 名词单数 - 形容词”构成的复合形容词结构，在句中作前置定语，修饰 Chinese skater。

★At the moment, Mike and Clare are in Cairo in Egypt, one of the biggest and busiest cities in Africa.

② at the moment 目前；此刻

- at the moment 相当于 at this moment，常用于现在时。
- at that moment“在那时；在当时”，同 at that time，常用于过去时。

e.g. What on earth are you doing at the moment? 你现在究竟在干什么？

I was very busy at that moment and couldn't go shopping with him. 那时候我很忙，不能和他去购物。

考题在线 2 —I can't find Jimmy. Where is he?

—He _____ in the garden at the moment. [宜宾]

A. works　　B. will work　　C. is working

点拨：考查句子的时态。根据时间状语 at the moment(此刻) 可判断出用现在进行时。

③ one of... ……之一

e.g. Staying with family and friends is one of the happiest things in the world. 和家人、朋友呆在一起是世界上最开心的事情之一。

★“one of+the+ 形容词最高级 + 可数名词复数”意为“最……的……之一”，此结构作主语时，谓语动词用第三人称单数形式。

考题在线 3 China has a history of over 5,000 years. It is one of the _____ countries in the world. [贵阳]

A. biggest　　B. richest　　C. oldest

点拨：考查形容词的最高级。one of+ the+ 形容词最高级 + 名词复数，表示“最……之一”。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★They moved here with their parents two years ago.

④ **move** /mu:v/ *v.* 搬家；改变……的位置

e.g. They moved to Beijing with their parents five years ago.

他们五年前随父母搬到了北京。

考题在线 4 They don't live here any longer. They _____ to Chengdu last month. [重庆 A]

A. move　　B. moved

C. will move　　D. are moving

点拨：用标志词法解题。句意为"他们不再住在这里了，他们上个月搬到了成都"。last month 是一般过去时的标志。

- move
  - 搬家；移动；搬动
    - move away 搬开，移走
    - move in 搬入；搬来
    - move on/along 继续移动
    - move around/about 走来走去
  - 使感动
    - move sb. 使某人感动
    - 形容词 moving 令人感动的

★The company has offices in many countries, and it has sent Peter to work in Germany, France and China before.

⑤ **send** /send/**(sent, sent)** *v.* 派遣去；命令……去；发送；寄出

e.g. The UN has sent a group of scientists to work in Syria.

联合国已经派遣一组科学家去叙利亚开展工作。

They have sent some firemen to the supermarket to stop the fire.

他们已经派出一些消防员到超市阻止火势。

My aunt sent me a present on my birthday.

我姑姑在我生日的时候寄给我一份礼物。

- send sb. to do sth. 派遣某人去做某事
- send sb. to sp. 派某人去某地
- send sb. sth.(=send sth. to sb.) 给某人寄某物
- send a letter/an email 寄信/发送电子邮件

拓展：send 常用短语

send for 派人去请　　send up 发射

send off 寄出　　send out 分发

图解 send 一词多义



考题在线 5 用所给词的适当形式填空。

I promise I _____ (send) you an email to explain all of these. [武夷]

★The Robinsons love seeing the world.

⑥ **the Robinsons** 罗宾逊一家

e.g. The Greens live in the countryside.

格林一家住在乡村。

The Smiths are having dinner.

史密斯一家正在吃晚饭。

敲黑板 "the+姓氏名词的复数"表示"一家人"或"夫妇两人"，其作主语时，谓语动词用复数形式。

考题在线 6 根据括号内的英语提示，完成句子。

Look! The Browns _____(eat) supper in the kitchen. [鄂州]

点拨：考查主谓一致。在姓氏的复数形式前加定冠词表示"一家人"或"夫妇两人"，作主语时，谓语动词用复数。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★…and they find it hard to spell and pronounce the words.

⑦ **find+it+*adj.*+to do sth. 的用法**

★"find+it+adj.+to do sth."等同于find接宾语从句，其中it为形式宾语，真正的宾语是后面的动词不定式。

e.g. I found it easy to work out the physics problem.

我发现算出这道物理题很容易。

Do you think it necessary to drive a car there?

你认为开车去那儿有必要吗?

考题在线 7 After long years of war, many people in Syria are homeless. I think it important _____ a peaceful world. [广东]

A. build　　B. not build　　C. to build　　D. not to build

点拨：考查非谓语动词。本题中，it 为形式宾语，不定式 to build... 作真正的宾语。

★除find外，动词think，feel等也有类似用法。

★So far they have learnt to speak German, French, Chinese and Arabic.

⑧ **so far 到目前为止**

★so far指从过去某一时刻开始到现在为止这一段时间，常与现在完成时连用，与up to now同义。

e.g. So far we have planted about 2,000 young trees.

到目前为止我们已经种了大约 2，000 棵小树。

考题在线 8 —Do you know the Color Run, a five-kilometer race?

—Yes. So far it _____ into quite a few cities in our country.[福建]

A. comes　　B. came　　C. has come

点拨：此题用标志词法。结合 So far“至今”，可知用现在完成时“have/has+过去分词”。

★Sometimes they mix the languages.

⑨ **mix** /mɪks/ *v.* **相混合；融合**

★mix的名词mixture，意为"混合物"。

e.g. She mixed the butter and sugar together. 她把黄油和糖混合在一起。

Mix them up and the mixture will smell terrible.

把它们混合在一起，这个混合物就会发出难闻的气味。

- mix up 混合；混淆
- mix...with... 把……和……混合在一起

If you mix blue with yellow, you'll get green.

蓝色和黄色混合在一起就成了绿色。

考题在线 9 Put the ingredients in the bowl and _____, please. [黔南]

A. mix them up　　B.mix it up　　C.mix up them　　D.mix up it

点拨：考查固定用法。ingredients 是复数形式，应用代词 them 代替，在“动词 + 副词”型短语中，其后的代词宾语应放在两词之间。

图解miss的一词多义



★They have friends all over the world,but they also miss their friends in the US.

⑩ **miss** /mɪs/ *v.* **惦念；怀念；想念**

e.g. We miss you very much,Jane. 我们非常想念你，简。

考题在线 10 根据汉语意思完成句子。

如果你现在不出发，你就会错过末班车。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

_____ you don't leave now, you _____ the last bus.

★They are counting down the days.

⑪ **count down 倒数；倒计时**

e.g. People are counting down the seconds to the beginning of a new year. 人们正在为新一年的开始倒数秒数。

考题在线 11 On New Year's Eve,we all count _____ the seconds to welcome the new year.

A. up　　B. down　　C. on　　D. for

★ count down 是"动词+副词"型短语，人称代词作其宾语时，要放在 count 和 down 中间。

★How long have the Robinsons been in Egypt?

⑫ **how long 多长时间**

e.g. —How long have you lived here? 你在这儿住了多久了?

—Since I was born. 自从出生以来。

—How soon will they come back? 他们多久以后回来?

—They'll come back in two weeks. 他们两周以后回来。

—How often do you go home? 你多久回家一次?

—Once a week. 一周一次。

考题在线 12 —_____ do you sleep every day, Eric?

—For about eight hours.　　[宿迁]

A. How much　　B. How far

C. How often　　D. How long

点拨:用前后呼应法解题。how much "多少"，提问不可数名词数量或价格；how far "多远"，提问距离；how often "多久一次"，提问频率；how long "多长时间"，提问时间段。由答语 For about eight hours. 可知应用 how long 提问。

辨析：how long, how soon, how often

- how long "多长时间"，提问时间长度，用 for 或 since 来回答。
- how soon "多久以后"，多用于将来时，用"in+一段时间"回答。
- how often "多久一次"，提问动作发生的频率，可用 always, usually, once a week 等回答。

★Are they looking forward to going home?

⑬ **look forward to 希望；盼望；期望**

e.g. The students are looking forward to the English party.

学生们正在盼望着英语聚会。

I'm always looking forward to buying a new car. 我总是期望着买辆新车。

敲黑板 look forward to 中 to 为介词，后常跟名词、代词或动词的-ing形式作宾语。

考题在线 13 根据汉语意思完成句子。

孩子们总是盼望着春节。

Children always _____ _____ _____ the Spring Festival.

[广州]

考题在线答案　1. C　2. C　3. C　4. B　5. will send/am going to send　6. are eating　7. C　8. C　9. A　10. If; will miss　11. B　12. D　13. look forward to

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础20分

(答案见265页)

一、根据句意及汉语提示完成句子

1. There are a lot of _____ (古老的) buildings in Beijing.
2. I met an old friend from _____ (德国) last month.
3. If she works far away, she will_____ (搬家).
4. Don't _____ (混合) the food. It's not good for your health.
5. The couple haven't seen their son for many years and they _____ (想念) him very much.

二、用方框中所给单词或短语的适当形式填空(每个单词或短语限用一次)

look forward to, German, French, at the moment, count down

6. —Where does your friend come from?
   —_____.
7. She is trying to get the chance _____.
8. Do you like to make friends with _____?
9. The new year is coming. Many people are _____ in the square.
10. Everyone is _____ going to high school in September.

三、单项选择

11. Don't _____ the chance when you can catch it,or you will regret. [孝感]
   A. guess B. miss
   C. remember D. allow
12. The hotel is very old. It's one of _____ buildings in the city. [北京]
   A. old B. older
   C. oldest D. the oldest
13. —Do you have any plans for the holiday?
   —Yes, I'm planning to travel to Jiuzhaigou. I'm looking forward to _____ the colourful lakes and amazing waterfalls. [南京]
   A. see B. seeing
   C. sees D. saw
14. So far 50 people _____ in the earthquake.
   A. died B. have died
   C. die D. will die
15. —_____ has the girl waited for the bus over there?
   —For an hour.
   A. How often B. How many
   C. How long D. How much

四、根据汉语完成句子

16. 去年男孩的父母把他送到一所特殊的学校。
   The boy's parents _____him _____ a special school last year.
17. 孩子们有不同的梦想，比如，一些孩子想做歌手。
   Children have different dreams; _____ _____, some of them want to be singers.
18. 到目前为止，我已经去过三个国家。
   _____ _____, I have been to three countries.
19. 一位65岁的妇女于昨天从轮船里被救了出来。
   A _____ woman was saved from the ship yesterday.
20. 史密斯一家人下周将去北京度假。
   _____ _____ will go to Beijing for a holiday next week.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 3 Language in use

I. 课文原文、译文

Language practice 语言练习

Have you ever won any prizes before? 你以前获过一些奖项吗?
I haven't travelled much. 我不常旅游。
They have been to many interesting places. 他们去过许多有趣的地方。

1 Write questions for the questionnaire with *Have you ever...?* 用“你曾经……吗?”为问卷写问题。

1. have a Western meal 吃西餐
2. live in another city 住在另一个城市
3. enter a singing competition 参加一个歌唱比赛
4. travel by train 乘火车旅游
5. travel to the seaside 到海边旅游
6. try seafood 尝海鲜
7. cook dinner for your parents 为你的父母做饭

	Activities 活动	You 你	Your partner 你的同伴
1	*Have you ever had a Western meal?* 你曾经吃过西餐吗?		
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			

Now complete the *You* column. 现在完成“你”一栏。

2 Work in pairs.Ask and answer the questions in the questionnaire in Activity 1.Then complete the *Your partner* column. 结对练习。问答活动 1 中问卷上的问题。然后完成“你的同伴”一栏。

—*Have you ever had a Western meal?* 你曾经吃过西餐吗?
—*Yes, I have./No, I haven't.* 是的，我吃过。/ 不，我没吃过。

3 Complete the sentences about your partner and read them to the rest of the class.
完成有关你的同伴的句子，然后向班里的其他同学读这些句子。

1. He/She _____ a Western meal. 他 / 她_____一顿西餐。
2. He/She _____ in another city. 他 / 她_____在另外一座城市。
3. He/She _____ a singing competition. 他 / 她_____一个歌唱比赛。
4. He/She _____ by train. 他 / 她_____乘火车。
5. He/She _____ to the seaside. 他 / 她_____海边。
6. He/She _____ seafood. 他 / 她_____海鲜。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

7. He/She _____ for his/her parents. 他 / 她_____给他的 / 她的父母。

4 Complete the postcard. Use the list of *Things to do in Beijing* to help you.
完成这张明信片。用在北京做的事情的清单来帮助你。

Dear David, 亲爱的戴维：

I'm having a wonderful time① in Beijing. I've done so many things! I've...
我在北京过得很开心。我已经做了如此多的事情！我已经……

There's only one thing I haven't done: 只有一件事情我还没有做：

I... 我……

Bye for now, 现在再见吧，

Rob/rɒb/ 罗布

Things to do in Beijing 在北京做的事情
·see the Beijing Opera √ 看京剧 √
·climb the Great Wall × 爬长城 ×
·eat Beijing duck √ 吃北京烤鸭 √
·visit the Palace Museum √ 参观故宫博物院 √

5 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.You can use some of the words more than once. 用方框中的单词完成句子。一些单词你可以使用一次以上。

afford 付得起　competition 比赛　pronounce 发音　spell 拼写　tower 塔

1. I wrote a story for a(n)_____ in my English class and I won a prize.
我在英语课上为一个_____写了一个故事，并且获了奖。
2. Alice can _____ very well, and what's more②, she can write beautifully.
艾丽斯能_____非常好，并且，她能书写得漂亮。
3. Some English words are difficult to _____. 一些英语单词很难_____。
4. We visited an ancient palace with a tall _____ and a beautiful garden.
我们参观了一个带有高高的_____和一个漂亮花园的古代的宫殿。
5. Mary wants to visit the US, but the plane tickets are very expensive and she cannot _____ to go. 玛丽想去参观美国，但飞机票非常昂贵，她不能_____去。

6 Listen and check (√) the country that the people have been to. 听录音并用（√）标出那些人所去过的国家。

People 人	China 中国	the US 美国
Winnie/ˈwɪnɪ/ 温妮		
Diana 黛安娜		
Bob 鲍勃		

课文听力6

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

7 Listen again and answer the questions. 再听录音，回答问题。

1. How many times has Winnie been to the US? 温妮去过美国多少次?
2. Which country would Diana like to go again? 黛安娜想再去哪个国家?
3. Which part of China has Diana travelled around? 黛安娜环游过中国的哪个地区?
4. How did Diana travel there? 黛安娜怎么去那里旅行的?
5. Has Bob ever visited Germany? 鲍勃曾经参观过德国吗?

8 Complete the passage with the sentences in the box.There is one extra sentence.
用方框中的句子完成短文。有一个句子是多余的。

a) Call today to find out more! 今天打电话来了解更多!
b) Then we will send a gift box from you to your family or friend.
然后我们将把一个来自你的礼物箱送给你的家人或朋友。
c) A tree is also something special for a festival or a new baby.
对于一个节日或一个新生婴儿来说，一棵树也是非常特别的东西。
d) Have you ever been to a forest? 你曾经去过森林吗?
e) Grow a tree near you! 在你的附近种植一棵树!

Grow a Forest! 种植一片森林!

(1)_____ Have you ever wanted to save the trees in the forest? Do you love nature and want to keep forests safe ③? Now you can! Buy a tree—it is the perfect birthday or wedding present for someone in your family or for a friend.(2)_____ Your tree will help our world and will last longer than toys, clothes or computers.The world needs more trees—buy one ④ today, watch it grow bigger and feel proud!

(1)_____你曾经想拯救森林中的树木吗? 你喜欢大自然并且想使森林保持安全吗? 现在你可以了! 买一棵树——它是送给你某个家人或一个朋友的完美的生日或结婚礼物。(2)_____你的树将帮助我们的世界，而且它比玩具、衣服或电脑都持续得久。世界需要更多的树——今天就买一棵树，看着它长大，你会感觉自豪的!

The Grow-a-Forest gift is part of an exciting plan to make our world greener, and every gift helps to protect our world. It is easy! Buy a Grow-a-Forest gift today and choose your forest and your tree.We will take it and put it in the earth for you.(3)_____

这个“种植一片森林”的礼物是让我们的世界变得更绿的令人兴奋的计划的一部分，每份礼物都会帮助保护我们的世界。这很容易! 今天就去买一份“种植一片森林”的礼物，并选择你的森林和树。我们将带着它，为你把它种植到土中。(3)_____

In your gift box there will be: 在你的礼物箱中将会有:

·a map of the forest 一张森林地图
·a photo of your tree 一张你的树的照片
·a pair of Grow-a-Forest gloves 一副“种植一片森林”的手套
·a card with your message to your family or friend 一张带有你给你家人或朋友留言的卡片

(4)_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Around the world 世界各地

On the top of the world 在世界之巅

The world witnessed one of the greatest climbing achievements in 1953,when Tenzing /ˈtenzɪŋ/ Norgay/ˈnɔ:geɪ/ from Nepal/nəˈpɔ:l/ and Edmund/ˈedmənd/ Hillary/ˈhɪləri/ from New Zealand climbed Mount/maʊnt/Qomolangma/ˌtʃəʊməˈlʊŋmə/ for the first time.After a long and difficult climb, troubled by heavy snow, freezing wind and the lack of oxygen, they finally reached the top at 11:30 am on 29th May.They could only spend about fifteen minutes on the summit before they had to come down.But they remained heroes around the world for the rest of[5] their lives.

来自尼泊尔的丹增·诺尔盖和来自新西兰的埃德蒙·希拉里在 1953 年首次登上珠穆朗玛峰，面对登山的最伟大的成就之一，全世界都为之瞩目。经过漫长的艰苦爬行、大雪阻碍、寒风受冻和氧气短缺之后，他们最终在 5 月 29 号上午十一点半到达山顶。他们只能在顶峰度过大约 15 分钟，然后就不得不下山。但是在他们的余生中，他们仍然是全世界的英雄。

Module task:Writing a questionnaire about experiences 模块任务：写一个关于经历的问卷

9 Write a question about life experiences for each of the topics.Use *Have you ever...?*

为每个标题写一个关于生活经历的问题。用上“你曾经……吗？”

Transport:*Have you ever travelled by plane?* 运输工具：你曾经乘飞机旅行过吗？

Food:_____ 食品：_____

Book:_____ 书：_____

Sport:_____ 运动：_____

Country:_____ 国家：_____

Film:_____ 电影：_____

10 Work in groups.Choose the best question for each topic in Activity 9 and prepare a questionnaire. 小组练习。为活动 9 中每个话题选定一个最佳的问题并准备问卷。

11 Go around the classroom and ask other students your questions.Write their answers in the questionnaire. 在教室里走动，问其他学生你的问题。在问卷里写他们的答案。

Topics 话题	Questions 问题	Student 1 学生 1	Student 2 学生 2	……·
Transport 运输工具	*Have you ever travelled by plane?* 你曾经乘飞机旅行过吗？			
Book 书				
Country 国家				
Food 食品				
Sport 运动				
Film 电影				

12 Return to your group and talk about other students' answers to your questionnaire. 回到你的小组，讨论其他学生对你问卷的答案。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础20分

•考点应用 •考点批注

★I'm having a wonderful time in Beijing.

★have a wonderful time 相当于 have a great/good time 或 enjoy oneself 或 have (a lot of) fun。

① **have a wonderful time 过得愉快，玩得高兴**

e.g. I'm sure you will have a wonderful time in my hometown.
我相信你在我的家乡会玩得开心。

考题在线1 —I'm going to Disneyland in Shanghai next month.
—_____. There are many wonderful things to see and to do there.

A. That's all right　　B. Have a good time
C. Good luck　　D. I hope so

点拨:考查情景交际。That's all right 没关系；Have a good time 玩得开心；Good luck 祝你好运；I hope so 我希望如此。根据情景可知此处应填“玩得开心”。

★Alice can spell/pronounce very well, and what's more, she can write beautifully.

★what's more 用来表示递进关系，独立使用，more 后面不加词和句。既可放句首，也可放句中。what's more 后面一般要加逗号。

② **what's more 而且；并且；更进一步来说**

e.g. Mary has a sweet voice and what's more, she can dance very well.
玛丽嗓音甜美，而且舞跳得非常好。

考题在线2 Facial recognition(人脸识别) technology is widely used for payment. _____, we needn't enter the passwords any more. [扬州]

A. For example　　B. As a result
C. What's worse　　D. What's more

★Do you love nature and want to keep forests safe?

③ **“keep sb./sth.+*adj.*” 的用法**

★keep sb./sth.+adj. 表示“使某人/某物保持某种状态”，形容词作宾语补足语。

e.g. She kept the child quiet. 她让孩子别出声。
We should keep the classroom clean. 我们应该保持教室干净。
Please keep quiet. 请保持安静。
They kept working until midnight. 他们一直工作到午夜。
He kept me waiting for half an hour. 他让我等了半个小时。
That will keep you from being hurt. 那会防止你受到伤害。

- keep+adj. 保持……状态
- keep doing sth. 不断做某事
- keep sb./sth. doing sth. 使某人/某物持续做某事
- keep...from doing sth. 阻止……做某事

考题在线3 My little brother is a tidy boy. He always keeps his room _____. [长春]

A. clean　　B. to clean　　C. cleaning　　D. cleaned

点拨:考查固定搭配。keep...clean 表示“使……保持干净”，其中的 clean 是形容词，作宾语补足语。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★辨析：one，it 与 that

- one 指代前面提到的同类事物中的一个，但不是前面提到的那一个事物，指代可数名词单数。如果指代同类事物中的一些，要用 ones。
- it 指代前面提到的那一个事物，可指代可数名词单数或不可数名词。其复数形式为 they/them。
- that 常用于比较结构中，指代已经被提及的事物。

★The world needs more trees—buy one today...

④ one 的用法

e.g. The coat is too big. Could you give me another one?

这件外套太大了。你可以给我拿另外一件吗?

I want to use your ruler. Pass it to me,please.

我想用一下你的尺子。请把它递给我。

The population of China is larger than that of America.

中国的人口比美国的人口多。

考题在线 4 —Excuse me, I'd like to buy a birthday gift for my son.

—We have different kinds of new toys for boys. You can choose _____ for your son. [南充]

A. that B. one C. it D. either

点拨:由上句中“我想为我儿子买个生日礼物”及下文中服务员介绍“我们有不同种类的男孩的新玩具”可知此处意为“你可以为你儿子选一个”。one 代指上文提到的同类名词中的“一个”。

★But they remained heroes around the world for the rest of their lives.

⑤ the rest of... 剩余的……；其余的……

★the rest of 后常接名词或代词。the rest of 后面接名词作主语时，其谓语动词的形式取决于 of 后的名词。

e.g. Some students are planting trees.The rest of them are watering the trees. 一些学生在植树。剩余的学生在给树浇水。

I drank only a little of the water. The rest was drunk by him.

我只喝了一点点水，剩下的被他喝了。

考题在线 5 There are five questions in the math book.Three of the questions are very difficult, but the rest of them _____ (be) very easy.

考题在线答案 1. B 2. D 3. A 4. B 5. are

Ⅲ. 模块语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

现在完成时（1）

考点 现在完成时的概念及构成

考向 1：现在完成时的概念

现在完成时表示过去发生或已经完成的动作对现在造成的影响或结果，或从过去已经开始，持续到现在的动作或状态。



考题在线 1 —It's ten years since we came here.

—How time flies! We _____ in China for so long. [安徽]

A. work B. worked

C. will work D. have worked

考向 2：[重点] 各种句式

肯定句	主语 +have/has+ 动词的过去分词 + 其他
否定句	主语 +haven't/hasn't+ 动词的过去分词 + 其他
一般疑问句	Have/Has+ 主语 + 动词的过去分词 + 其他？其肯定回答为“Yes, ...have/has.”；否定回答为“No,...haven't/hasn't.”

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

e.g. I have seen the film twice.

我看过这部电影两次。

We haven't met him before.

我们以前没有见过他。

—Has she taken the medicine?

她吃过药了吗?

—Yes,she has./No,she hasn't.

是的，她吃过了。/不，她还没吃。

速记小筏：巧记现在完成时

学习现在完成时，谓语结构要记住。"have/has+过去分词"，主要用法影响或结果。

just，already 常用着，过去动作或状态。一直延续到现在，for 或 since 把时间带。

考题在线 2 The students of Class Three have cleaned their classroom.(改为否定句)

The students of Class Three_____ _____ their classroom.

考向 3：[难点] 动词过去分词的变化

(1) 规则变化：

一般情况下，在动词后加 -ed	work → worked 工作
在以字母 e 结尾的动词后只加 -d	close → closed 关
以辅音字母加 y 结尾的动词，应将 y 改为 i 再加 -ed	carry → carried 携带
以重读闭音节（包括重读 r 音节）结尾且末尾只有一个辅音字母的动词，要双写末尾的辅音字母再加 -ed	stop → stopped 停止 prefer → preferred 宁愿

(2) 不规则变化：不规则变化没有规律，需要在日常学习中加强记忆。

如：do → done 做；go → gone 去；

see → seen 看见；wake → woken 醒

考题在线 3 Diana can't go to the farm with her classmates because she _____ a bad cold. [呼和浩特]

A. will catch　　B. is catching

C. has caught　　D. is caught

点拨：过去患感冒对现在造成的影响是"不能和同学们去农场"，因此本句用现在完成时。

考题在线答案 1. D　2. haven't cleaned　3. C

Ⅳ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20 分

写作小练笔

Mike and Clare are living in Cairo in Egypt, one of the biggest and busiest cities in Africa. Their father is working for a big company in Cairo. They moved here with their parents two years ago.

介绍"where they are"

They love seeing the world. They have been to many interesting places. For example, in Egypt ,they have seen/visited the Pyramids, travelled on a boat on the Nile River, and visited the palaces and towers of ancient kings and queens. Mike and Clare have also begun to learn Arabic, the language of Egypt. They find it hard to pronounce the words. However, they still enjoy learning it. 介绍"what they have done"

Peter's company has asked him to work back in the US, so they are very happy. They miss their friends in the US. 介绍"How they feel about coming back to America"

模块话题 [临沂]

请以"My trip to _____"为题，根据以下要求与提示，用英语写一篇短文，记叙你的一次旅行。

要求：

1. 请在题目空格处填入你旅行的地点，如：Beijing, Jinan 或 Qingdao 等；
2. 短文中不得出现任何真实的人名、校名及其他相关信息，否则不予评分；
3. 不少于 60 词。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

提示：

1.Where did you go?

2.What did you do there?

3.How did you feel about the trip?

My trip to_____

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

1. 根据题目可知本文应用第一人称，时态以一般过去时为主，根据实际表述搭配使用现在完成时和现在进行时等。

2. 开篇点名旅游地点、旅游方式、旅伴和时间等。

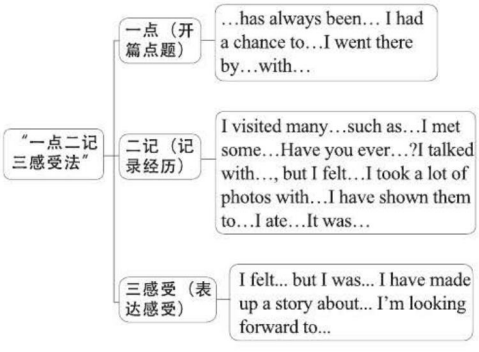
3. 主体部分叙述旅游过程，包括对景点的描写、发生的具体事情、自己的感受等。时态用一般过去时。

写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

“一点二记三感受法”写旅游经历类作文

一点：开篇点题（地点、方式、旅伴、时间）；二记：记录旅游过程；三感受：表达你的心情和感受。

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）



经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	vacation, visit, meet, foreigner, during, feel, nervous, eat, delicious, again
短语	by train,places of interest,such as, talk with, take a lot of photos, show sth. to sb. make up, look forward to, one day
句子	① Beijing has always been my dream place for a visit. ②I had a chance to see Beijing last summer. ③ Have you ever spoken to foreigners in English? ④I felt a little tired but I was happy.

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

My trip to Beijing

Beijing has always been my dream place for a visit. I had a chance to see Beijing last summer. I went there by train with my family for the summer vacation.

I visited many famous places of interest, such as the Great Wall, the Summer Palace, the Palace Museum and the Bird's Nest, and I met some foreigners during the visit. Have you ever spoken to foreigners in English? I talked with them, but I felt nervous. I took a lot of photos with my camera. I have shown them to my friends. I ate the Peking Roast Duck. It was very delicious.

I felt a little tired but I was happy. I have made up a story about visiting Beijing. I'm looking forward to seeing it again one day.

名师点评：本文用“一点二记三感受法”叙述北京旅行经历并抒发自己的情感，文章脉络清晰，一目了然。

第一：开篇点题，短文开篇用现在完成时态引出旅游目的地及在自己心中的地位，用了by短语和with短语说明旅行方式和旅伴。

第二：叙述了旅行的过程和经历，用一般过去时描述参观的地点，用了短语places of interest和such as，体现了作者的语言功底。结合旅行经历插入了现在完成时态，使内容更加丰富，进一步贴近读者。

第三：连续用了三种时态抒发自己的感想，富有层次感。


及测听试力卷

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅴ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础20分

☞(答案见265页)

一、针对性训练

1.Miss Wang is our English teacher,and _____, she is our friend.

A. at first　　B. what's more

C. such as　　D. so that

2.The book is _____ interesting _____ I can't put it down. [孝感]

A. so; that　　B. such; that

C. too; to　　D. very; that

3.The medicine _____ millions of people's lives since it was put into use. [上海]

A. is saving　　B. will save

C. has saved　　D. had saved

4.The rest of the flowers _____ red in our classroom.

A. be　　B. am

C. is　　D. are

5.Sam finds sweeping robots useful, and he plans to buy _____ for his grandma. [温州]

A. it　　B. one　　C. this　　D.that

二、语法专练

6.—Recently, school violence _____ in some schools.

—Luckily, our government has carried out some policies to stop it. [恩施]

A. has appeared　　B. appeared

C. will appear

7.I don't feel very well,Jack. I'm afraid you _____ me your cold. [武汉]

A. give　　B. had given

C. have given　　D. would give

8.The water _____ dark and dirty. It's no longer safe to drink. [江西]

A. became　　B. has become

C. will become　　D. was becoming

9.I can't find my wallet anywhere.I'm sure I _____ it. [内江]

A. lost　　B. will lose

C. lose　　D.have lost

10.—High-speed trains, Mobile payment, Sharing bikes and Online shopping are called "four new great inventions" of modern China.

—They _____ our daily lives more convenient. [咸宁]

A. have made　　B. had made

C. have been made　　D. made

三、模块知识浓缩

用方框中所给单词的适当形式完成短文

count, be, find, send, king, see, move, mix, ask, miss

Two years ago, the company _____[11] Peter to Cairo in Egypt, so his children, Mike and Clare, _____[12] there with him.

They love seeing the world. They have _____[13] to many interesting places. In Egypt, they have _____[14] the Pyramids, travelled on a boat on the Nile River, and visited the palaces and towers of ancient _____[15] and queens.

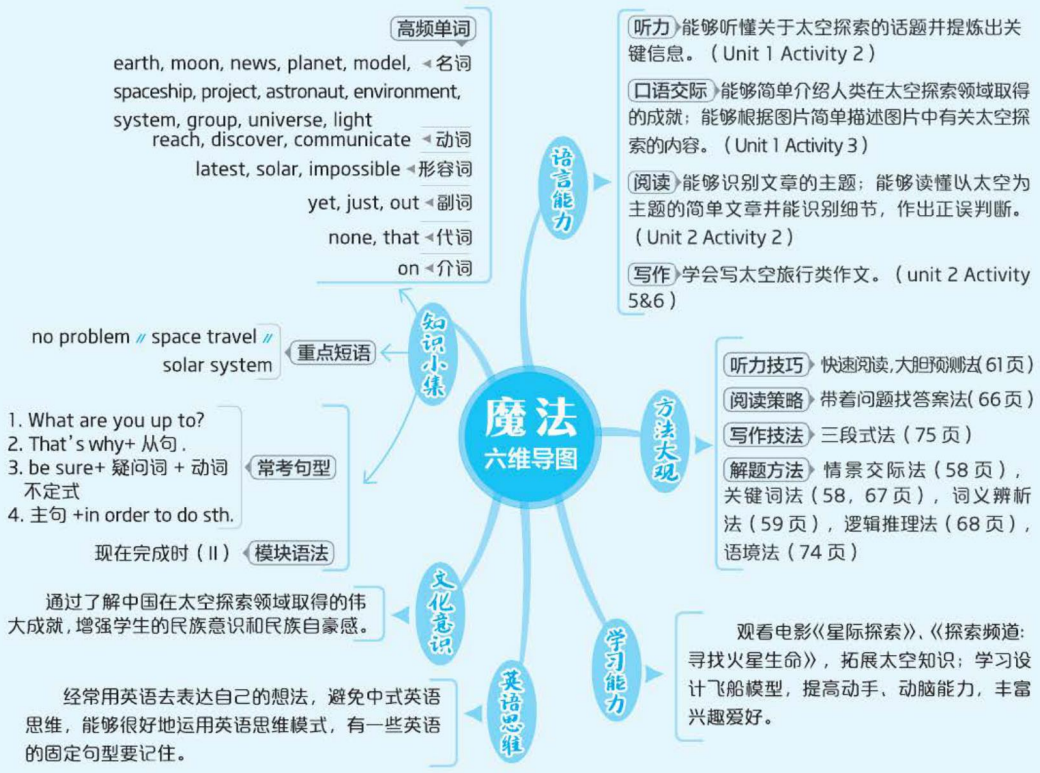
Mike and Clare have begun to learn Arabic. But they _____[16] it hard to spell and pronounce the words. Sometimes they _____[17] German, French, Chinese and Arabic.

The company has _____[18] Peter to work back in the US. The children are happy about that. They _____[19] their friends in the US. They are _____[20] down the days now.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Module 3 Journey to space

词汇表听写



记忆大师

Unit 1 Has it arrived yet?

II 必背单词

1.reach *v.* 到达；抵达 →reaches（第三人称单数形式）

2.yet *adv.* 还，尚（常用于疑问句或否定句中）

→already 已经（常用于肯定句中）

3.discover *v.* 发现；找到 →discovery *n.* 发现

4.earth *n.* 地球

5.moon *n.* 月亮；月球

6.news *n.* 新闻；消息

7.just *adv.* 刚才；刚刚

8.model *n.* 模型

9.spaceship *n.* 航天器；宇宙飞船

10.project *n.* 计划；工程；项目

11.latest *adj.* 最近的；最新的

12.on *prep.* 在（播放）中；关于……

13.astronaut *n.* 宇航员

II 必背短语

14.send back 发送回来

15.hope to do sth. 希望做某事

16.far away 遥远

17.in order to 为了；目的是

18.space travel 航天旅行

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

19.go online 上网

20.search for 搜寻；查找

必背句子

21.What **are** you **up to**? 你在干什么呢?

22.I haven't started **yet** because I'm not sure how **to make** it.

我还没有开始，因为我不确定怎样做。

23.That's interesting! 那是有趣的!

Unit 2 We have not found life on any other planets yet.

必背单词

1.**none** *pron.* 没有一人；没有一个；一点儿也没有 →**all**（对应词）全部；都

2.**environment** *n.* 环境 →**environmental** *adj.* 环境的

3.**that** *pron.* 那，那个（指代已被提及的事物）→**this**(对应词) 这，这个

4.**light** *n.* 光；光线；光亮 →*adj.* 轻的

5.**impossible** *adj.* （事情）办不到的，不可能的 →**possible**（反义词）可能的

6.**communicate** *v.* 联系；交流 →**communication** *n.* 交流

7.solar *adj.* 太阳的；与太阳有关的

8.system *n.* 系统；体系

9.group *n.* 群；组

10.galaxy *n.* 星系

11.universe *n.* 宇宙

12.out *adv.* 在远方

必背短语

13.hundreds of millions of 数以亿计的

14.in the universe 在宇宙中

15.the solar system 太阳系

16.have to 不得不

17.take photos 拍照

必背句子

18.**However**, we have not found life on **any other planets** yet.

然而，我们还没有在任何其他行星上发现生命。

19.The earth is a planet and it **goes around** the sun.

地球是颗行星，它围绕着太阳转。

20.It is **impossible** to **imagine**. 这无法想象。

21.Why has no one **communicated with** us?

为什么没有一个人来联系我们呢?

Unit 3 Language in use

必背短语

1.come back 回来

2.the space station 太空站

3.look for 寻找

4.as good as 和……一样好

5.for a long time 很长时间

6.wait for 等待

必背句子

7.He decided **to be** an astronaut because he has always **been interested in** space.

他决定当一名宇航员，因为他一直对太空很感兴趣。

8.People **all around the world** watched their televisions and waited for the news to reach the earth.

全世界的人们都在电视机前等待着到达地球的消息。

必背语法

9.**I've just made** a model spaceship.

我刚刚制作了一个宇宙飞船模型。

10.Astronauts **have already been to** the moon.

宇航员们已经到过月球了。

11.**Has it arrived** yet? 它已经到达了吗?

12.We **have not found** life on any other planets yet.

我们还没有在任何其他星球上发现生命。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 1 Has it arrived yet?

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

Listening and vocabulary 听力与词汇

1 Listen and number the words as you hear them. 听录音，把你听到的单词编号。

课文听力1

earth/ɜ:θ/ □地球□ land □陆地□ message □信息□ moon/mu:n/ □月亮□
news/nju:z/ □消息□ planet/'plænɪt/ □行星□ reach/ri:tʃ/ □到达□
scientist □科学家□

2 Listen again and complete the notes. 再听一遍，完成笔记。

·news about the trip to (1)_____ 关于去 (1)_____旅行的消息
·journey of (2)_____ months (2)_____月的旅程
·has not sent back any (3)_____yet 还没有发送回任何 (3)_____
·hope to find (4)_____ on Mars/mɑ:z/ 希望在火星上发现 (4)_____

3 Listen and read. 听一听，读一读。

课文朗读3

Daming: Hi, Tony. What are you up to?① 嘿，托尼。你在干什么呢?

Tony: Hi, Daming. I've just/dʒʌst/② made a model/'mɒdl/spaceship/'speɪsˌʃɪp/ for our school project/'prɒdʒekt/.
嘿，大明。我刚刚为我们学校的课题制作了一个宇宙飞船模型。

Daming: I haven't started yet/jet/③ because I'm not sure how to make it. Can you help me?
我还没有开始，因为我不确定怎样做。你能帮我吗?

Tony: Sure, no problem. Have you heard the latest/'leɪtɪst/④ news?⑤ Scientists have sent a spaceship to Mars. The journey has taken several months.
当然，没问题。你听说最近的新闻了吗? 科学家们已经把一艘宇宙飞船发送到了火星上。这次旅程花费了几个月的时间。

Daming: Has it arrived yet? 它已经到达了吗?

Tony: Yes, it has arrived already. That's why it's on/ɒn/ the news.
是的，它已经到达了。那就是它（宇宙飞船）上新闻的原因。

Daming: So have they discovered/dɪ'skʌvəd/⑥ life on Mars?
那么，他们在火星上发现生命了吗?

Tony: No, they haven't yet. 不，还没有。

Daming: Are there any astronauts/'æstrəˌnɔ:ts/ in the spaceship? 宇宙飞船里有宇航员吗?

Tony: No, there aren't. 不，没有。

Daming: Why not? Astronauts have already been to the moon.
为什么没有? 宇航员们已经到过月球了。

Tony: Yes, but no one has been to Mars yet, because Mars is very far away⑦, much farther⑧ than

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

the moon. Lots of scientists are working hard in order to ⑨ send astronauts to Mars one day.

定语 主语 谓语 状语 目的状语 时间状语

是的，但是还没有人去过火星，因为火星（离地球）非常遥远，比月球（离地球的距离）远得多。许多科学家们正在努力研究，目的是有朝一日把宇航员们送到火星。

Daming: That's interesting! How can I get information on space travel?

那是有趣的！我怎样才能得到有关太空旅行的信息?

Tony: You can go online to search for ⑩ information. 你可以上网搜索信息。

Daming: I will. Thank you, Tony! 我会的。谢谢你，托尼!

Everyday English 日常英语

·What are you up to? 你在干什么呢?

·Sure, no problem. 当然，没问题。

Now answer the questions. 现在回答问题。

1. What school project have Daming and Tony got? 大明和托尼有什么样的学校课题?
2. How does Daming feel about the school project? 大明感觉学校课题怎么样?
3. What news has Tony heard? 托尼听说了什么新闻?
4. Has anyone been to Mars? Why? 有人去过火星吗? 为什么?

4 Complete the passage with the correct form of the words in the box.

用方框中单词的正确形式完成短文。

arrive 到达　discover 发现　planet 行星　send 发送　yet 还

On today's news, Tony has heard that scientists have (1)_____ a spaceship to Mars and it has (2)_____ on the (3)_____ after a journey of several months from the earth. Scientists have not (4)_____ life on Mars (5)_____. And no astronaut has ever been to Mars because it is very far away.

在今天的新闻中，托尼听说科学家们已经 (1)_____一艘宇宙飞船到火星，离开地球经过几个月的飞行之后，它已经 (2)_____(3)_____上。科学家们 (5)_____ 没有在火星上 (4)_____ 生命。没有一位宇航员曾经到过火星因为它太遥远了。

Pronunciation and speaking 发音与会话

5 Listen and underline the words the speaker stresses. 听录音，给说话者重读的单词加下划线。

1. I've just made a model spaceship for our school project.

我刚刚为我们的学校课题制作了一个宇宙飞船模型。

2. I haven't started yet because I'm not sure how to make it. 我还没有开始，因为我不确定如何制作它。
3. Has it arrived yet? 它已经到达了吗?
4. Astronauts have already been to the moon. 宇航员们已经去过月球了。

Now listen again and repeat. 现在再听一遍并重复。

6 Make lists of what we have and have not done in space travel.

列出我们在太空旅行做过的和未做过的事情的清单。

We have... 我们已经……

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

We have not... 我们没有……

7 **Work in pairs. Talk about space travel with the lists in Activity 6.**

结对练习。用活动 6 中的清单谈论太空旅行。

—*Have we sent a spaceship to Mars?* ——我们往火星上发送宇宙飞船了吗?

—*Yes,we have. But...* ——是的，我们发送过。但是……

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注 •考点应用

★What are you up to?

① be up to 从事于；忙于

- be up to sth. 正在做某事，忙于某事
- be up to sb. 由某人决定

e.g. I haven't seen you these days. What are you up to?

这些天我都没有见到你。你在做什么呢?

Which one do you want? It is up to you. 你想要哪一个? 你决定吧。

考题在线 1 —Our neighborhood is so dirty. Shall we clean it this afternoon or tomorrow?

—_____. Any time is OK. 【导学号：9465610】[南充]

A. It is up to you　　B. Excuse me

C. Have a good time　　D. I'm afraid I can't

点拨:用情景交际法解题。从答语的第二句意思可知，同意第一个人所提的建议，故选 A。其他三个选项均不符合语境。

★I've just made a model spaceship for our school project.

★辨析:just 和 just now

- just 副词，常和现在完成时连用，通常放在助动词之后，实义动词之前。
- just now 副词短语，相当于 a moment ago“刚才”，常和一般过去时连用，通常放在句尾。

② just /dʒʌst/ *adv.* 刚刚

e.g. Tony was here just now; he has just gone to the library.

托尼刚才在这儿；他刚去了图书馆。

考题在线 2 Miss Smith, a man named John phoned you _____. He asked you to call him back.

A. just　　B. now

C. just now　　D. from now on

点拨:此题用关键词法。just now“刚才”，常和一般过去时连用。根据句中的 phoned 可知答案。

★I haven't started yet because I'm not sure how to make it.

③ yet /jet/ *adv.* 还，尚

e.g. I haven't heard from her yet. 我还没有收到她的来信。

—Have you decided which book to write about yet?

你已经决定要写哪本书了吗?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

—Yes, I have. 是的，我决定了。

I have already seen the film. 我已经看过那部电影了。

Have you had breakfast already? 难道你已经吃过早饭了?

—Have you eaten your breakfast?

你吃早餐了吗?

敲黑板 not yet 意为“还没有”，常用于现在完成时的一般疑问句的否定回答。

—No, not yet. 还没有。

知识微课

★辨析：yet 和 already

- yet 用于否定句句末时，意为“还，尚”，表示某事尚未发生；用于一般疑问句句末时，意为“已经”。
- already 意为“已经”，一般用于肯定句中。用于疑问句中时，表达惊喜、意外等感情。

考题在线 3 We have seen the film _____. [重庆]

A. already B. ever C. yet D. just

点拨：考查副词词义辨析。already 已经，常用于肯定句；ever 曾经，常用于疑问句；yet 还，但是，常用于否定句、疑问句；just 仅仅，只是，常用于肯定句。本句是肯定句，又是现在完成时态，根据语境可知是副词 already 的用法。

考题在线 4 —Is dinner ready?

—Not _____. [武威]

A. already B. just C. yet D. ever

点拨：考查副词用法。句意为“——晚饭准备好了吗? ——还没有”。not yet 意为“尚未、还没有”，其他选项 already“已经”，just“刚刚”，ever“曾经”均不符合句意。

★Have you heard the latest news?

④ **latest** /ˈleɪtɪst/ *adj.* 最近的；最新的

e.g. Do you have any latest news about Mary? 你有关于玛丽的最新消息吗?

Tom is the latest student to get to school in our class.

在我们班里汤姆是到校最晚的学生。

- latest 作形容词，仅用于名词前作定语。
- latest 也是形容词 late（晚的）的最高级，意为“最晚的”。

考题在线 5 根据汉语提示完成句子。

With the development of society, people are used to searching for the _____ (最新的) information on the Internet.

⑤ **news** /njuːz/ *n.* 新闻；消息

e.g. The news is at seven. 新闻节目在七点播出。

I have a piece of news to tell you. 我有一则消息要告诉你。

★news 是不可数名词，没有复数形式。如果表示“一则消息”，用 a piece of news。

考题在线 6 Did you hear the _____? A scientist will visit our school. [河北]

A. advice B. news C. praise D. choice

点拨：用词义辨析法解题。advice 意见；news 新闻，消息；praise 赞扬；choice 选择，抉择。根据语境可知，应是听说这个消息。

★辨析 discover，find

- discover 通常指发现他人尚未发现但已经存在的东西，后跟名词、代词作宾语，也可跟复合宾语和从句。
- find 表示找到丢失的或不知道的人或物，强调找的结果。

★So have they discovered life on Mars?

⑥ **discover**/dɪˈskʌvə/ *v.*(***to find sb./sth. that was hidden or that you did not expect to find***) 发现；找到

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

uncover v. 揭开
↑
cover v. 覆盖
↓
discover v. 发现
↙ ↘
discoverer n. 发现者　discovery n. 发现

e.g. The Curies are best known for discovering radium.
居里夫妇最知名之处是发现镭。

Who found the lost girl at last? 最后谁找到了那个丢失的女孩?

考题在线 7 根据汉语提示完成句子。

I'm sure more and more new things will be _____（发现）in the future. [阜康、米泉]

★**Yes, but no one has been to Mars yet, because Mars is very far away, much farther than the moon.**

⑦ **far away 遥远**

e.g. They don't live far away. 他们住得不远。

辨析: far away 与 faraway

far away	意为“遥远”，可作表语或状语。若表示“离……远”，应用“far away from...”。	The mountain is far away from the city. 那座山离城市很远。
faraway	形容词，是由 far 和 away 构成的合成词，意为“遥远的”，在句中作前置定语。	Her father lived in a faraway village. 她的父亲住在一个遥远的村庄。

far 的比较级
- farther：表示距离或时间上“更远”
- further：表示距离或时间上“更远”，还可表示抽象意义的“更多的，更进一步的”

考题在线 8 事实上，太阳离我们非常遥远。

In fact, the sun is very _____ _____ from us.

⑧ **farther** /fɑːðə(r)/ *adj.* & *adv.* **更远**

e.g. I can't go any farther. 我再也走不动了。

I have nothing further to say. 我没有更多要说的了。

考题在线 9 —Whose home is _____ from school, Alice's or Daisy's?
—Alice's, I think.
A. far　B. farther　C. farthest　D. the farthest

★**Lots of scientists are working hard in order to send astronauts to Mars one day.**

⑨ **in order to do sth. 为了 / 以便做某事**

e.g. In order to finish the writing, he worked late into the night.
为了完成写作，他工作到深夜。

I got up early this morning in order to catch the early train.=I got up early this morning so as to catch the early train.
为了赶早班火车，今天早晨我起床很早。

I'm saving money in order that I can buy a house.=I'm saving money in order to buy a house. 我正在为买房子攒钱。

考题在线 10 In order _____ for the competition, my sister forced herself to get up early this morning. [天水]
A. not to be late　B. not being late

★ in order to 后跟动词原形，既可放句中也可位于句首。其否定形式是 in order not to do sth.“为了不做某事”；in order to 相当于 so as to，但 so as to 不能位于句首。

★ in order to 可与 in order that 相互转换，in order that 引导目的状语从句，不能位于句首，从句中常用 can, could, may, might 等情态动词。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

C. to be late　　D. being late

点拨:考查非谓语动词。in order to 意为“为了”，其后跟动词原形表示目的，其否定形式为 in order not to do sth.，意为“为了不做某事”。

★You can go online to search for information.

⑩ **search for 搜寻；搜索；寻找**

e.g. The police searched the man and found a gun.

警察给那个人搜身，找到了一把枪。

They all went there to search for the lost child.

他们都到那儿去搜寻那个走失的孩子。

★辨析 search, search for

搜寻；搜查
- search：后接人指“搜身”，后接物时表示对某个地点的搜查
- search for：强调寻找的行为，表示花费极大的精力去搜寻某个特定的目标，指竭力想要找到某人或某物

考题在线 11 Rose finished her study in the university and went to _____ a good job.

A. take care of　　B. look after

C. care for　　D. search for

点拨:take care of “照顾，照料”；look after “照顾”；care for “照料；喜欢”；search for “搜寻；寻找”，由“finished her study”可判断“她是毕业后找工作”。

考题在线答案 1. A　2. C　3. A　4. C　5. latest　6. B　7. discovered　8. far away　9. B　10. A　11. D

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

☞(答案见266页)

听力技巧

快速阅读，大胆预测法（听录音时，如有听不懂的地方，可以根据上下文推测其含义，听完后再去判断其词义。切忌在某个词语上滞留，影响短文的理解。）

听力过程

听教材 Activity 1，完成表格

课文听力1

The news on the __1__.	The news about the trip to __2__.
	A journey of __3__ months.
	It has not sent back any __4__ yet.
	Scientists hope to find __5__ on Mars.

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

☞(答案见266页)

一、根据句意及汉语或首字母提示写单词

1. The _____ (地球) is our home. We must take good care of it.
2. My next _____ (计划；工程) is decorating the kitchen.
3. The scientists haven't d_____ any life in outer space yet.
4. I want to be a good a_____ like Yang Liwei.
5. Tony has already made a _____ (模型) of the car.

二、从方框中选择合适的词填空

news, spaceship, reach, away, just

6. I hope to travel to space by _____.
7. I have _____ bought several books on

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

science.

8. —When did you _____ Shanghai?

—Yesterday afternoon.

9.The bad _____ made her feel quite sad.

10.I live far _____ from Beijing.

三、单项选择

11.—Hi, Tony. What are you _____ to?

—I'm watching TV.

A. on　　B. up

C. down　　D. for

12. —Have you heard the good news _____?

—Yes, I have. I have _____ heard it.

A. just; just　　B. yet; just

C. just; yet　　D. yet; yet

13.—Look! Your teacher Miss White is over there.

—No, it can't be her. She _____ to Beijing. [南充]

A. has gone　　B. has been

C. went　　D. will go

14.—Is Lily's home _____away from the school than Linda's?

—Yes, it is. Lily lives two miles away but Linda lives nearby.

A. far　　B. farther

C. farthest　　D. the farthest

15. Columbus _____ the new land, and Edison _____ the electric light(电灯).

A.discovered;discovered

B.discovered;invented

C.invented;invented

D.invented;discovered

四、根据汉语完成句子，每空一词

16. 刚才我的老师告诉我要注意书写。

My teacher told me to pay attention to my handwriting _____ _____.

17. 你可以上网搜索有关太空的信息。

You can go online to _____ _____ information about space.

18. 你怎么看待太空旅行，王雅?

What do you think of _____ _____, Wang Ya?

19. 为了实现我们的中国梦，我们必须努力学习和工作。

_____ _____ _____ achieve our Chinese Dream, we must study and work hard.

20. 我那时生病了。那就是为什么我拒绝了他的邀请。

I was ill at that time. _____ _____ I refused his invitation.

Unit 2 We have not found life on any other planets yet.



I. 课文原文、译文及导读

导读批注　　原文译文·导读

Reading and vocabulary 阅读与词汇

Pre-reading（读前）

1. Do you know how large the universe is?
2. Have we found life on other planets?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

1 **Work in pairs. Look at the picture and talk about what you know about Chinese spaceships.** 结对练习。看图片，讨论你了解的有关中国宇宙飞船的事情。

Shenzhou-9 *is a manned spaceship*. 神舟九号是一个载人飞船。

Learning to learn 学会学习

When you read a passage with a title and pictures, think about the words you may find in the passage, and the questions you may want to ask before you start to read.

当你阅读带有题目和图片的文章时，在你开始阅读之前，思考一下你可能在文章中找到的单词和你可能想问的问题。

2 **Read the passage and choose the best title for it.**

阅读文章，选择最佳标题。

课文朗读2

1. Anyone out there? 外太空有人吗?
2. Life on the earth 地球上的生命
3. The sun and other stars 太阳和其他恒星
4. The stars at night 夜晚的星星

While-reading（读中）

1. How many planets go around the sun?
2. Which planet has an environment for people to live?
3. Which is bigger, the solar system or the Galaxy?

Scientists think that there has been life on the earth for hundreds of millions of① years. However, we have not found life on any other planets yet.

科学家们认为地球上的生命已有数亿年的历史。然而，我们还没有在任何其他行星上发现生命。

The earth is a planet and it goes around the sun. Seven other planets also go around the sun. None/nʌn/② of them has an environment/ɪnˈvaɪrənmənt/ like that/ðæt/ of the earth, so scientists do not think they will find life on them. The sun and its planets are called the solar/ˈsəʊlə/ system/ˈsɪstəm/, and our solar system is a small part of a much larger group/gru:p/ of stars and planets, called the Galaxy /ˈgæləksi/ or the Milky/ˈmɪlki/Way. There are billions of stars in the Galaxy, and our sun is only one of them.

地球是颗行星，它围绕着太阳转。此外还有七颗行星也围绕着太阳转。它们中没有一颗有像地球那样的环境，因此科学家们认为他们不会在它们上面发现生命。太阳和它的行星被称为太阳系，并且我们的太阳系只是一个由恒星和行星组成的星系的一小部分，这个星系比太阳系大得多，称作银河系

批 体裁：

说明文

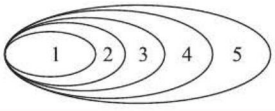
批 段落之间的逻辑关系：

层进结构

Para 1: life on the earth
↓
Para 2: the solar system
↓
Para 3: other galaxies
↓
Para 4: spaceships to Mars
↓
Para 5: scientists' questions

批 词语赏析：

阅读第2,3段，只要抓住几个关键词和短语就能很形象地理解太空中"行星-恒星-太阳系-银河系-宇宙"之间的大小或包含关系：1. planet (earth) 2. star (sun) 3. solar system 4. galaxy 5. universe



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

或银河。在银河系中有数十亿的恒星，而我们的太阳只是其中之一。

Scientists have also discovered many other galaxies in the universe/ˈjuːnɪˌvɜːs/. They are very far away and their light/laɪt/ has to travel for many years to reach us. So how large is the universe? It is impossible/ɪmˈpɒsəbl/ ③ to imagine.

科学家们在宇宙中还发现了许多其他星系。它们非常遥远，并且它们的光要经过很多年才能到达我们这里。那么，宇宙有多大呢？这无法想象。

Scientists have sent spaceships to the planet Mars to take photos. They have even sent spaceships to travel outside the solar system. However, no spaceship has travelled far enough ④ to reach other stars in our Galaxy.

科学家们已经发射了宇宙飞船去火星拍照。他们甚至发射了宇宙飞船让其在太阳系外飞行。然而，没有一艘宇宙飞船飞行得足够远，到达我们银河系中的其他恒星。

批 句子赏析：

文章最后一段通过三个问句质疑太空中是否有其他生命存在，这是科学家们尚未解开的谜题，说明科学探究永无止境，人类太空探索永远在路上。

Scientists have always asked the questions: with so many stars in the universe, are we alone ⑤, or is there life out/aʊt/ there in space? Have there been visitors to the earth from other planets? Why has no one communicated/kəˈmjuːnɪkeɪtɪd/ ⑥ with us? We do not know the answers... yet.

科学家们总是问这些问题：宇宙中有这么多星球，我们是孤独的吗，抑或太空中还有其他生命存在呢？有从其他行星来到地球的访客吗？为什么没有一个人来联系我们呢？我们还不知道答案……

Post-reading（读后）

写作小练笔

☞（答案见74页）

3 Check (√) the true sentences. 给正确的句子打（√）。

1. The earth is a star. ☐ 地球是一颗恒星。☐
2. The sun is a star. ☐ 太阳是一颗恒星。☐
3. There is more than one galaxy in the universe. ☐ 在宇宙中不止一个星系。☐
4. The light from the stars in other galaxies has travelled for a long time to reach us. ☐
   来自其他星系中星星的光要花费很长时间到达我们（这里）。☐
5. Scientists have received many messages from space. ☐
   科学家们已经收到了来自太空的许多信息。☐
6. Spaceships have visited most of the universe. ☐ 宇宙飞船已经拜访了大部分的宇宙。☐

4 Complete the passage with the words and expression in the box. 用方框中的单词和短语完成短文。

communicate 交流	environment 环境	none 没有一人
solar system 太阳系	universe 宇宙	

Is there life on other planets? There are seven other planets in our (1)_____, but

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

(2)_____ of them has a(n)(3)_____like that of the earth. Spaceships from the earth have done surveys of the other planets, but they have not found any life there. Why has no one from other planets tried to (4)_____ with us? It is true that scientists have not discovered life on other planets in the (5)_____ yet, but some scientists believe that they will find it some day.

其他行星上有生命吗？在我们的(1)_____有其他七颗行星，但是它们中(2)_____有像地球那样的(3)_____。来自地球的宇宙飞船已经对其他行星做了调查，但是它们在那里没有发现任何生命。为什么没有来自其他行星的人设法和我们(4)_____呢？事实上科学家们在(5)_____中其他行星上还没有发现生命，但是，一些科学家们相信他们有朝一日会找到生命。

Writing 写作

5 Look at the picture from a science story for children and answer the questions.

看来自一个儿童科学故事的照片并回答问题。

What have the scientists just received? 科学家们刚刚收到了什么？

(a message from one of our spaceships) （一则来自我们的一艘宇宙飞船的信息）

They have just received a message from one of our spaceships.

他们刚刚收到了一则来自我们的一艘宇宙飞船的信息。

1. Where has the spaceship landed? (Mars) 宇宙飞船在哪里着陆了？（火星）
2. What has the spaceship discovered? (people on Mars) 宇宙飞船发现了什么？（火星上的人）
3. Why have the people on Mars not sent us a message? (do not know how to)
   为什么火星上的人没有给我们发送信息？（不知道如何）
4. Why have the people on Mars not visited us on the earth? (do not know how to)
   为什么火星上的人没有访问地球上的我们呢？（不知道如何）

6 Write a passage to describe the picture. Use your answers to the questions in Activity 5 to help you. 写一篇文章来描述这张照片。用活动5中那些问题的答案来帮助你。

We have just received a message from our spaceship to Mars...

我们刚刚收到一则我们去火星的宇宙飞船发来的消息……

核心素养之文化意识

中国探月（CLEP）知多少

◆ 2004年，中国正式开展月球探测工程，并命名为“嫦娥工程”（Chang'e program）。

◆ 嫦娥一号（2007年10月）完成了我国探测器首次奔月。

◆ 嫦娥二号（2010年10月）完成了更多科学任务。

◆ 嫦娥三号（2013年12月）任务是我国探月工程“绕、落、回”三步走中的第二步，它实现了我国航天器（玉兔月球车）首次在地外天体软着陆。

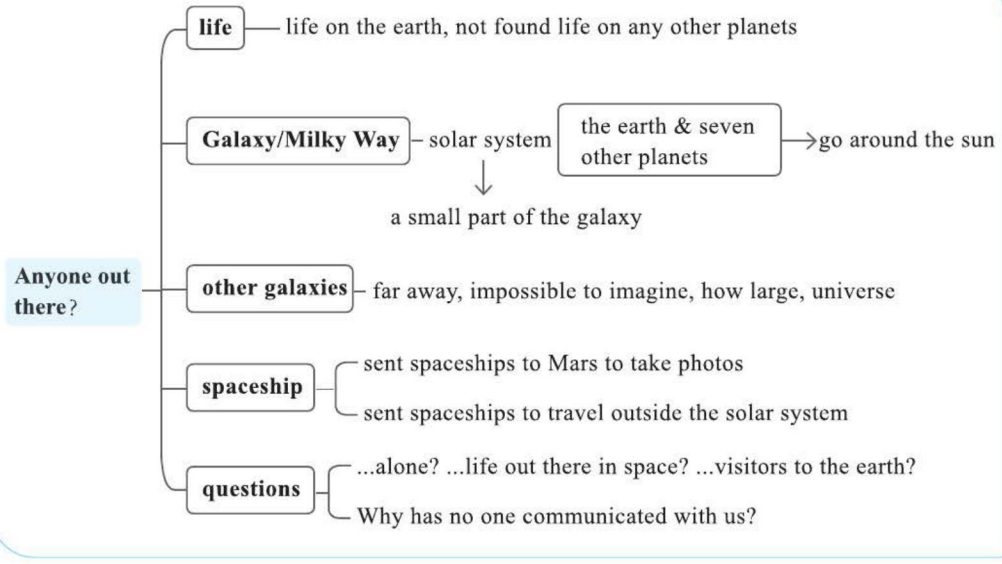
◆ 嫦娥四号（2018年12月发射）实现人类探测器在月球背面首次软着陆，开展原位和巡视探测，以及地月L2点中继通信。

◆ 嫦娥五号探测器（2019年发射），实现区域软着陆及采样返回。

现在，中国的太空计划建立一个永久性的中国空间站（space station），并为登月和火星探险提供准备。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课文背诵指南



Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 60分

(答案见266页)

阅读策略

带着问题找答案法（先从问题中抓住关键性词语即题眼，然后以此为线索，运用略读及查读的技巧快速在文中寻找与此问题相关的段落、语句，从而确定答案。）

拓展阅读

阅读过程

一、速读文章，回答下列问题

1. What does the writer think of the universe?

二、细读文章，完成下列题目

2. 判断正(T)误(F)

Our solar system is a small part of the Milky Way. ( ) (细节理解题)

3. What have scientists discovered in the universe? (细节理解题)

4. Have scientists sent spaceships to Mars? (细节理解题)

5. Can spaceships travel far enough to reach other stars in our Galaxy? (细节理解题)

Ⅲ. 考点精讲点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注

•考点应用

★**Scientists think that there has been life on the earth for hundreds of millions of years.**

① **hundreds of millions of** 数亿的；数以亿计的

e.g. We paid hundreds of millions of dollars in tax.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

我们缴纳了数亿美元的税金。

There are two thousand students in this school.
这所学校有两千名学生。

敲黑板 当 hundred, thousand, million, billion 前有具体数字修饰时，这些词后不加-s，也不与 of 连用。

考题在线 1 _____ volunteers will be needed for 2022 Beijing Winter Olympic Games. [大庆]

A. Two thousand of　　B. Two thousands of

C. Thousand of　　D. Thousands of

点拨：用关键词法解题。表示确切的数字时，hundred, thousand 前有具体数字，其后不加 -s，也不与 of 连用；表示不确切的数字时，hundred, thousand 前无具体数字，其后加 -s，且与 of 连用。

- hundreds of 数以百计的
- thousands of 数以千计的
- millions of 数以百万计的
- billions of 数以十亿计的

★None of them has an environment like that of the earth, so scientists do not think they will find life on them.

② **none** /nʌn/ *pron.* 没有一人；没有一个；一点儿也没有

知识微课

e.g. —Is there any more sugar? 还有糖吗?

—No, none at all. 不，一点儿也没有了。

The question was too difficult. None of us could answer it.
那个问题太难了。我们没有一个人能回答。

没有一个/都不

none of 短语作主语时，谓语动词单复数视具体情况而定。

【难点】辨析：none 和 no one

none	用于指人或物，可单独使用，也可以与 of 连用，常用于回答 how many 或 how much 引导的问句。 e.g.—How many birds can you see there? 你在那里能看到多少只鸟? —None. 一只也看不到。
no one	“没有人”，相当于 nobody，只用于指人，不可以与 of 连用，作主语时谓语动词只能用单数形式，常用于回答 who 引导的问句。 e.g.—Who is in the library? 谁在图书馆? —No one. 没有人。

考题在线 2 —I tried many ways to solve the problem, but _____ of them worked.

—Never give up. You'll surely make it. [福建A卷]

A. all　　B. none　　C. neither

点拨：考查代词用法。根据连词 but 可知，空白处表示否定意义，none 表示对三者及以上的否定，neither 表示对两者否定，由 many 可知此处表示对多种方法的否定。

★It is impossible to imagine.

由否定前缀 im+possible 构成的形容词

③ **impossible**/ɪmˈpɒsəbl/ *adj.* (事情) 办不到的，不可能的

e.g.It is impossible for fish to walk. 鱼是不可能走路的。

It is impossible for me to climb such a high mountain.

敲黑板 表示“不可能的”时，impossible 的主语不能是人，而只能是 it 或事情。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

我不可能爬上那么高的一座山。

考题在线 3 —Math is too difficult. I nearly give it up.

—Please don't. Nothing is _____ if you put your heart into it.

[南充改编]

A. important　　B. impossible　　C. interesting

点拨：用逻辑推理法解题。由“数学太难了，我几乎放弃了”可知，空格所在句应译为“如果你全心全意去做，没有什么是不可能的”。

★ It is impossible (for sb.) to do sth.（对某人来说）做某事是不可能的

★However, no spaceship has travelled far enough to reach other stars in our Galaxy.

★“...not+adj.+enough+to do sth.”常和“too...to...”从及“so...that+否定形式的从句”互换。

④ **enough** /ɪˈnʌf/ *adv.* 充分地；足够地

- adj./adv.+enough
- enough+n. 或 n.+enough

e.g.She was lucky enough to catch the last bus.

她能赶上末班车很幸运。

enough time=time enough 充足的时间

He is not old enough to drive a car.

=He is too young to drive a car.

=He is so young that he can't drive a car. 他年龄尚小，不能开车。

速记 小筏：

巧记 enough 歌诀

enough 词性有三个：限定、代词和副词。若作定语修饰名，名词前后由你定。副词状语表程度，定在形、副后边行。若是用在形、副前，enough 位置准错用。

考题在线 4 根据英文释义及首字母提示，拼写单词。

e_____: as many or as much as necessary　　[哈尔滨]

★Scientists have always asked the questions: with so many stars in the universe, are we alone, or is there life out there in space?

⑤ **alone**/əˈləʊn/ *adj.* 孤单的；独自的 *adv.* 单独地；独自地

辨析：alone 与 lonely

alone	可用作形容词，作表语，但不作定语，意为“孤身一人的；无伴的”。也可作副词，意为“单独；独自”，指的是客观情况，强调形体上的单独，不含感情色彩。
lonely	只用作形容词，表示“孤独的；寂寞的”，带有浓厚的感情色彩，强调精神上的孤单。

一语 辨异：

The old man lived alone in a lonely village, but he didn't feel lonely.

那个老人独自住在一个偏僻的村庄里，但他并不感到孤独。

考题在线 5 根据句意及首字母提示写出所缺单词。

When she first went to university. She felt very l_____ because she knew no one there.　　[广州]

★Why has no one communicated with us?



communicate with sb. 与某人联系

⑥ **communicate** /kəˈmjuːnɪkeɪt/ *v.*(***to exchange information, news, ideas, etc. with sb.***) 沟通；交流；传递

e.g.Do you often communicate with your parents?

你经常和你的父母交流吗？

For better communication, I also communicated with him on QQ.

为了更好地沟通，我还和他在 QQ 上交流。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 6 根据句意和汉语提示写出单词。

WeChat's popularity grows quickly because it's convenient for people to _____ (交流) with each other. [泰安]

communicate
v. 联系；交流
↓
communication
n. 联系；交流

考题在线答案 1. D 2. B 3. B 4. enough 5. lonely 6. communicate

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

☞(答案见266页)

一、根据句意及首字母或汉语提示完成句子

1. How many _____(组) are there in your class?
2. I invited all my friends to my birthday party, but n_____ of them agreed to come.
3. There is the sun, the moon and the earth in the _____ (宇宙).
4. The sun gives us _____ (光) and heat.
5. The _____ (环境) of the small city is very good; more and more people like to live here.

二、用括号中所给词的正确形式填空

6. He couldn't run fast enough _____ (catch) others.
7. It is _____ (possible) for humans to live on Mars at present. [常州]
8. Can you imagine _____ (fly) in the sky?
9. I took many _____ (photo) of the beautiful flowers.
10. Tom has no money with him, so he has to _____ (walk) home.

三、单项选择

11. —Do you know who is the first woman to fly _____?
—Valentina Vladimirovna Tereshkova from Russia.
A. in space B. in a space
C. from space D. at space

12. —Look at the stars. Can you count them up?
—No. There are _____ stars in the sky.
A. two billions B. two billions of
C. billions of D. billion of

13. —It's useful for the deaf people to learn the sign language.
—Yes, it's a major way of _____ for them. [连云港]
A. suggestion B. vacation
C. production D. communication

14. His grandma lives _____ in a small house, but she doesn't feel _____.
A. alone; lone B. lonely; alone
C. lonely; lonely D. alone; lonely

15. All the students in the classroom do their homework _____.
A. enough careful B. careful enough
C. carefully enough D. enough carefully

四、根据汉语意思完成句子

16. 如果你不试穿一下这条短裙，你就不能想象它有多美。
Unless you try it on, you _____ _____ how beautiful this skirt is.

17. 我们不知道宇宙有多大。
We don't know _____ _____ the universe is.

18. 没有人能解决这个问题，它太难了。
_____ _____ can work out the problem; it's too difficult.

19. 他经常通过在线聊天与他的父母交流。
He often _____ _____ his parents by chatting online.

20. 他面带微笑，向我们招手。
He waved at us _____ a smile _____ his face.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 3 Language in use

I. 课文原文、译文

Language practice 语言练习

I've just made a model spaceship. 我刚刚制作了一个宇宙飞船模型。
Astronauts have already been to the moon. 宇航员们已经到过月球了。
Has it arrived yet? 它已经到达了吗?
We have not found life on any other planets yet. 我们还没有在任何其他星球上发现生命。

1 Complete the news with *already*, *just* and *yet*. 用 *already*, *just* 和 *yet* 完成新闻。

Spaceship on Mars! 火星上的宇宙飞船!

Astronauts have (1)_____ been to the moon but they have not been to any other planets. However, a spaceship has (2)_____ arrived on Mars and it has (3)_____sent back photos of the red planet. Is there life on Mars? We do not know (4)_____.

宇航员们 (1)_____去过月球但是他们没有去过任何其他的星球。然而，一艘宇宙飞船 (2)_____到达了火星，并且它 (3)_____ 把这颗红色行星的照片发送回来了。在火星上有生命吗? 我们 (4)_____不知道。

2 Look at these sentences. 看这些句子。

·The spaceship has gone to Mars. 宇宙飞船去了火星。
It has gone there, but it has not come back yet. 它去那里了，但还没有回来。
·Astronauts have been to the moon. 宇航员们去过月球。
They went there and then they came back. 他们去那里然后回来了。

Now choose the correct answer. 现在选择正确的答案。

1. Astronauts have been/gone to the moon and returned①. 宇航员们去过 / 去了月球并且返回了。
2. The spaceship has been/gone into space. It will travel for ten days.
   宇宙飞船进入过 / 进入了太空。它将飞行 10 天。
3. The astronaut has been/gone to the space station. He will come back tomorrow.
   那名宇航员去过 / 去了太空站。他将在明天返回。
4. The spaceship has been/gone to the space station. It brought back two astronauts.
   宇宙飞船去过 / 去了太空站。它带回了两名宇航员。

3 Complete the sentences with the expressions in the box. 用方框中的词组完成句子。

have/has been 去过　have/has gone 去了

1. A spaceship _____ to Mars. It is coming back to the earth next year.
   一艘宇宙飞船_____火星。它将于明年返回地球。
2. Lots of astronauts _____ to the space station. They found it very interesting.
   许多宇航员_____太空站。他们发现它很有趣。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3. Some astronauts _____ to the moon twice. 一些宇航员_____月球两次。

4. Two British astronauts _____ to the space station. They will come back in January.
两位英国宇航员_____太空站。他们将于 1 月份回来。

4 Complete the conversation with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.
用括号中动词的正确形式完成对话。

Nicky/ˈnɪki/**:**I've just (1)_____ (watch) a great TV programme about space. Did you know that scientists have (2)_____ (discover) water on Mars?
我刚刚 (1)_____（看）一个关于太空的极好的电视节目。你知道科学家们在火星上 (2)_____（发现）水了吗?

Bill/bɪl/**:**Yes, I did. And scientists (3)_____(try) to find life on Mars now.
是的，我知道。并且现在科学家们 (3)_____（试图）在火星上发现生命。

Nicky: Yes, they're looking for life but they (4)_____ (not find) anything yet.
是的，他们正在寻找生命，但是他们还 (4)_____（没有发现）任何东西。

Bill: There were some new photos of Mars in the newspaper today. (5)_____ you _____ (see) them yet? 在今天的报纸上有一些火星的新照片。你 (5)_____（看到）它们了吗?

Nicky: Yes. They're amazing! 看到了。它们太令人惊讶了！

5 Work in pairs. Role-play the conversation in Activity 4. 结对练习。分角色表演活动 4 中的对话。

6 Complete the email with the words in the box. 用方框中的单词完成电子邮件。

been 是	just 刚刚	met 遇到	never 从不
read 读	written 写	yet 还	

FROM: Liu Dan 发件人：刘丹

To: Li Fang 收件人：李芳

SUBJECT:I've found a great book. 主题：我发现了一本极好的书。

Dear Li Fang, 亲爱的李芳：

I've (1)_____ finished reading a great book at school. I haven't (2)_____ anything as good as ② that for a long time! It's a story about the solar system. In the book, the writer imagines that astronauts have (3)_____ to Mars. I've (4)_____ thought about that before and I think it's very interesting.

我在学校里 (1)_____读完了一本极好的书。我很长时间没有 (2)_____和它一样好的东西了！它是一个关于太阳系的故事。在书里，作者想象宇航员们 (3)_____火星。我以前 (4)_____考虑过那个，我认为它非常有趣。

I haven't (5)_____ anyone famous in my life but I hope one day I can meet an astronaut. I've (6)_____ to a Chinese astronaut for more information about space and his experience of space travel. I hope he will write back. He hasn't (7)_____. Maybe he is too busy. I'm still waiting.

在我的一生中我没有 (5)_____任何著名的人，但我希望有一天我能遇到一名宇航员。为获取有关太空和他的太空旅行经历的更多信息，我已经给一名中国宇航员 (6)_____。我希望他会回信。他 (7)_____没有（回复我）。或许他太忙了。我仍在等待。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Best wishes, 最美好的祝愿，

Liu Dan 刘丹

7 Listen and complete the notes. 听录音，完成记录。

课文听力7

1. The astronaut joined CNSA _____ years ago.
   这名宇航员_____年前加入了中国国家航天局。
2. He has flown in a spaceship _____ times. 他乘宇宙飞船飞行过_____次。
3. He felt _____ when he was in the spaceship. 当他在宇宙飞船里的时候，他感觉_____。
4. He has been to the space station _____. 他去过太空站_____。
5. The earth was blue and very _____ when he saw it from the space station.
   当他从太空站看地球时，地球是蓝色的，非常_____。
6. He decided to be an astronaut because he has always been _____ in space.
   他决定当一名宇航员，因为他一直对太空_____。

8 Complete the word map with the words and expressions in the box.

用方框中的单词及短语完成词汇图。

astronaut 宇航员	Mars 火星	spaceship 宇宙飞船	space station 太空站
the earth 地球	the moon 月球	the sun 太阳	

Now add more words about space to the word map and write five sentences.

现在给词汇图添加更多的有关太空的词汇并写五个句子。

9 Complete the passage with the correct form of the words in the box.

用方框中单词的正确形式完成短文。

astronaut 宇航员	discover 发现	moon 月球	news 消息
reach 到达	spaceship 宇宙飞船	yet 还	

In July 1969, Neil/ni:l/ Armstrong/ˈɑ:mstrɒŋ/ became the first (1)_____ to walk on the (2)_____. People all around the world watched their televisions and waited for the (3)_____ to (4)_____ the earth. We have now (5)_____ a lot more about our solar system, and we have sent (6)_____ to Mars, but no one has walked on that planet (7)_____. But I believe one day someone will!

在 1969 年 7 月，尼尔·阿姆斯特朗成为第一个在 (2)_____上行走的 (1)_____。全世界的人都在电视机前等待着 (4)_____地球的 (3)_____。我们现在 (5)_____了更多有关我们的太阳系的事情，并且我们发送了 (6)_____到火星，但是 (7)_____没有一个人在那个行星上行走过。但是我相信有朝一日有人会（在火星上行走）！

Around the world 世界各地

Names of the days of the week 一周中的每一天的名字

Many European languages use the names of the heavenly bodies for the days of the week. For example, in English, Saturday is named after the planet Saturn/ˈsætən/, the sixth planet from the sun. Sunday is the day of the sun, a traditional day of rest. Monday gets its

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

name from the moon and is the day of the moon.

许多欧洲语言使用天体的名字给一周中的每一天命名。例如，在英语中，星期六是以土星命名的，土星是距离太阳第六远的行星。星期天是太阳日，一个传统的休息日。星期一是以月亮命名的，是月亮日。

Module task:Making a poster about space travel 模块任务：制作一张有关太空旅行的海报

10 Work in groups. Choose a subject, for example, the first moon landing or China's manned space travels. Look for some photos and information about it.

小组练习。选择一个主题，例如，首次登月，或者中国载人太空旅行。寻找一些关于它的照片和信息。

11 Write captions for the photos and use the information you found in Activity 10 to write a description of each one. 为照片添加一些说明文字，用你在活动10中找到的信息为每一张图片写一句描述。

12 Give your poster a title. Put it up for your classmates to see.

给你的海报加一个标题。把它张贴上，让你的同班同学看一下。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础20分

•考点应用　　•考点批注

★Astronauts have been to the moon and returned.

① **return**/rɪˈtɜːn/ *v.* 返回；回来

e.g. I have to return to Jinan today. 今天我不得不返回济南。

Jack has returned the dictionary to me. 杰克已经把词典还给了我。

return：不及物动词，"返回，回来"，相当于come/go back；及物动词，"归还，还给"，相当于give back

考题在线1 用所给词组的同义词填空。

Tiangong I, China's first space lab, _____ (come back) to the earth after finishing its job on April 2 this year. [乐山]

★I haven't read anything as good as that for a long time!

② **as...as** 和……一样

as...as 中间用形容词或副词的原级。其否定结构为：not as/so...as 意为"不如……"。

e.g. She is as tall as her sister. 她和她的姐姐一样高。

Mike can speak Chinese as well as Li Ming.

迈克说汉语可以和李明说得一样好。

Jack doesn't run as/so fast as Nick. 杰克没有尼克跑得快。

考题在线2 Alice does her homework as _____ as Peter. [湘西]

A. carefully　　B. more careful　　C. careful

点拨：考查副词用法。句意为"艾丽斯做作业和彼得一样仔细"。as...as之间只跟形容词或副词原级，排除B；且修饰动词does，应用副词carefully。

- as...as possible/sb. can 尽可能……地
- as long as 只要
- as far as 就……来说
- as soon as 一……就……

考题在线答案　1. returned　2. A

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 模块语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

现在完成时（2）

考点 现在完成时的用法：

考向 1：[重点] 现在完成时常与 already, just 或 yet 等连用。just 用来表示“刚刚”，already 用来表示“已经”，两者都用于肯定句中，一般放在 have/has 之后；yet 用于否定句，表示“还”。

e.g. I have already read the book twice.

我已经读过这本书两次了。

She has just heard the news.

她刚刚听到这则消息。

Mike hasn't come yet. 迈克还没有来。

考题在线 1 — _____ you ever _____ Hong Kong-Zhuhai-Macao Bridge ?

— Not yet. [湘西]

A. Did; visit B. Are; visit

C. Have; visited

考向 2：[易错点] 当没有明确的时间状语时，判断是否用现在完成时的标准是谓语动词的行为是否对现在有影响，如果对现在有影响，则用现在完成时。

e.g. She has had breakfast and she isn't hungry now. 她吃过早饭了，现在她不饿。

考题在线 2 Our team _____ another point! I am sure we'll win the game. [河北]

A. will get B. has got

C. is getting D. was getting

考向 3：[易错点] have been to 与 have gone to 的区别。

速记小筏：巧辨 have been to 与 have gone to

been to，gone to 意不同，两者用法要记清。

have been to+ 地点，“曾经到过某地”行。

have gone to+ 地点，“到某地去了”已走远。

e.g. My brother isn't at home. He has gone to the market.

我的弟弟不在家。他去市场了。

I have been to Hong Kong once.

我去过香港一次。

考题在线 3 —Have you ever _____ the Terracotta Army in Xi'an ?

—Yes, I went there last year. [湘潭]

A. gone to B. been to

C. been in

点拨：用语境法解题。由“Yes, I went there last year.”可知，曾经在去年去过，现在已经回来了，故用“have/has been to...”结构。

考题在线 4 I _____ to the West Lake four times, but I will go there again this summer. [德阳]

A. have gone B. have been

C. went D. had gone

点拨：考查时态。根据 four times 可知表示“去过”，用 have been to 表达。

考题在线答案 1. C 2. B 3. B 4. B

Ⅳ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20 分

写作小练笔

There has been life on the earth for hundreds of millions of years. 介绍“地球生命”

The earth is a planet and it goes around the sun. Seven other planets also go around the sun, but none of them has an environment like that of the earth. The sun and its planets are called the solar system and it is a small part of the Galaxy or the Milky Way. 介绍“太阳系”

There are many other galaxies in the universe.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

So it is impossible to imagine how large the universe is! 介绍"其他星系"

Scientists have sent spaceships to the planet Mars. They have even sent spaceships to travel outside the solar system. 介绍"宇宙飞船飞往火星"

Is there life out there in space? Have there been visitors to the earth from other planets? 介绍"科学家的疑问"

模块话题

假如现在是 2050 年，你们学校组织了一次去火星的旅行。在火星上你们到处参观，举行聚会，与外星人（aliens）通话……总之，你们玩得很开心。

请根据以上信息，以"Journey to Mars"为题写一篇英语短文，描述一下你们的火星之旅。

注意：

1. 词数：80 左右；
2. 使用第一人称；
3. 可以适当发挥，使行文连贯。

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

1. 题目要求描述火星之旅，因此本文应用第一人称，时态以一般过去时为主。

2. 写作中要涵盖所给信息提示，并查阅有关太空旅行及火星的资料，适当拓展。

写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

"三段式法"写太空旅行类作文

此类文章的写作可采用"三段式法"：第 1 段简单介绍旅行目的地和旅行方式等；第 2 段详细叙述旅行中的所见所闻及活动内容等；第 3 段（结尾）表达自己的感受。

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）



经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	great, journey, visit, everywhere, environment, interesting
短语	a few, by spaceship, take an active part in, make a telephone call, have a good time
句子	① We found a lot of things different from those on the earth. ② I'll never forget the trip. ③ I hope to travel to Mars again.

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

Journey to Mars

Our school had a great journey to Mars a few days ago. We went to Mars by spaceship.

On Mars we visited everywhere. We found a lot of things different from those on the earth. The environment there was very beautiful. We also had a party. Many students took an active part in the party, and their songs were very nice. Finally, we made a telephone call to aliens. We all had a good time.

The journey was very interesting. I'll never forget the trip. I hope to travel to Mars again.

名师点评：本文用"三段式法"描述了在火星上的活动，并根据提示展开了合理的想象，结构分明，语言丰富。

第一段：直接引入话题"学校组织去火星旅行"。名词 journey 后用介词短语 to Mars 说明旅行目的地；用 by spaceship 说明旅行方式。

第二段：介绍在火星上的活动。用"find+宾语+宾补"结构和(be) different from 短语，说明了火星和地球的不同之处；用 take a(n)...part in 描述了学生在火星上参加的活动；用 and 连接两个并列分句，前后衔接自然。

第三段：结尾部分抒发感想，表达希望。用一般过去时评述旅行，用一般将来时描述感想，用 hope to do sth. 结构表达希望。



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅴ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础20分

(答案见266页)

一、针对性训练

1.Alex believes he will soon be able to play chess as _____ as the computer. [上海]

A. well B. better

C. best D. the best

2.—Have you returned the book to the library yet?

—Not yet. Don't worry. I _____ it soon.

A. return B. returned

C. have returned D. will return

3.We'll achieve our dreams some day_____ we keep trying and never give up. [长沙]

A. as long as B. even though

C. so that

4.The newly discovered star was named _____ a Chinese astronaut _____ honour of his contributions to our country.

A. on; in B. after; for

C. as; in D. after; in

5.Tom is a good boy and he always finishes _____ his homework on time.

A. do B. does

C. did D. doing

二、语法专练

6.—I have seen the film *Jurassic World II*(《侏罗纪世界Ⅱ》). It's very interesting.

—Really? When _____ you _____ it. [哈尔滨]

A. have; seen B.did; see C. will; see

7.—What an exciting match!

—Yes, isn't it? I _____ such a great one before! [阜康]

A. never saw B. had never seen

C. never see D. have never seen

8.I _____ the book club last week and I _____ two books already.

A. join; read B. joined; read

C. joined; have read D. joined; has read

9.—Paris is a wonderful place.

—So it is. I _____ there twice. [凉山]

A. have been B. have gone

C. went D.will go

10.—Yunnan is very beautiful. I _____ there last year.

—Yes, I _____ there twice.

A. went; have gone B.went; have been

C. have gone; went D. have been; went

三、模块知识浓缩

用方框中所给单词的适当形式完成短文

reach, none, possible, life, call, alone, spaceship, discover, communicate, billion

Scientists think there has been _____[11] on the earth for hundreds of millions of years. The earth is a planet and it goes around the sun. Seven other planets also go around the sun. _____[12] of them has an environment like that of the earth. The sun and its planets are _____[13] the solar system. There are _____[14] of stars in the Galaxy, and the sun is only one of them.

Scientists have _____[15] many other galaxies in the universe. It's _____[16] to imagine how large the universe is.

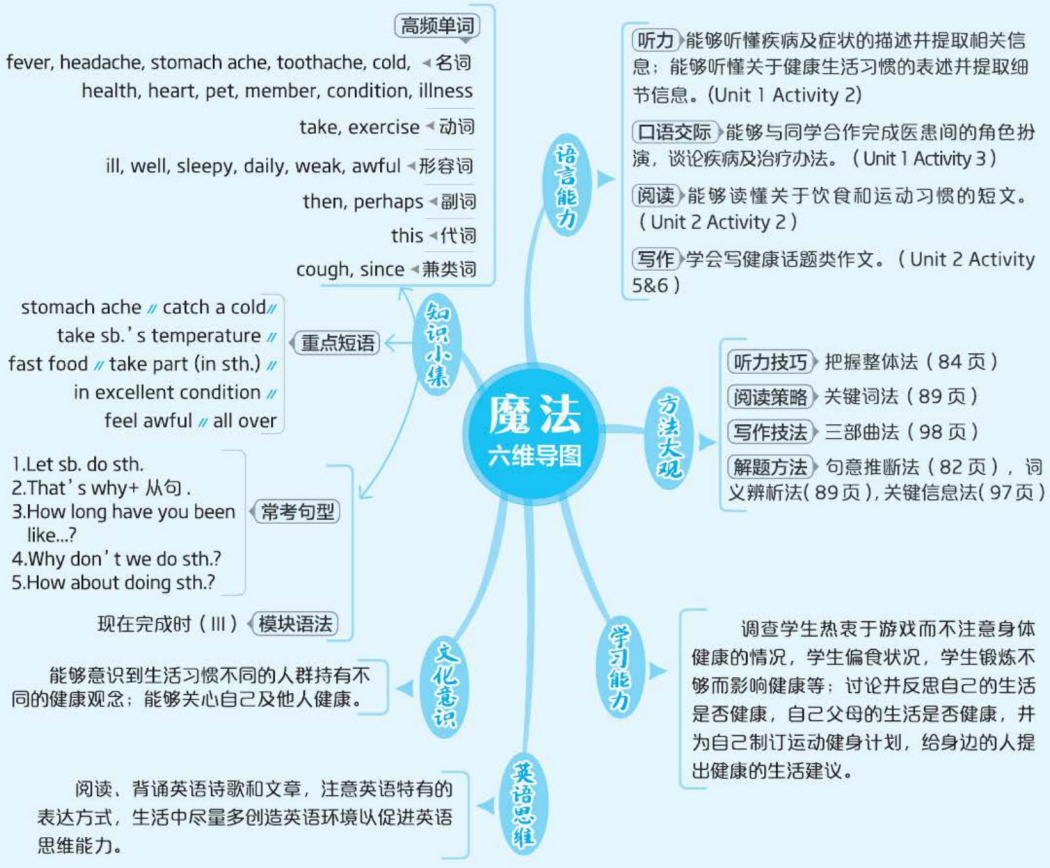
Scientists have sent _____[17] to the planet Mars. They have even sent spaceships to travel outside the solar system. However, no spaceship has travelled far enough _____[18] other stars in our Galaxy.

Are we _____[19], or is there life out there in space? Why has no one from other planets _____[20] with us?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Module 4 Seeing the doctor

词汇表听写



记忆大师

Unit 1 I haven't done much exercise since I got my computer.

II 必背单词

1.ill *adj.* 不健康的；有病的 →**illness** *n.* 疾病

2.since *prep.* 自……以来（since 后跟时间点）

→*conj.* 自……以来

3.take *v.*（用机器）测定，量取，拍摄；（尤指有规律地）吃，喝 →**took**（过去式）→**taken**（过去分词）

4.health *n.* 健康（状况）→**healthy** *adj.* 健康的

5.cough *n.* 咳嗽 *v.* 咳嗽

6.fever *n.* 发烧；发热

7.headache *n.* 头痛

8.stomach *n.* 腹部；肚子

9.ache *n.* 痛；疼痛

10.toothache *n.* 牙痛

11.cold *n.* 感冒；伤风

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

必背短语

12.catch a cold 感冒

13.take sb.'s temperature 量某人的体温

14.too much 太多

15.be harmful to 对……有危害

16.such as 比如；例如

17.do some exercise 做些锻炼

18.see the doctor 看医生

必背句子

19.**How** can I **help** you? 你怎么了?

20.**How long** have you been like **this**?
你像这种情况有多长时间了?

21.That's the **problem**! 那就是问题所在!

22.**Take** it three **times** a day. 每天吃三次。

Unit 2 We have played football for a year now.

必背单词

1.**well** *adj.* 健康的→ *adv.* 好地

2.**active** *adj.* 积极的；活跃的→**more active**（比较级）→**most active**（最高级）

3.**sleepy** *adj.* 困的；想睡的→**sleep** *v.* 睡觉

4.**daily** *adj.* 每天的；天天的→**day** *n.* 白天

5.**weak** *adj.* 弱的；虚弱的→**strong**（反义词）强壮的

6.**illness** *n.* 病；疾病→**ill** *adj.* 有病的

7.**awful** *adj.* 极讨厌的；极坏的→**awfully** *adv.* 极其；非常

8.**heart** *n.* 心；心脏

9.**pet** *n.* 宠物；宠畜

10.**member** *n.* 成员；会员

11.**condition** *n.* 状况；身体状况

12.**then** *adv.* 当时；那时

13.**exercise** *v.* 运动；锻炼

14.**perhaps** *adv.* 可能；也许

必背短语

15.take sb. for a walk 带某人去散步

16.feel fit 感觉健康

17.take part in 参加

18.in excellent condition 健康状况很好

19.on the underground 乘地铁

20.all over 浑身

必背句子

21.I **have had** him for three months now and I feel really healthy.
现在我养了他三个月了，我感觉真的很健康。

22.**Since then**, it has become part of my life.
从那时起，它就成了我生活中的一部分。

23.Perhaps I am **too weak to do** any exercise.
也许是我身体太虚弱了而不能做任何锻炼。

Unit 3 Language in use

必背短语

1.for the first time 第一次

2.from time to time 偶尔；有时

3.in the past 在过去

4.all one's life 某人的一生

5.turn off 关闭；关上

6.so that 以便；为的是

必背句子

7....I do not know **how to stop** and **become fitter and healthier**.
……我不知道怎样才能停止，从而变得更强壮和更健康。

8.I do not **want to spend** all my life sitting in a chair. 我不想坐在椅子上度过一生。

9.**Walking** has helped you get fitter,so why not **ask** a friend **to walk** to school with you?
步行已经帮助你变得更强壮了，那么为什么不邀请一位朋友和你一起步行上学呢?

必背语法

10.I **haven't done** much exercise **since** I got my computer last year.
自从去年我有了电脑以来，我就没怎么锻炼过。

11.I **have had** him **for** three months now.
现在我养了他三个月了。

12.**Since** then, **it has become** part of my life.
从那时起，它就成了我生活中的一部分。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 1 I haven't done much exercise since I got my computer.

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

Listening and vocabulary 听力及词汇

1 Match the words and expression in the box with the pictures. 将方框中的单词及短语与图片匹配。

cough/kɒf/ □咳嗽 □　fever/'fi:və/ □发烧 □　headache/'hedeɪk/① □头痛 □
stomach ache □胃痛 □　toothache □牙痛 □

2 Listen and check(√)what's wrong with Betty and Daming.
听录音，将贝蒂和大明出现的问题用（√）标出。

课文听力2

	cough 咳嗽	fever 发烧	headache 头痛	stomach ache 胃痛	toothache/'tu:θeɪk/ 牙痛
Betty 贝蒂					
Daming 大明					

3 Listen and read. 听一听，读一读。

课文朗读3

Doctor: How can I help you? 你怎么了?

Daming:I feel ill/ɪl/②. I've got a stomach ache/'stʌməkeɪk/ and my head hurts③.
我感觉生病了。我胃痛，头也痛。

Doctor: How long have you been like this/ðɪs/? 你像这种情况有多长时间了?

Daming: Since/sɪns/④ Friday. I've been ill for about three days! 从星期五开始。我生病大约 3 天了！

Doctor:I see. Have you caught a cold/kəʊld/⑤? 我明白了。你感冒了吗?

Daming:I don't think so. 我认为没有。

Doctor: Let me take/teɪk/ your temperature⑥... Hmm, there's no fever. What kind of food do you eat?
让我量一量你的体温……嗯，没有发烧。你吃哪些食物?

Daming: Usually fast food. 通常是快餐食品。

Doctor: Do you have breakfast? 你吃早饭吗?

Daming: No, not usually. 不，不经常（吃）。

Doctor: That's the problem! Fast food and no breakfast. That's why you've got a stomach ache.
那就是问题所在！快餐食品和不吃早饭。那就是你胃痛的原因。

Daming: What about the headache? 那么头痛（是怎么回事）呢?

Doctor: Do you do any exercise⑦? 你锻炼吗?

Daming: Not really. I haven't done much exercise since I got my computer last year.
不怎么锻炼。自从去年我有了电脑以来，我就没怎么锻炼过。

Doctor: You spend too much time in front of the computer. It can be very harmful to⑧ your health /helθ/⑨. 你在电脑前花费的时间太长。这可能对你的健康非常有害。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Daming:OK, so what should I do? 明白了，那么我应该怎么做呢?

Doctor: Well, don't worry. It's not serious. First, stop eating fast food and have breakfast every day. Second, get some exercise, such as running. And I'll give you some medicine. Take it three times a day[10].

哦，不用担心。这不严重。首先，停止吃快餐食品，并且每天吃早饭。第二，做一些锻炼，比如跑步。我会给你开一些药，每天吃三次。

Daming: Thank you, doctor. 谢谢你，医生。

Everyday English 日常英语

·How can I help you? 你怎么了?

·No, not usually. 不，不经常（吃）。

·That's the problem! 那就是问题所在!

·Not really. 不怎么锻炼。

Now complete the table about Daming. 现在完成有关大明的表格。

Illness 病	
How long 多长时间	
Why 为什么	
What to do 要做什么	

4 Complete the passage with the words and expression in the box. 用方框中的单词及短语完成文章。

cough 咳嗽　fever 发烧　health 健康
stomach ache 胃痛　temperature 体温

It is easy to look after your (1)_____. Just do some exercise, such as running. Do not eat fast food! It may give you a (2)_____. Most illnesses are not dangerous but when you catch a cold or get a (3)_____, you may also get a (4)_____. This means your (5)_____ is higher than usual. You must go to the doctor.

照料你的 (1)_____很容易。只是做些锻炼，比如跑步。不要吃快餐食品! 它可能让你 (2)_____。大多数的疾病不危险，但是当你感冒或 (3)_____时，你也可能 (4)_____。这就意味着你的 (5)_____比通常要高。你必须去看医生。

Pronunciation and speaking 发音与会话

5 Listen and notice the intonation. 听录音，注意语调。

1. How can I help you? 你怎么了?
2. How long have you been like this? 你像这种情况有多长时间了?
3. Have you caught a cold? 你感冒了吗?
4. Do you do any exercise? 你锻炼吗?

Now listen again and repeat. 现在再听一遍，并重复。

6 Work in pairs. Act out a conversation between a doctor and a patient.

结对练习。表演医生和病人之间的一个对话。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Student A: You are a doctor. 你是一名医生。

Student B: You are at the doctor's. Choose one of the illnesses from the box in Activity 1.

你在医生的诊所。从活动 1 的表格中选择一种病。

—*How can I help you?* ——你怎么了?

—*I've got a bad cough.* ——我咳嗽得厉害。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用 •考点批注

★headache

① **headache** /ˈhedeɪk/ *n.* 头痛

e.g. He has had a headache for two days. 他头痛两天了。

考题在线 1 完成句子。

昨天南希头痛，所以没去学校。

Nancy _____ _____ _____ yesterday, so she didn't go to school.

表示某处疼痛

head(头)+-ache(疼痛)

(身体部位) (后缀)

-ache: toothache 牙痛; backache 背痛; earache 耳痛

★I feel ill.

敲黑板 ill 的比较级和最高级分别为 worse, worst。其名词形式是 illness。

② **ill** /ɪl/ *adj.* 不健康的；有病的

e.g. He can't attend the meeting, because he is ill today.

=He can't attend the meeting because of his illness today.

今天他因病不能参加会议。

【易错点】辨析：ill 和 sick

ill	一般用作表语，不常作定语。作定语时，意为“坏的；不良的”。
sick	既可以作表语又可以作定语。还有“恶心；想呕吐”的意思。

考题在线 2 The nurse looked after the _____ child.

A. sick B. illness C. healthy D. healthful

一语辨异：

He is also ill, but he is still taking care of another sick man.

他也生病了，但是他仍然在照顾另外一名病人。

图解助记



She is ill/sick.

她病了。



He is an ill child.

他是个坏孩子。

★I've got a stomach ache and my head hurts.

③ **hurt** /hɜːt/ *v.* (使)疼痛；感到疼痛(**hurt, hurt**)

e.g. Be careful. The knife may hurt you. 小心。这把刀可能会伤到你。

Does your leg still hurt? 你的腿还痛吗?

hurt 表示“疼痛”时，应用疼痛的具体部位作主语。

考题在线 3 用词的适当形式填空。

—What's the matter with Jim?

—His leg _____ (hurt) last night.

【难点】辨析：hurt, injure 与 wound

hurt	指肉体上或精神上的伤害。
injure	指由于意外或事故造成的身体上的伤害。
wound	指刀伤或枪伤。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★图解巧辨hurt, injure与wound



hurt injure wound

考题在线4 Her words _____ me a lot.

A. hurt B. injure C. wound D. hurts

点拨：此题用句意推断法。句意为“她的话深深地伤害了我”。此处指精神上的伤害，且主语不是第三人称单数形式。

★**Since Friday.**

④ **since** /sɪns/ *prep.*& *conj.*(***from a time in the past until a later past time, or until now***) 自……以来

敲黑板 提问since引导的时间状语（从句）用how long。

e.g. I have studied English since seven years ago.

=I have studied English for seven years. 我学习英语七年了。

The Greens have lived here since they moved to this city.

格林一家人自从搬到这座城市就一直住在这里。

知识微课

★辨析since和for

- since后接时间点或过去时的句子，常用于现在完成时。
- for后接时间段，用来说明动作或状态持续的时间。

考题在线5 根据括号内所给的中文提示，正确拼写单词。

Bob and Jim have been good friends _____(自从) they joined the same tennis team. [北部湾经济区]

★**Have you caught a cold?**

★“have +a+疾病名词”短语：

- have a fever 发烧
- have a cough 咳嗽
- have a toothache 牙痛
- have a headache 头痛

⑤ **catch a cold** 感冒

【易错点】辨析：have a cold和catch a cold

have a cold	表示“感冒”持续的状态，可以与表示一段时间的状语连用。
catch a cold	强调“感冒”的行为，不能与表示一段时间的状语连用。

e.g. She caught a cold yesterday, but she isn't fine now and she has had a cold for two days.

昨天她感冒了，但现在还没有好，她感冒两天了。

考题在线6 Why are you wearing a T-shirt? You'll probably _____ in this cold weather.

A. have a toothache B. catch a cold

C. have a rest D. catch a bus

★**Let me take your temperature… Hmm, there's no fever.**

⑥ **take your temperature** 量一量你的体温

take one's temperature意为“量某人的体温”。对“气温是多少”进行提问时，常用what，不用how much或how many。

e.g. Have you taken your temperature? 你量体温了吗?

What's the temperature in Beijing now? 北京现在的气温是多少?

考题在线7 完成句子。

你最好先量一下他的体温。

You'd better _____ _____ _____ first.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★Do you do any exercise?

⑦ **exercise** /ˈeksəsaɪz/ *n.* 锻炼；练习

e.g. Doing morning exercises is good for your health.

做早操对你的健康有益。

He doesn't know the answers to the two exercises.

他不知道这两道练习题的答案。

We should exercise as often as we can. 我们应该尽可能地经常锻炼。

- exercise 作不可数名词，意为"运动；锻炼"。
- exercise 作可数名词，意为"体操；练习"。
- exercise 作动词，意为"运动；锻炼"。



考题在线 8 Tom is not here. He _____ in the health club. [抚顺]

A. is exercising　　B. was exercising

C. exercises　　D. exercised

点拨：考查时态。由"汤姆不在这里"可知，他现在正在健康俱乐部锻炼，故用现在进行时。

★It can be very harmful to your health.

⑧ **be harmful to** 对……有害

e.g. Smoking is harmful to people's health.

=Smoking does harm to people's health.

=Smoking is bad for people's health.

吸烟对人的健康有害。

敲黑板 be harmful to 相当于 do harm to 或 be bad for，其反义短语是 be good for。

harm *n.* &*v.* 伤害；损害 → harmful *adj.* 有害的 → harmless *adj.* 无害的

考题在线 9 根据句意用所给单词的适当形式填空。

Greenhouse gases are _____ (harm) to the environment. [盐城]

- keep/stay healthy 保持健康
- be in good/bad health 健康状况好/差

⑨ **health** /helθ/ *n.* 健康（状况）

health *n.* 健康 → healthy *adj.* 健康的 反义词 unhealthy *adj.* 不健康的

healthy *adj.* → healthily *adv.* 健康地 反义词 unhealthily *adv.* 不健康地

e.g. Eating more fruit is good for your health.

多吃水果对你的健康有益。

We are all in good health. 我们的身体都很健康。

考题在线 10 根据汉语提示完成句子。

My grandfather keeps _____（健康的）by eating well and exercising regularly. [孝感]

★Take it three times a day.

⑩ **three times a day** 一天三次

e.g. Mary goes swimming four times a month. 玛丽每个月去游泳四次。

Teenagers should do exercise at least one hour a day.

青少年应当每天锻炼至少一小时。

敲黑板 对 once，twice，three times 等"次数"的提问用 how many times；对频率提问用 how often。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★表达频率的结构：次数+a+时间名词
- once a day 每天一次
- twice a week 每周两次
- four times a month 每月四次

考题在线 11 —_____ do you go to see your grandparents, Frank?
—Once a week. 【导学号：9465610】[陇东]
A. How soon B. How often C. How long
点拨：考查固定搭配。How soon 多久以后，提问 in 连接的将来时间；How often 多久一次，对频率提问；How long 多长时间，对一段时间提问。由答语“Once a week.”可知问句提问频率。

考题在线答案 1. had a headache 2. A 3. hurt 4. A 5. since 6. B 7. take his temperature 8. A 9. harmful 10. healthy 11. B

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

(答案见266页)

听力技巧

把握整体法（在听力中，有些题目不要求词句全部理解，要从整体上去听，明白大意即可。）

听力过程

听教材 Activity 2，选择最佳答案



1.What's the matter with Daming?
A. He's got a stomach ache and a toothache.
B. He's got a toothache and a headache.
C.He's got a stomach ache and a headache.

2.Has Daming seen a doctor?
A. No, he hasn't. B. Yes, he has.
C. Sorry, we don't know.

3.Has Betty got a stomach ache?
A. Yes, she has. B. No, she hasn't.
C. Yes, she is.

4.Daming advises Betty to _____too.
A. drink water B. see a doctor
C. have a rest

5.Betty saw a doctor _____.
A. yesterday B. last night
C. this morning

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见266页)

一、根据句意及汉语或首字母提示完成句子

1.You have a _____(发烧)and you should see a doctor.

2.Jim was _____(有病的)yesterday, but he still went to school.

3.You look sad. Do you have a _____(头痛) again?

4.The old man is 80 years old, but he is in good h_____.

5.You'd better take the medicine three t_____ a day.

二、单项选择

6.—_____ do you exercise, Tony?
—Three times a week. [宜昌]
A. How often B. How soon
C. How long D. How much

7.Nancy took her temperature and found she had a _____. [青岛]
A. cough B. toothache
C. cold D. fever

8.Nowadays people wish to have _____ food than before as their life improves. [上海]
A. healthy B. healthier
C. healthiest D. the healthiest

9.I'm taking care of Tony today. He's been in my house _____ 7:00 this morning.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

A. at　　B. since

C. for　　D. till

10. His grandmother _____ for nine years. And he still misses her very much.

A. died　　B. has died

C. has been dead　　D. has been died

三、根据汉语完成句子

11. 他从来不吃快餐食品。

He never eats _____ _____.

12. 我已经量过体温了。

I have already _____ _____ _____.

13. 昨天晚上这个孩子感冒了。

The child _____ _____ _____ last night.

14. 我的头疼。我必须看医生。

My _____ _____. I have to see a doctor.

15. 为了保持健康，许多人每天都锻炼。

To _____ _____, many people _____ _____ every day.

四、按要求完成句子

16. We have known each other since six years ago.（改为同义句）

We have known each other _____ _____ _____.

17. Drinking too much is bad for your health.（改为同义句）

Drinking too much is _____ _____ your health.

18. She has lived in China for ten years.（改为同义句）

She has lived in China _____ ten years _____.

19. The boy has been in Shanghai <u>for two weeks</u>.（对画线部分提问）

_____ _____ _____ the boy been in Shanghai?

20. I think he is an excellent boy.（改为否定句）

I _____ _____ he _____ an excellent boy.

Unit 2 We have played football for a year now.

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文及导读

原文译文 · 导读　　导读批注

Reading and vocabulary 阅读与词汇

批 标题：由"Healthy living 健康生活"可知，本文的主旨是探讨如何提高健康生活质量的。

Pre-reading（读前）

1. Do you know how to keep healthy?
2. How do you relax yourself?

1 Describe the activities in the pictures. Which ones are healthy?

描述图片中的活动。哪些是健康的?

2 Read the passage and match the people with the pictures in Activity 1. There is one extra picture.

阅读短文，将人物与活动 1 中的图片匹配。有一幅多余的图片。

课文朗读 2

While-reading（读中）

1. What does Anna's doctor say when she doesn't feel well?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

批 段落之间的逻辑关系：

并列关系
本文分别介绍了 Anna, Wang Wei, Thomas, Richard 的运动状况，作者均用第一人称叙述，各段之间为并列关系。

批 运动后的变化：



批 词语赏析：

with a smile on my face 表示骑自行车在强身健体的同时也给工作中的 Thomas 带来愉悦。

批 句子赏析：

用"Why don't we...?"句式提建议，体现出 Richard 的朋友对跑步运动的充分肯定和热衷，和后文 Richard 因跑步出现的种种不适形成鲜明的对比。

2. How long has Wang Wei played football?
3. How does Thomas go to work now?
4. Does Richard enjoy running?

Healthy living 健康生活

❶ I was not feeling very well/wel/ so the doctor checked my heart /hɑːt/ and said I needed more exercise. I have never been very active /ˈæktɪv/ ①, and I do not like sports. I have always wanted a pet/pet/, so my parents gave me a dog for my birthday. Now I get exercise by taking him for a walk every day. I have had him for three months now and I feel really healthy. —Anna

我感觉不是很舒服，因此医生检查了我的心脏，说我需要更多的锻炼。我从来都不是很活跃，而且不喜欢运动。我一直想要一只宠物，所以我的父母在我生日时送了我一只狗。现在我每天都通过带他去散步来锻炼身体。现在我养了他三个月了，我感觉真的很健康。——安娜

❷ Our teacher decided to start a girls' football team and I thought, "What a great idea!" I was the first member/ˈmembə/ of the team. We have played football for a year now and we all feel very fit. Our teacher is the coach, and she also takes part in ② the training with us. She is in excellent condition/kənˈdɪʃn/ too. —Wang Wei

我们的老师决定组建一个女子足球队，我想："多好的主意啊！"我是这个足球队的第一名成员。现在我们踢了一年的足球，我们都感觉很健康。我们的老师是教练，她也和我们一起参加训练。她的健康状况也很好。——王薇

❸ For the last few years, I went to work on the underground. When I got to work, I always felt very sleepy/ˈsliːpi/ ③ and I was not happy. I bought a bike in January. Since then/ðen/, it has become part of my life. Now I ride to work every day. It is my daily/ˈdeɪli/ ④ exercise. I arrive at work with a smile on my face. —Thomas

在过去的几年里，我乘地铁去上班。当我开始工作时，我总是感觉非常困乏，而且也不开心。一月份我买了一辆自行车。从那时起，它就成了我生活中的一部分。现在我每天骑自行车上班。这是我的日常锻炼。我面带微笑地开始工作。——托马斯

❹ I was weak/wiːk/ after a long illness/ˈɪlnəs/, so I wanted to exercise/ˈeksəˌsaɪz/ more. Then a friend suggested, "Why don't we ⑤ go for a run before school?" So we started running a week ago. But I do not enjoy running, and when I get to school, I feel awful/ˈɔːfl/. My legs hurt and I am hot all over. Perhaps/pəˈhæps/ ⑥ I am too weak to do any exercise. What do you think? —Richard

久病之后，我感觉身体很虚弱，所以我想多锻炼。然后一位朋友建议："上

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

学之前，我们为什么不去跑步呢？”因此一周前我们开始跑步。但是我不喜欢跑步，并且当我到达学校时，我感觉不舒服。我的腿痛，并且我浑身发热。也许是我身体太虚弱了而不能做任何锻炼。你认为呢？——理查德

Post-reading（读后）

写作小练笔

☞（答案见98页）

Learning to learn 学会学习

When you write your advice, you can use *you...*, *you should/should not*...and sentences like *Do*... or *Do not*... 当你写你的建议时，你可以使用“你……”，“你应该 / 不应该……”和像“做……”或“不做……”之类的句子。

3 Complete the notes. 完成笔记。

Anna 安娜

1. She was not feeling very _____. 她感觉不是很_____。
2. She needed more _____. 她需要更多的_____。
3. She got a pet _____ from her parents and she takes him for a _____ every day.
   她从父母那里得到一只宠物_____，她每天带他_____。

Wang Wei 王薇

4. She was the _____ member of the football team. 她是足球队里的_____成员。
5. She has played football with the team for a _____ and all the members feel very _____.
   她在队里已经踢足球_____，所有的队员感觉非常_____。

Thomas/ˈtɒməs/ 托马斯

6. He went to work on the _____ for several years. 他乘坐_____上班数年了。
7. He bought a _____ in January. 他在 1 月份买了一辆_____。
8. He arrives at work with a _____ on his face. 他脸上带着_____开始工作。

Richard/ˈrɪtʃəd/ 理查德

9. He started running a _____ ago. 他一_____前开始跑步。
10. He does not _____ running. 他不_____跑步。
11. He thinks he is perhaps too _____ to go for a run.
    他认为他也许太_____而不能跑步。

4 Complete the sentences with the words in the box. 用方框中的单词完成句子。

active 活跃的　awful 极坏的　condition 身体状况　daily 每天的
member 成员　Perhaps 也许

1. Tom runs six miles every morning, so he is in very good _____.
   汤姆每天早晨跑六英里，因此他_____非常好。
2. Jill is a very _____ girl and plays lots of sports.
   吉尔是一个非常_____女孩并且做大量的运动。
3. I had a very bad headache yesterday, and I felt _____.
   昨天我的头很痛，我感觉_____。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

4. Ben is a(n)_____of the school football team.

本是学校足球队里的一名_____。

5. You do not look very well._____ you should see a doctor.

你看起来不是很舒服。_____你应该去看医生。

6. I saw your grandfather taking his _____ walk this morning.

今天早晨我看到你的祖父正进行他的_____散步。

Writing 写作

5 Work in pairs. Look at the pictures of Colin. Write notes and explain:

结对练习。看科林的照片，写笔记并解释：

·what the problem was 问题是什么

·what suggestions the doctor gave him 医生给他的建议是什么

·what happened next 接下来发生了什么

·how Colin/ˈkɒlɪn/ feels now 科林现在感觉如何

Now write four sentences to describe what happened. 现在写 4 个句子来描述发生的事情。

6 Write a passage about healthy living. Use the sentences you wrote in Activity 5 to help you.

写一篇关于健康生活的文章。用活动 5 里你写的句子来帮助你。

课文背诵指南

Healthy living

Anna

1. She was not feeling very ___well___.
2. She needed more ___exercise___.
3. She got a pet ___dog___ from her parents and she takes him for a ___walk___ every day.

Wang Wei

4. She was the ___first___ member of the football team.
5. She has played football with the team for a ___year___ and all the members feel very ___fit___.

Thomas

6. He went to work on the ___underground___ for several years.
7. He bought a ___bike___ in January.
8. He arrives at work with a ___smile___ on his face.

Richard

9. He started running a ___week___ ago.
10. He does not ___enjoy___ running.
11. He thinks he is perhaps too ___weak___ to go for a run.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 60分

(答案见267页)

阅读策略

关键词法(阅读时,尽量跳过与问题无关的内容,只找关键词,并且可以用画线、圈点、加注或记录等方式加以整理。)

阅读过程

拓展阅读

一、速读文章,回答下列问题

1. Who always felt very sleepy and was unhappy? (辨别比较题)

二、细读文章,完成下列题目

2. Anna needed more _____. (细节理解题)
3. _____ was the first member of the football team. (细节理解题)
4. Richard started running a _____ ago. (细节理解题)
5. Perhaps I am too weak to do any exercise. (译为汉语,归纳句意题)

Ⅲ. 考点精讲点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

·考点应用

·考点批注

★I have never been very active, and I do not like sports.

① **active** /'æktɪv/ *adj.* 积极的;活跃的

e.g. Although he's nearly 80, he is still very active.

尽管快 80 岁了,他还是十分活跃。

He is an active member of the school's stamp club.

他是学校集邮俱乐部的一名活跃会员。

考题在线 1 —How are you getting on with your cousin?

—Very well. He is really _____ and join in all kinds of activities in his spare time. [宜昌]

A. polite B. strict C. active D. careful

点拨:用词义辨析法解题。polite 有礼貌的;strict 严肃的;active 活跃的;careful 小心的。由"堂弟参加各种各样的活动"可知,我的堂弟非常活跃。

★ active 常用短语搭配

- take an active part in 积极参加
- be active in doing sth. 积极做某事
- play an active role/part in 在……中扮演积极、主动的角色
- have an active mind 思维活跃

★Our teacher is the coach, and she also takes part in the training with us.

② **take part in** 参加,参与

e.g. Can I take part in the game? 我能参加比赛吗?

Do you want to take part in cleaning the classroom?

你想参与打扫教室吗?

考题在线 2 Anyone who is good at singing can _____ the activity in our school. [阜康、米泉]

A. take part in B. take off

- take part in 意为"参加",一般指参加或参与讨论、战争等群众性的活动。take an active part in 意为"积极参加"。
- take part in 后跟名词、动名词等。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

C. take out　　D. take care of

点拨：考查动词短语辨析。take part in 参加；take off 起飞；take out 拿出；take care of 照顾。后面的宾语是 the activity，故此处表示参加活动。

★When I got to work, I always felt very sleepy and I was not happy.

③ **sleepy** /'sli:pi/ *adj.*(***needing sleep; ready to go to sleep***) 困的；想睡的

【重点】辨析：sleepy, sleep 与 asleep

sleepy	形容词	意为“想睡的，困的”，在句中作表语或定语
sleep	不及物动词	意为“睡，睡觉”，表示持续状态
	不可数名词	意为“睡觉；睡眠”
asleep	形容词	意为“睡着的，睡熟的”，常作表语，不能作定语。fall asleep 表示“入睡”的短暂动作

辨异：
Your sister falls asleep. If you feel sleepy, please go to sleep.
你的妹妹睡着了。如果你感觉困了，请去睡觉。

考题在线 3 用词的适当形式填空。

After working, he felt _____ (sleep). So he fell asleep later.

核心素养之良好习惯

注意健康睡眠

睡眠对人的免疫力和健康状况(*health condition*)非常重要，经科学家们研究：晚上 11 点到凌晨 5 点是睡眠的黄金时间（*prime time*）。因为 23 点至凌晨 5 点为各个脏器排毒的时期，排毒在人体熟睡中进行为最佳，错过了排毒的最佳时间，白天睡眠所起的作用远不如晚上睡眠所起的作用。所以，并不是睡足 8 小时就够了，而是要保证不要熬夜(*stay up late*)。

★It is my daily exercise.

④ **daily** /'deɪli/ *adj.* 每天的；天天的

daily
- 作副词，意为“每日”，相当于 every day；
- 作名词，意为“日报”。

e.g. Getting daily exercise is important.

每天锻炼很重要。

The zoo is open daily. 动物园每天开放。

China Daily is very popular with college students.

《中国日报》很受大学生欢迎。

敲黑板 daily 仅用于名词前作定语，相当于 everyday。

考题在线 4 根据句意及所给中文提示，写出句子所缺单词。

According to a survey, the average number of _____（日常的）steps of people across the world is 4,961. [宿迁]

以 -ly 结尾的形容词
- weekly 每周的
- monthly 每月的
- yearly 每年的
- friendly 友好的
- lovely 可爱的
- lively 充满活力的

★Why don't we go for a run before school?

⑤ **Why don't we...?** 我们为什么不……？

e.g. Why not go for a walk?

=Why don't you/we go for a walk?

为什么不去散步呢？

Why don't you/we...? =Why not...? 其后跟动词原形，是提建议的一种句型。

考题在线 5 —I'm tired out after three-day work day and night.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

—_____ relax yourself? Go out and enjoy the natural beauty. [扬州]

A. Why not　　B. Why don't

C. What about　　D. Shall we

点拨:考查非谓语动词。"Why not do sth.?"为固定句式,表示委婉提出建议。What about 后接动词的 -ing 形式,Shall we 和后面 yourself 人称不符。

★"建议"句型

- Let's... 让我们……
- What/How about...? ……怎么样?
- You'd better do sth. 你最好做某事
- Shall we...? 我们……好吗?
- Would you like...? 你想要……吗?

★Perhaps I am too weak to do any exercise.

⑥ **perhaps** /pəˈhæps/ *adv.* 可能;也许

【易错点】辨析: perhaps, probably, possibly 和 maybe

perhaps	"也许",说话人没有太大的把握,表示可能性不大。	Perhaps this is his finest novel. 这也许是他写得最好的一部小说。
probably	"可能",表示把握很大的事情。	He will probably succeed. 他将有可能成功。
possibly	"大概,也许",常和 can, may, must 等情态动词连用,比 probably 语气弱,但比 perhaps 语气强。	They've done everything they can possibly think of. 凡是可能想到的,他们都已经做了。
maybe	"或许",和 perhaps 意思差不多,但不够庄重。	Maybe we can go to the movies. 也许我们可以去看电影。

考题在线 6 —I wonder why Mary didn't answer my phone.

—_____ /pəˈhæps/ she was busy at that time.

考题在线答案 1. C　2. A　3. sleepy　4. daily　5. A　6. Perhaps

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

☞(答案见267页)

一、根据句意、首字母或汉语提示完成句子

1. The girl has a warm h_____ and she is always ready to help others.
2. Even though Peter is old and w_____, he still works very hard.
3. Her _____(身体状况)is quite fit. Don't worry about her.
4. He is a blind boy, but he can look after his _____life. [贵港]
5. —What do you think of Betty?
   —I think she is an _____(积极的) girl.

二、单项选择

6. We talked about the problem and Tim _____ doing some research first. [沈阳]
   A. finished　　B. enjoyed
   C. suggested　　D. practiced
7. He speaks English very well because he _____ in the US for 20 years. [攀枝花]
   A. lives　　B. lived
   C. has lived　　D. had lived
8. —How many students will _____ the sports meeting?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

—Everyone will.

A. take part in　　B. take part

C. join　　D. to join in

9.As a teacher I really feel worried to see so many students _____ glasses. [滨州]

A. wearing　　B. dressing

C. putting on　　D. being in

10.The old man was _____ tired _____ walk any farther.

A. so; as　　B. too; to

C. so; to　　D. very; to

三、根据汉语完成句子

11. 从太空返回，宇航员的健康状况很好。

Returning from space, the astronauts were _____ _____ _____.

12. 玲玲成为我们学校电影俱乐部的成员已经五年了。

Lingling has been _____ _____ _____ our school's movie club for five years.

13. 我们为什么不参加歌唱比赛呢?

Why don't we _____ _____ _____ the singing competition?

14. 他买了那条宠物狗三个月了。

He _____ _____ that pet dog for three months.

15. 她感到很困，打算去睡觉。

She feels very _____ and plans to _____ _____ _____.

Unit 3 Language in use

I. 课文原文、译文

Language practice 语言练习

I haven't done much exercise since I got my computer last year.
自从去年我有了电脑以来，我就没怎么锻炼过。
I have had him for three months now. 现在我养了他三个月了。
Since then, it has become part of my life. 自那时起，它就成了我生活中的一部分。

1 Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions. 结对练习。问答下列问题。

—*How long have you had your bike*? ——你买自行车多长时间了?

—*I've had it for about two years*. ——我买了大约 2 年了。

1. How long have you studied at this school? 你在这所学校学习多长时间了?
2. How long have you studied English? 你学英语多长时间了?
3. How long have you known your best friend? 你认识你最好的朋友多长时间了?
4. How long have you lived in this place? 你住在这个地方多长时间了?
5. How long have you used this book? 你使用这本书多长时间了?

2 Complete the questionnaire about healthy living. Use *since* or *for* where necessary.

完成这个关于健康生活的问卷。在必要的地方用上 *since* 或 *for*。

Healthy Living Questionnaire 健康生活问卷

1. What kind of exercise do you do? 你做什么种类的锻炼?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

2. How long have you done this kind of exercise? 你做这种锻炼多长时间了?

3. Do you play in a school sports team? 你在学校运动队吗?

4. If yes, how long have you played in the team? 如果是，你在这个队（做锻炼）多长时间了?

5. Do you have a healthy diet? 你有健康的饮食吗?

6. If yes, when did you start having a healthy diet? 如果是，你什么时候开始健康饮食的?

3 Complete the sentences. 完成句子。

1. —I fell ill two days ago. ——我两天前生病了。
   —So you've _____ ill for two days? ——那么你_____病了两天了?
   —That's right. ——对。

2. —I saw the doctor three days ago. ——三天前我去看医生了。
   —So you haven't _____ her in the last three days? ——那么你最近三天没有_____她?

3. —I'll walk to school for the first time tomorrow. ——明天我将第一次步行上学。
   —So you've never _____ to school before? ——那么你以前从来没有_____去学校？

4. —I came into hospital two days ago. ——两天前我来到了医院。
   —So you've already _____ in hospital① for two days? ——那么你已经_____生病住院两天了?

5. —How long _____ you _____ a headache? ——你_____头痛多长时间了?
   —Oh, it began about two hours ago. ——哦，大约两个小时之前开始的。

4 Complete the passage with the words and expressions in the box.
用方框中的单词及短语完成短文。

cold 感冒　coughs 咳嗽　exercise 锻炼　fast food 快餐食物 stomach ache 胃痛　weak 弱的　well 好的

For a long time John did not feel (1)_____. He often had (2)_____and colds. He went to see a doctor. The doctor told him to take more (3)_____and stop eating (4)_____. So he started riding a bike to school. At first, he felt tired and (5)_____. Then he got fitter and started enjoying it. Since he started riding a bike, he has not had a(n) (6)_____ and he has not had a(n)(7)_____ since he stopped eating fast food.

约翰感觉不 (1)_____很长时间了。他经常 (2)_____和感冒。他去看医生。医生告诉他多做 (3)_____并停止吃 (4)_____。所以，他开始骑自行车去上学。最初，他感觉累和 (5)_____。然后，他更健壮了，也开始喜欢骑自行车了。自从他开始骑自行车以来，他还没有 (6)_____，自从他停止吃快餐食物以来，他还没有 (7)_____。

5 Complete the conversation with the sentences in the box. 用方框中的句子完成对话。

Can I help you? 你怎么了？ How long have you been like this? 你像这种情况有多长时间了？ That's it. 正是如此。 What's wrong with me? 我怎么了？

Doctor:(1)_____ (1)_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Bill: Well, I've got a pain in my back. 哦，我后背痛。

Doctor:(2)_____ (2)_____

Bill: For about two weeks. 大约两周的时间。

Doctor: Let me have a look. Where do you work? 让我看一看。你在哪里工作?

Bill:I work in an office. 我在办公室工作。

Doctor: Do you play computer games? 你玩电脑游戏吗?

Bill: Yes, a lot. I usually play computer games late at night.

是的，很多。我通常晚上玩电脑游戏到非常晚。

Doctor:(3)_____ (3)_____

Bill:(4)_____ (4)_____

Doctor: Well, you spend too much time in front of the computer. 哦，你在电脑前花费的时间太多了。

Bill: What can I do? 我可以做些什么?

Doctor: Stand up and do some exercise from time to time. Don't play computer games too much.

不时地站起来做做运动。不要玩太多的电脑游戏。

Now work in pairs. Read out the conversation. 现在结对练习。朗读对话。

6 Read the passage and match the problems with the advice. 读文章，将建议与问题匹配。

What can I do? 我可以做些什么?

课文朗读6

❶ I would like to take more exercise, but I have not found a favourite sport. The coach has not chosen me to play in the football team because I am not fit, and I am not a good player. I went running in the park to get fit, but I felt lonely and sad. What can I do? —Alan

我想多锻炼，但是我还没有发现一项我最喜爱的运动。因为我不健壮，所以教练没有选我参加足球队，并且我也不是一位优秀的运动员。我在公园里跑步健身，但是我感觉孤独和难过。我可以做些什么呢? ——艾伦

❷ I went to school by bus in the past, and I did not feel fit. So last month I decided to take more exercise and started walking to school. I have walked to school for three weeks now. I am getting a lot fitter and I feel healthier. The problem is, all my friends take the bus to school and I do not have anyone to talk with on the way②! What can I do? —Barbara/ˈbɑːbərə/

过去我乘公交车去上学，我感觉（身体）不健壮。于是上个月我决定多参加锻炼，开始步行去上学。现在我已经步行上学三周了。我变得健壮多了并且感觉更健康了。问题是，我所有的朋友都乘公交车去上学，在路上我连个说话的人都没有！我可以做些什么呢? ——芭芭拉

❸ I love playing computer games with my friends. I also watch TV and eat fast food. I know it is not healthy and sometimes I get a stomach ache. The problem is, I do not know how to stop and become fitter and healthier. I do not want to spend all my life sitting in a chair. What can I do? —John

我喜欢和我的朋友们一起玩电脑游戏。我也看电视和吃快餐食物。我知道这是不健康的，有时候我胃痛。问题是，我不知道怎样才能停止，从而变得更健壮和更健康。我不想坐在椅子上度过一生。我可以做什么呢? ——约翰

Have you tried this? 你尝试过这样吗?

a)Walking has helped you get fitter, so why not ask a friend to walk to school with you?

步行已经帮助你变得更健壮了，那么为什么不请一位朋友和你一起步行上学呢?

b)How about asking a friend to go running with you? Have you practised to improve your football

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

skills? 请一位朋友和你一起去跑步怎么样呢？为了提高你的足球技术你练习了吗？

c)Why not turn off[3] the computer and TV and join a sports club? Go with your friends so that you will still spend time together. And how about choosing some healthy food to eat?

为什么不关掉电脑和电视，参加一个运动俱乐部呢？和你的朋友一块儿去，因此你们仍然会在一起度过时光。还有，选择一些健康的食物吃怎么样？

Work in pairs. Do you have similar problems? Talk about your advice.

结对练习。你有相似的问题吗？谈论一下你的建议。

7 **Listen and complete the passage.** 听录音，完成短文。

课文听力7

The man feels (1)_____. He is hot and (2)_____. He has been like this for about (3)_____. He has got a temperature and a (4)_____ but has not got a (5)_____ or a cough. The doctor suggests he should (6)_____ and take the medicine (7)_____ a day. And he should (8)_____ until he feels better.

这位男士感觉 (1)_____。他发热和 (2)_____。他像这样大约 (3)_____。他发烧了并且 (4)_____，但是没有 (5)_____或咳嗽。医生建议他应该 (6)_____，一天服药 (7)_____。他还应该 (8)_____直到他感觉好多了为止。

Around the world 世界各地

The World Health Organization/ɔ:gənaɪ'zeɪʃn/ 世界卫生组织

The World Health Organization (WHO) was set up[4] in 1948 to help ordinary people all over the world, especially in developing countries. It cures, prevents and controls serious diseases such as malaria, and educates people about how to protect their health. The WHO has helped millions of people by training doctors and nurses, and by teaching mothers how to take better care of their children.

世界卫生组织 (WHO) 创建于 1948 年，旨在帮助世界各地的普通人，特别是发展中国家的人们。它治疗、预防和控制严重的疾病，比如疟疾，还传授人们关于如何保护他们的健康的知识。世界卫生组织已经帮助了数百万人，通过培训医生和护士，还通过教妈妈们如何更好地照顾她们的孩子。

Module task: Doing a survey to find the most suitable exercise

模块任务：做一个调查，找到最适合的锻炼

8 **Work in groups. Do a survey to find what exercise your group members do and the effects.**

以小组为单位练习。做一个调查，找到你小组成员所做的锻炼以及效果。

·What exercise do you often do? 你经常做什么锻炼?

·When did you begin doing it? 你什么时候开始做的?

·How often do you do it? 你多长时间做一次锻炼?

·Is it good for you? 它对你有益吗?

·How do you feel after you do the exercise? 做完锻炼之后，你感觉如何?

9 **Decide what exercise is the most suitable for you.** 决定什么锻炼是最适合你的。

10 **Talk about your decision and your reasons with the rest of the class.**

和班里的其他同学谈论一下你的决定及原因。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

•考点批注 •考点应用



be in hospital 在住院(治疗)

★**So you've already been in hospital for two days?**

① **in hospital 生病住院**

e.g.He was in hospital last month. 上个月他生病住院了。

【易错点】辨析: in hospital 和 in the hospital

in hospital	指生病住院。
in the hospital	指在医院里，可以是工作，或探望病人等，但不指生病住院。

考题在线 1 我妈妈生病住院了，我不得不在那儿照顾她。

My mother was _____ _____ and I had to look after her there.

- lose one's way 迷路
- by the way 顺便说一下，顺便问一下
- in the way 挡路
- in a way 在某种程度上
- in some ways 在某些方面
- the best way to do sth. 做某事最好的方法

★**The problem is, all my friends take the bus to school and I do not have anyone to talk with on the way!**

② **on the way 在路上**

e.g. Little Jimmy lost his keys on the way to school.

小吉米在上学的路上把钥匙丢了。

on my way home 回家的路上

敲黑板 on the way to 后跟地点，当后接 here, there, home 等地点副词时，to 要省略。

考题在线 2 I met my old friend on the way _____ home.

A. to B. in C. on D. /

★**Why not turn off the computer and TV and join a sports club?**

③ **turn off 关闭；关上**

e.g. Who's turned off the TV? I turned it on just now. 谁关的电视？我刚刚打开它。

敲黑板 turn off 是"动词＋副词"型短语，人称代词作宾语时，要放在 turn 和 off 中间。

考题在线 3 Would you please _____ the light? I can't sleep well with it on.

A. turn on B. turn off C. turn to D. turn around



turn on 打开



turn off 关上



turn up 调高



turn down 调低

★**The World Health Organization (WHO) was set up in 1948 to help ordinary people all over the world, especially in developing countries.**

④ **set up 建立，设立**

敲黑板 set up 是"动词＋副词"型词组，人称代词作宾语时，要放在词组中间。

e.g. Betty planned to set up her own company. 贝蒂打算创办自己的公司。

Tell us when you started your business and how you set it up.

告诉我们你是何时开办了自己的企业，又是如何创建的。

考题在线 4 —What should we do for the disabled children?

—You should _____ a study group to help them. [贵港]

A. take up B. set up C. look up D. put up

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

点拨：用关键信息法解题。take up 占据；set up 创建，设立；look up 查找；抬头看；put up 挂起；张贴。根据此空后面的 a study group（一个学习小组）可知，应“创建”一个学习小组。

考题在线答案 1. in hospital 2. D 3. B 4. B

Ⅲ. 模块语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

现在完成时（3）

考点 **表示某一行为或状态从过去某时间一直持续到现在，我们也可借助现在完成时。**



考向 1：[重点] 此用法要与表示一段时间的时间状语连用，这类状语通常是 for+ 时间段或 since+ 时间点。

e.g. She has lived in the city for ten years.
她生活在这座城市 10 年了。
Tom has been like this since Monday.
从周一开始汤姆就一直这样。

考题在线 1 China _____ great achievements in science and technology since 1978. [福建]
A. makes B. made C. has made

点拨：时间状语 since 1978 表示“自 1978 年以来”，由此可知表示持续到现在的动作，应用现在完成时。

考向 2：对现在完成时中表一段时间的时间状语进行提问应用 How long。

考题在线 2 —_____ has the 2018 World Cup been on?
—For about two weeks. [海南]
A. How soon B. How far
C. How long

点拨：考查疑问词辨析。how soon“多久以后”，常对表示将来的一段时间提问；how far“多远”，提问距离；how long“多长时间”，提问时间段。答语为一段时间，故应用 how long 提问。

考向 3：[易错点] 终止性动词（词组）表示的动作短暂且不能持续，在现在完成时中不能与 for, since 等引导的时间状语连用，但可以用意思相同或相近的延续性动词（词组）来替换。

e.g. Mike has been in China for three years.
迈克来到中国 3 年了。

常见终止性动词（词组）的转换形式：

	终止性动词（词组）	转换形式	例句
用相应的延续性动词（词组）替换终止性动词（词组）	buy	have	I have had the bike for two years. 我买这辆自行车2年了。
	become/come/go	be	
	catch/get a cold	have a cold	
	put on	wear	
	borrow	keep	
将终止性动词（词组）转换成 be+ 名词（词组）/ 介词短语	join the Party	be a Party member 或 be in the Party	I have been an army soldier for two years. 我参军 2 年了。
	join the army	be an army soldier 或 be in the army	
	arrive in/at/reach	be in/at+ 地点	
用 be+ 副词替换终止性动词（词组）	leave	be away	Jane has been here since an hour ago. 简来到这里 1 个小时了。
	finish/end	be over	
	begin/start	be on	
	come here/go there	be here/there	

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 3 —Where are the teachers now?

—In the meeting room. They _____ the meeting for 10 minutes. [淮安]

A. have begun　　B. have been on

C. have had　　D. have been held

点拨：考查句子时态。由句意及 for 10 minutes 推断该句应使用现在完成时，begin 是终止性动词，与时间段连用时，需将 begin 转换为 be on。

考题在线答案 1. C　2. C　3. B

Ⅳ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20 分

写作小练笔

The doctor told Anna to take more exercise, but she doesn't like sports. So her parents gave her a pet dog for her birthday. Now she gets exercise by taking it for a walk every day. 介绍 Anna 的运动

Wang Wei took part in the girls' football team in her school. They have played football for a year. Now they all feel very fit. Their teacher is also in excellent condition. 介绍 Wang Wei 的运动

Thomas felt very sleepy, but he bought a bike in January. Since then, he has ridden to work. Now he is happy. 介绍 Thomas 的运动

Richard wanted to exercise more after a long illness. So he accepted his friend's suggestion to go for a run before school. But he feels awful, because he's too weak to do any exercise. 介绍 Richard 的运动

模块话题 [青岛]

现在，中学生在校内能保证一定时间的运动量，但在校外普遍缺少运动甚至不运动。请就此现象写一篇短文，谈谈你的看法。内容包括：

1. 缺少运动甚至不运动的原因；
2. 缺少运动甚至不运动对学生的影响；
3. 针对这种现象提出合理的改善建议。

要求：

1. 词数：80—100（开头已给出，不计入总词数）；
2. 文中不得出现真实的校名和人名。

参考词汇：be short of 缺少

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

1. 人称：该文主要采用第三人称。

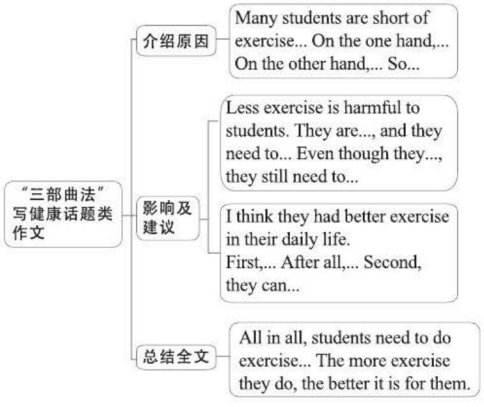
2. 时态：本文为议论文，通常用一般现在时。

写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

"三部曲法"写健康话题类作文

首先，通过话题背景介绍指出缺少运动甚至不运动的原因；然后，说明缺少运动甚至不运动对学生的影响并提出自己的建议；最后，总结全文，深化主题。

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）



经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	exercise, spare, probably, less, grow, daily, sport
短语	be short of, too much, such as, be harmful to, even though, be busy with, be bad for, all in all
句子	① I think they had better exercise in their daily life. ② Swimming is a very good sport and it doesn't take much time. ③ The more exercise they do, the better it is for them.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

Many students are short of exercise in their spare time now. On the one hand, they have to do too much homework after school. On the other hand, they probably have so many after-school classes such as playing the piano. So there is no time for them to do exercise.

Less exercise is harmful to students. They are growing quickly, and they need to do more exercise to keep healthy. Even though they are too busy with their schoolwork, they still need to play sports to make their bodies strong. I think they had better exercise in their daily life. First, they can take a walk after dinner on weekdays. After all, it's bad for them to do homework at once after dinner. Second, they can go swimming on weekends. Swimming is a very good sport and it doesn't take much time .

All in all, students need to do exercise in their spare time. The more exercise they do, the better it is for them.

名师点评：本文用"三部曲法"写作，结构严谨，层次分明，要点全面，论证有力，个人观点正确、合理。

首段介绍原因，用 on the one hand, on the other hand 进行分析，条理分明；第二段指出影响并提出合理的建议。首句即为主题句，用 be harmful to 结构直击要点，然后用"I think..."句式提出自己的建议，使用了一些衔接上下文和表示逻辑关系的词汇和短语，如 first, after all, second 等；最后一段总结全文，深化主题，做到了首尾呼应。



Ⅴ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

☞（答案见267页）

一、针对性训练

1. I'm very sorry to say that my grandfather is badly ill and he has been _____ for over a week.

A. in a hospital　　B. in hospital

C. in the hospital　　D. in his hospital

2.—It's getting dark. Could you please _____ the light for me?

—All right. Just a minute.　　[重庆]

A. keep on　　B. turn on

C. try on　　D. put on

3. Would you please _____ my baby sister while I'm cooking?

A. take care　　B. take care of

C. to the care　　D. to take care of

4. _____ the way to school, I noticed a fire.

A. In　　B. On

C. For　　D. Of

5. The workers have _____ many factories in the past few years.

A. put on　　B. given up

C. woken up　　D. set up

二、语法专练

6.—Lucy, is your uncle a teacher?

—Yes, he is. He _____ history for nearly 20 years.　　[北京]

A. teaches　　B. has taught

C. is teaching　　D. will teach

7. The film *Operation Red Sea* _____ a lot of praise since its first show months ago.　　[上海]

A. wins　　B. won

C. will win　　D. has won

8.—Hurry up! The movie *Wolf Warriors II*

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

_____ for 10 minutes.

—OK, I'm coming right now.

[龙东]

A. began　　B. has begun

C. has been on

9. We haven't heard from our English teacher since he _____ to Beijing.

A. move　　B. moves

C. moved　　D. has moved

10. —_____ have you lived in Lanzhou?

—Since my parents found jobs here.

A. How long　　B. How far

C. How soon　　D. How old

三、模块知识浓缩

用方框中所给单词或短语的适当形式完成短文

smile, take part in, heart, sleep, ill, all over, member, exercise, pet, fit

Anna didn't feel well, so she went to see the doctor. The doctor checked her _____[11] and told her to do more _____[12]. Anna gets exercise by taking her _____[13] dog for a walk every day. Now she feels really healthy.

Wang Wei is the first _____[14] of the girls' football team. She has played football for a year and she feels very _____[15]. And her teacher also _____[16] the same training and she is in excellent condition too.

Thomas went to work by underground in the past. When he got to work, he always felt quite _____[17]. Now, he rides a bike to work and he always starts to work with a _____[18] on his face.

Richard had a long _____[19], so he wanted to exercise more. A week ago, he started running with his friend. But he doesn't enjoy it. When he gets to school, his legs hurt and he is hot _____[20]. He doesn't know what to do next.

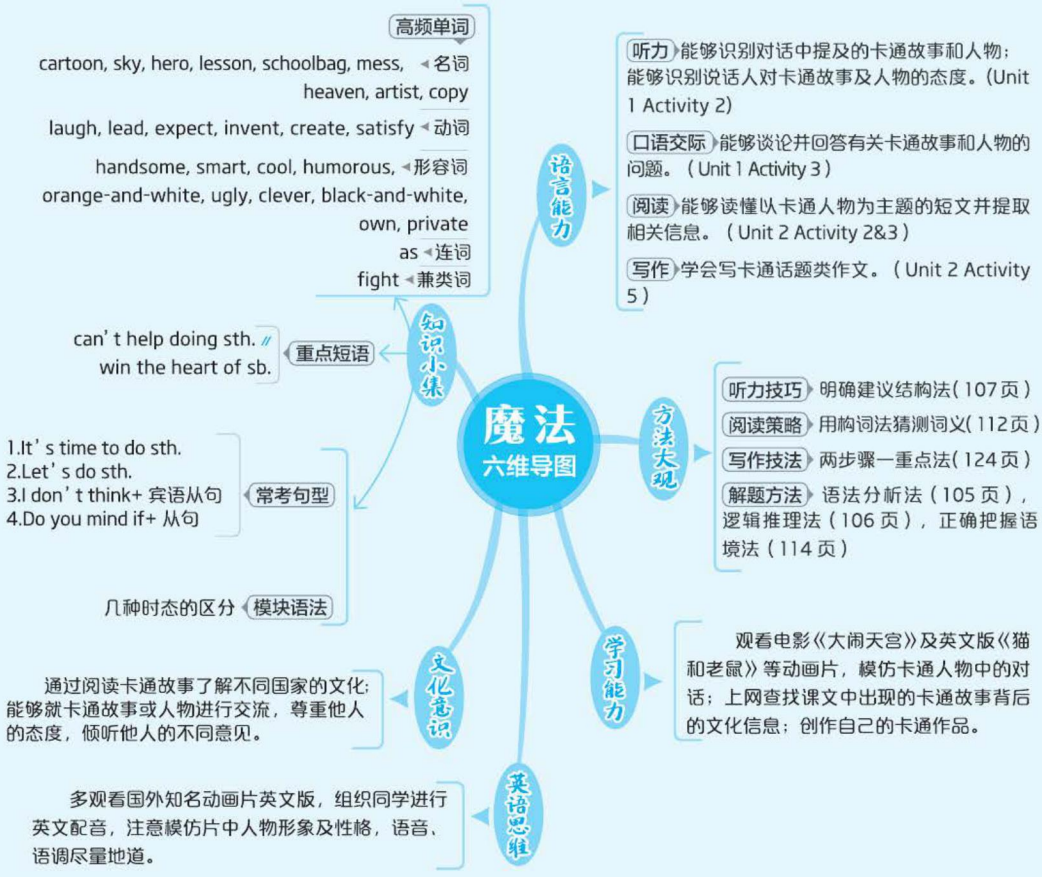
Behind every successful man there's a lot of unsuccessful years.
每个成功者都经历过很多不成功的岁月。



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Module 5 Cartoons

词汇表听写



记忆大师

Unit 1 It's time to watch a cartoon.

必背单词

1.**smart** *adj.* 聪明的；机灵的 →**smarter**（比较级）→**smartest**（最高级）

2.**fight** *v.* 与……战斗 →**fought**（过去式）→**fought**（过去分词）

3.**hero** *n.* 英雄；男主角 →**heroes** *pl.*

4.**cartoon** *n.* 漫画；动画片

5.**handsome** *adj.* 漂亮的；英俊的

6.**sky** *n.* 天，天空

7.**cool** *adj.* 时髦的；酷的

8.**humorous** *adj.* 幽默的；滑稽的

9.**laugh** *v.* 笑，发笑

10.**lesson** *n.* 经验；教训

必背短语

11.in a happy way 以快乐的方式

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

12.the same as 和……相同

13.can't help doing sth. 情不自禁做某事

14.learn from sb. 向某人学习

15.work together 合作

‖ 必背句子

16.**It's time** to watch a cartoon.

该看卡通片了。

17.That's a **real hero**! 那是个真英雄!

18.I **don't think** we agree. 我认为我们观点不同。

19.I think **there's** a **lesson** there!

我认为那值得借鉴!

Unit 2 Tintin has been popular for over eighty years.

‖ 必背单词

1.**ugly** *adj.* 难看的;丑陋的 →**uglier**(比较级) →**ugliest**(最高级)

2.**lead** *v.* 领导;率领 →**led**(过去式)→**led**(过去分词)

3.**clever** *adj.* 聪明的;机灵的 →**cleverer**(比较级)→**cleverest**(最高级)

4.**expect** *v.* 期盼;等待 →expect to do sth. 期盼干某事

5.**artist** *n.* 艺术家;画家 →art *n.* 美术,艺术

6.**invent** *v.* 发明;创造 →**invention** *n.* 发明 →**inventor** *n.* 发明家

7.**copy** *n.* (一)本;(一)份 →**copies** *pl.*

8.**own** *adj.* 自己的 →**owner** *n.* 主人

9.**satisfy** *v.* 满足;使满意 →**satisfied** *adj.* 感到满意的

10.**orange-and-white** *adj.* 橙白相间的

11.**schoolbag** *n.* 书包

12.**as** *conj.* 当……时

13.**mess** *n.* 脏乱;凌乱

14.**heaven** *n.* 天国;天堂

15.**black-and-white** *adj.* 黑白的

16.**private** *adj.* 私人的;个人的

17.**create** *v.* 创造

‖ 必背短语

18.win the heart of 赢得……的心

19.ever since 自从;自……以来

20.a group of 一群

21.make a mess 弄得一团糟

22.in heaven 在天国里

23.more than 多于,超过

24.in the 1980s 在20世纪80年代

25.as well as 除……之外;也;还有

‖ 必背句子

26.He **works for** a newspaper and has lots of **exciting experiences**.

他为一家报社工作,有许多令人兴奋的经历。

27.Snoopy **lives in** his own private world and finds real life hard to understand.

史努比生活在他自己的私人世界里,并且发现现实生活难以理解。

Unit 3 Language in use

‖ 必背短语

1.next to 紧挨着

2.at first 起初

3.come to life 复活,苏醒

4.be popular with 受……的欢迎

5.be based on 以……为基础

6.of all ages 各年龄阶段的

‖ 必背句子

7.Do you **mind** if I **borrow** your book?

你介意我借一下你的书吗?

8.They told stories using **pictures**.

它们用图画讲故事。

9.A Mickey Mouse film was the first cartoon film **with sound** to become really popular.

一部米老鼠的电影是第一部变得真正受欢迎的有声卡通电影。

‖ 必背语法

10.He **has been popular for** over eighty years.

他已经受欢迎八十多年了。

11.Tintin **appeared** in China in the 1980s.

丁丁于20世纪80年代出现在中国。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 1 It's time to watch a cartoon.

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

Listening and vocabulary 听力和词汇

1 Answer the questions. 回答问题。

1. What kind of cartoons do you like? 你喜欢哪种卡通片?
2. Do cartoons always end in a happy way? 卡通片总是有着快乐的结局吗?
3. What cartoons do you think are funny? 你认为什么卡通片是有趣的?

2 Listen and find out Betty's and Tony's answers to the questions in Activity 1.

听录音，找出贝蒂和托尼在活动 1 中问题的答案。

课文听力 2

brave 勇敢的　cartoon/kɑ:ˈtu:n/ 动画片　cute 可爱的　funny 滑稽的
handsome/ˈhænsəm/ 英俊的　smart/smɑ:t/ 聪明的

Now work in pairs and check. Do they like the same cartoons as you?

现在结对练习并检查。他们和你喜欢同样的卡通片吗?

3 Listen and read. 听一听，读一读。

课文朗读 3

Tony: Daming, we've finished our homework. It's time to ① watch a cartoon.

大明，我们已经完成我们的家庭作业了。到了看卡通片的时间了。

Daming: Good idea, Tony. Let's watch *Superman*/ˈsu:pəˌmæn/! 好主意，托尼。咱们看《超人》吧！

Tony: We watched *Superman* yesterday. Why don't we watch *Spiderman*/ˈspaɪdəˌmæn/? It's more modern.

我们昨天看了《超人》。我们为什么不看《蜘蛛侠》呢? 它更现代。

Daming: I think Superman is better. He's stronger than Spiderman. He can fly through the sky/skaɪ/ and fight/faɪt/ bad people.

我认为超人更好。他比蜘蛛侠强壮。他能够飞向天空并能够和坏人对抗。

Tony: Spiderman can't fly, but he climbs up buildings with his hands and feet. That's cool/ku:l/. I want to be someone like him.

虽然蜘蛛侠不会飞，但他用他的手和脚攀爬建筑物。太酷了。我想成为像他一样的人。

Daming: Well, Superman is brave. He keeps fighting ② ③ bad people. That's a real hero/ˈhɪərəʊ/ ④!

嗯，超人是勇敢的。他坚持和坏人斗争。那才是真正的英雄！

Tony: I don't think we agree. 我认为我们观点不同。

Daming: All right. Let's watch *Tom and Jerry*/ˈdʒeri/ then. 好的。那么咱们看《猫和老鼠》吧。

Tony: Yeah! I like humorous/ˈhju:mərəs/ ⑤ cartoons. Tom and Jerry are very funny. I can't help ⑥ laughing/ˈlɑ:fɪŋ/ ⑦ when I watch them!

耶！我喜欢幽默卡通片。汤姆和杰瑞很有意思。当我看他们的时候我忍不住发笑！

Daming: Yes, Jerry is too smart for Tom. 是的，对汤姆来说，杰瑞太聪明了。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Tony: The cute mouse always beats the cat! They fight a lot, but they really love each other. Sometimes they protect each other and work together. I think there's a lesson/ˈlesn/ there!

聪明的老鼠总是打败猫！他们经常斗争，但他们的确彼此爱护。有时他们彼此保护并一起工作。我认为那值得借鉴！

Everyday English 日常英语

·It's time to... 到……时间了。

·That's cool. 太酷了。

·I don't think we agree. 我认为我们观点不同。

Now answer the questions. 现在回答问题。

1. What does Tony think about *Spiderman*? 托尼认为《蜘蛛侠》怎么样?
2. Why does Daming think Superman is better? 为什么大明认为超人更好?
3. Why do they both like *Tom and Jerry*? 他们为什么都喜欢《猫和老鼠》?
4. What lesson can Tony learn from *Tom and Jerry*? 托尼能够从《猫和老鼠》中学到什么经验?

4 Complete the passage with the correct form of the words in the box.

用方框中单词的正确形式完成短文。

cartoon 卡通片　fight 斗争　hero 英雄　humorous 幽默的
laugh 笑　lesson 经验；教训

Children and adults all over the world love (1)_____. Some, like *Tom and Jerry*, are (2)_____, and people enjoy (3)_____ at the funny stories in them. Others, like *Superman* and *Spiderman*, are about (4)_____. They (5)_____ bad people to protect the world. These cartoons are not just stories—they also teach (6)_____ about good and bad.

全世界的孩子们和成年人喜欢 (1)_____。有一些，像《猫和老鼠》，是 (2)_____，人们喜欢 (3)_____它们里面的滑稽故事。其他的，像《超人》和《蜘蛛侠》，是关于 (4)_____。他们 (5)_____坏人来保护世界。这些卡通片不仅仅是故事——它们也教给 (6)_____关于好的和坏的。

5 Work in pairs. Describe your favourite cartoon character or the characters below. Use the words in the box in Activity 2 to help you.

结对练习。描述一下你最喜欢的卡通人物或下面的人物。用活动 2 方框中的单词来帮助你。

·Nezha 哪吒　·Mickey Mouse 米老鼠　·Pleasant/ˈpleznt/ Goat/gəʊt/ 喜羊羊　·Snow White 白雪公主

—*I think Nezha is brave.* ——我认为哪吒是勇敢的。

—Yes, I think so too./No, *I think he is...* ——是的，我也这么认为。/ 不，我认为他是……

Pronunciation and speaking 发音与会话

6 Listen and underline the words the speaker stresses. 听录音并用下划线标出说话者重读的单词。

1. That's a real hero! 那才是真正的英雄!
2. I don't think we agree. 我认为我们观点不同。
3. They fight a lot, but they really love each other. 他们经常斗争，但他们的确彼此爱护。
4. I think there's a lesson there! 我认为那值得借鉴！

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Now listen again and repeat. 现在再听一遍并重复。

7 Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions. 结对练习。提问并回答问题。

1. What cartoons do you like reading or watching on TV?
   你喜欢读什么样的漫画或是在电视上观看什么卡通片?
2. When do you read or watch them? 你什么时候阅读或观看它们?
3. Which one do you like best? Why? 你最喜欢哪一个? 为什么?

—*What cartoons do you like reading*? 你喜欢读什么样的漫画?

—*I like reading*... 我喜欢读……

Ⅱ. 考点精讲点拨 稳拿中考基础20分

•考点应用 •考点批注

★It's time to watch a cartoon.

① It's time to do sth.

e.g. It's time to go to school.

=It's time for school. 到上学的时间了。

It's time for you to clean the classroom.

该是你打扫教室的时候了。

It's time (for sb.) to do sth. "到(某人)该做某事的时间了。", 同"It's time for sth."。

考题在线1 It's time for me _____ goodbye to my mother school. I will never forget all my _____ love. [龙东]

A. to say; teachers' B. saying; teachers'

C. to say; teacher's

点拨: 用语法分析法解题。第一个空格处为句型 It's time for sb. to do sth. 所以排除B; 第二个空格处 teachers' 为复数名词所有格。

★He keeps fighting bad people.

② fight /faɪt/ *v.*(***to take part in a war or battle against an enemy***) 与……战斗 *n.* 战斗; 斗争

e.g. They fought their enemies bravely. 他们勇敢斗敌。

We must fight for the future of our country.

我们一定要为我们国家的未来而战。

They fought with the Italians in the last war.

他们在最后的这次战争中与意大利人并肩战斗。

He had a fight with his mother yesterday. 昨天他和母亲吵了一架。

敲黑板 大家一定要记住 fight 的过去式和过去分词是 fought, fought。

fight
- fight against sb. 与某人作战
- fight for sth. 为某事而斗争
- fight with sb. 与某人打架/与某人并肩战斗
- fight over/about sth. 争论某事

fight 作名词, 意为"战斗; 斗争; 打架; 争吵", have a fight with sb. 意为"和某人打架/争吵"。

考题在线2 —I think I've got a bad cold, Doctor. Shall I take some medicine?

—No need. Your body itself is able to _____ the virus. Just drink more water and rest. [无锡]

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

A. catch　　B. fight　　C. lose　　D.hide

点拨：用逻辑推理法解题。catch 抓住；fight 与……斗争；lose 失去；hide 隐藏。答语意为“不需要。你身体自身能够与病毒对抗。多喝水并休息既可”。

③ **keep doing sth. 坚持做某事，一直做某事**

e.g. The old man keeps walking five miles every day.

这位老人每天坚持走五英里。

Keep smiling! Let me take a photo of you.

保持微笑！让我给你拍张照。

考题在线 3 Mr Wu keeps _____ his students that the future belongs to the well-educated. [盐城]

A. telling　　B. to tell　　C. ordering　　D. to order

keep+ 形容词	保持某种状态
keep+sb./sth.+ 形容词	让某人 / 某物保持某种状态
keep+sb./sth.+ 表示地点的介词短语	让某人一直呆在某地 / 一直把某物保存在某处
keep+sb./sth. doing sth.	让某人（继续）不断做某事 / 让某物不断地进行一个动作
keep+sb./sth. from doing sth.	阻止 / 防止某人 / 某物做某事

速记小筏：
巧记从“o”结尾的名词变为复数，在词尾加 -es 的单词：
英雄爱吃土豆和西红柿。



★That's a real hero!

④ **hero** /ˈhɪərəʊ/ *n.* **英雄；男主角，其复数形式为 heroes。**

e.g. The real hero of the match was our goalkeeper.

比赛中真正的英雄是我们的守门员。

The hero of the play has a lot of fans. 这部剧的男主角有很多粉丝。

考题在线 4 用所给词的适当形式填空。

Yang Liwei is one of the national _____ (hero). We should learn from him. [北部湾经济区]

★I like humorous cartoons.

⑤ **humorous** /ˈhjuːmərəs/ *adj.* **幽默的；滑稽的**

e.g. He was quite humorous, and I liked that about him.

他很幽默，我喜欢他这一点。

This is a film full of humour. 这是一部充满幽默的电影。

考题在线 5 根据汉语提示完成句子。

Miss Gao can always come up with _____（幽默的）ideas to make her class lively. [常州]

- humour 名词，意为“幽默”，常用于搭配 a sense of humour“幽默感”。
- “名词 +ous 后缀”构成的形容词：
  dangerous adj. 有危险的
  mountainous adj. 多山的
  humorous adj. 幽默的

★I can't help laughing when I watch them!

⑥ **can't help doing sth. 的用法**

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

e.g. She said she couldn't help missing her family in a strange country.
她说在一个陌生的国家她禁不住想念家人。
The girl can't help crying at the sad news.
对于这个悲伤的消息这个女孩忍不住哭了。

can't help doing sth. 意为"忍不住做某事"，同义表达为"can't stop doing sth."。

考题在线 6 It was such a funny show that people couldn't help _____ again and again. [福州]
A. laugh B. to laugh C. laughing

重点注意区分 can't help (to) do sth. "不能帮忙做某事"。 敲黑板

⑦ **laugh** /lɑ:f/ *v.* 笑；发笑

e.g. I think a good friend makes me laugh.
我觉得好朋友能逗我开心。


laugh


smile

【易错点】辨析：laugh 与 smile

laugh	指出声地"笑"，当表示"嘲笑某人"时，后面应跟介词 at。
smile	指面部流露出喜悦的表情，指"微笑"，表示"对……微笑"时，后应跟介词 at。

考题在线 7 I look stupid with this haircut. All my classmates will _____ me. [徐州]
A. laugh at B. agree with
C.depend on D.worry about

点拨：考查短语辨析。句意为"这个发型让我看上去是愚蠢的。我所有的同学都会嘲笑我的"。laugh at 嘲笑；agree with 同意；depend on 依靠；worry about 担心。

一语辨异：
First she only smiled, but then she couldn't help laughing.
起初她只是微笑，但后来禁不住大笑起来。

核心素养之积极心态

学会笑对生活

笑，是人愉悦时的情感流露。笑对生活，是乐观的生活态度（*life attitude*），更是高超的生活智慧。正所谓庸人自扰，智者无忧。高尔基说："只有爱笑的人，生活才能过得更美好。"那就让我们忘掉烦恼，丢弃忧伤，胸怀宽广，知足常乐。

考题在线答案 1. A 2. B 3. A 4. heroes 5. humorous 6. C 7. A

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

(答案见267页)

听力技巧

明确建议结构法（在听关于个人观点或建议的对话中，要明确其结构：提出问题—分析问题—提出解决方法，在听的过程中要把握多种建议之间的联系，不能混为一谈。）

听力过程

课文听力2

听教材 Activity 2，选择最佳答案

1.What kind of cartoon does Betty like?
A. *Superman.* B. *Tom and Jerry.*
C. *Mickey Mouse and Donald Duck.*

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

2.Why does Betty like it so much?

A. Because the stories are so moving.

B. Because the stories are so interesting.

C. Because the stories are so exciting.

3.What does Betty think of Superman?

A. Funny and smart.

B. Cute and clever.

C. Brave and handsome.

4.Tony likes watching _____.

A. *Superman* B.*Tom and Jerry*

C. *Snow White*

5._____ thinks Jerry is smart and cute.

A. Betty B. Tony C. Tom

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

☞(答案见267页)

一、根据汉语提示完成单词

1.Tom is a _____(英俊的)young man.

2.We should _____(斗争)bad men.

3.It was _____(机灵的)of you to bring a map.

4.Tony's joke was really funny. It made all of us _____(笑；发笑)

5.Let this accident be a _____(教训)to all of you.

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6.There are many national _____(hero)in China.

7.It's time _____(go)to bed.

8.Keep _____ (try)and you'll succeed.

9.When the girl saw her mother, she couldn't help _____(cry).

10.Don't be serious. It's just a _____(humor) story.

三、单项选择

11.Professor Tu Youyou never stops doing research on Chinese medicine, _____?[上海]

A. is she B. does she

C. isn't she D. doesn't she

12._____ you ever _____ that new film?

—Yes. I _____ it two days ago.

A. Have; seen; saw B. Have ; seen; see

C. Do; see; see D. Had; seen; saw

13.—I left my keys in the room yesterday. I had to get in _____ the window.

—It's dangerous to do that.

A. in B. through

C. over D. to

14.It is _____ nice of you to say that.

A. truly B. true

C. truth D. real

15. It's time for us _____ eye exercises. Let's _____ to do it carefully.

A. do; stop B. to do; to stop

C. to do; stop D. doing; stop

四、根据汉语意思完成句子

16. 让我们向雷锋同志学习。

Let's _____ _____Comrade Lei Feng.

17. 今天上午我和汤姆打架了。

I _____ _____ Tom this morning.

18. 在学校我们互相帮助。

We help _____ _____at school.

19. 我认为那不是一个好主意。

I _____ _____ that _____ a good idea.

20. 让别人等太久是不礼貌的。

It is _____ to keep others _____ for a long time. [自贡]

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 Tintin has been popular for over eighty years.

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文及导读

原文译文 • 导读　　导读批注

Reading and vocabulary 阅读与词汇

Pre-reading（读前）

1. Which cartoon heroes do you know?
2. Why do you like them?

1 Work in pairs. Answer the questions about the cartoon characters. 结对练习。回答关于卡通人物的问题。

·Nemo 尼莫　·Shrek 史瑞克　·the Monkey King 美猴王
·Tintin 丁丁　·Snoopy 史努比

1. Which of them do you know? 你知道他们中的哪一个?
2. Which of them do you like? Why? 你喜欢他们中的哪一个? 为什么?

2 Read the passage and choose a sentence that best summarises it. 阅读短文，选择一个最能概括它的句子。

批 体裁：说明文

课文朗读 2

While-reading（读中）

1. Why is the Monkey King brave?
2. How old is Snoopy now?
3. How many cartoon heroes are mentioned in the passage?

Cartoon heroes 卡通英雄

Nemo/ˈniːməʊ/ is a cute orange-and-white/ˌɒrɪndʒ ənd ˈwaɪt/ fish and Shrek/ʃrek/ is an ugly/ˈʌgli/ green man. They look very different, but both of them have won the hearts of① young people all over the world. The pictures of these popular cartoon heroes are everywhere, on office desks, schoolbags/ˈskuːlbægz/ and computer screens.

尼莫是一条可爱的橙白相间的鱼，史瑞克是一个丑陋的绿颜色的人。他们看起来非常不同，但是他们两个都赢得了全世界年轻人的心。这些受欢迎的卡通英雄的图片随处可见，办公桌上，书包上以及电脑屏幕上。

There are also some older cartoon favourites, for example, the Monkey King. He is the hero of a story called *Havoc*/ˈhævək/ in *Heaven*/ˈhevn/. He leads/liːdz/② a group of monkeys against the Emperor of Heaven and his men. He is brave, clever/ˈklevə/ and humorous. Parents and children laugh together as/æz;əz/③ the

批 标题：由"Cartoon heroes 卡通英雄"可知，本文主要介绍卡通片中的英雄人物，看到题目，本文主旨跃然纸上，吸引读者想一探究竟：这些卡通英雄到底是谁？他们为什么受欢迎？

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

批 课文结构：并列结构

Para 1: Nemo and Shrek

Para 2: the Monkey King

Para 3: Tintin

Para 4: Snoopy

批 词汇赏析：

第一段对 Nemo 的描述"cute, orange-and-white"及 Shrek 的描述"ugly, green"将两个卡通形象描绘得惟妙惟肖，短语 won the hearts of 的妙用强化了这两个卡通英雄在年轻人心中的受欢迎程度。

批 句子赏析：

五部动画片主人公深受人们欢迎的句子：Para 1 第二句和最后一句；Para 2 最后一句；Para 3 倒数第三句和倒数第一句；Para 4 倒数第一句。

Monkey King makes a terrible mess/mes/④ in heaven. They always expect/ɪkˈspekt/⑤ to see more Monkey King cartoons.

也有一些时间上更久远的最受欢迎的卡通英雄，例如美猴王。他是一个叫《大闹天宫》的故事的男主人公。他带领着一群猴子反抗玉皇大帝和天兵天将。他勇敢、聪明又幽默。当美猴王把天宫搞得一团糟时，父母和孩子们一起笑。他们总是期待着看见更多美猴王的卡通片。

Tintin is another favourite cartoon hero. He has been popular for over eighty years, ever since⑥ the artist/ˈɑːtɪst/Hergé/ˈeəʒeɪ/ invented/ɪnˈventɪd/ him in 1929. Tintin has red hair and a small white dog. He works for a newspaper and has lots of exciting experiences. Fans have bought about 200 million copies/ˈkɒpɪz/ of Tintin's stories in more than fifty languages. Tintin appeared in China in the 1980s⑦. Many Chinese still collect these black-and-white/blæk ənd ˈwaɪt/ Tintin books.

丁丁是另一个最受欢迎的卡通英雄。自画家艾尔热在 1929 年创作出他以来，他已经受欢迎八十多年了。丁丁长着红色的头发并且有一只小白狗。他在一家报社工作并且有许多使人兴奋的经历。丁丁迷们已经购买了大约 2 亿册被翻译成五十多种语言的丁丁故事书。丁丁于 20 世纪 80 年代出现在中国。许多中国人仍然收集这些黑白相间的丁丁图书。

Finally, Snoopy/ˈsnuːpi/, a cute dog, celebrated his sixtieth birthday in 2010. Snoopy lives in his own/əʊn/⑧ private/ˈpraɪvət/ world and finds real life hard to understand. Charles/tʃɑːlz/ Schulz /ʃulz/created/krɪˈeɪtɪd/⑨ Snoopy and his friends, and drew the cartoons to satisfy/ˈsætɪsfaɪ/⑩ older people as well as⑪ children.

最后，史努比，一只可爱的狗，在 2010 年庆祝了他的 60 岁生日。史努比生活在他自己的私人世界里，并且发现真正的生活很难理解。查尔斯·舒尔茨创作出史努比和他的朋友们，并且画出这些漫画来令年龄较大的人们和孩子们都满意。

Post-reading（读后）

写作小练笔

☞（答案见123 页）

a) Cartoon heroes are popular all over the world, and some are more than eighty years old.
卡通英雄们在全世界受欢迎，一些卡通英雄超过八十岁了。

b) The most popular cartoons come out as books and not as films.
最受欢迎的卡通片作为图书出版，而非作为电影出现。

c) Many children read cartoons today. 今天许多孩子们读卡通故事。

d) Many foreign cartoons have become very popular in China.
许多外国的卡通片已经在中国变得很受欢迎。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

3 Complete the notes. 完成笔记。

Nemo and Shrek 尼莫和史瑞克

1. Nemo is a _____ orange-and-white fish and Shrek is an _____ green man.
   尼莫是一条_____橙白相间的鱼，史瑞克是一个_____绿颜色的人。
2. Both Nemo and Shrek have won the hearts of _____ people all over the world.
   尼莫和史瑞克都已经赢得了全世界_____人的心。

the Monkey King 美猴王

3. He is the _____ of a story called *Havoc in Heaven*. 他是一个叫《大闹天宫》故事的_____。
4. He leads a group of _____ against the Emperor of Heaven and his men.
   他领导一群_____反抗玉皇大帝和天兵天将。

Tintin 丁丁

5. He has _____ hair and a small _____ dog. 他长着_____头发并且有一只小_____狗。
6. He works for a _____ and has lots of _____ experiences.
   他为一家_____工作并有许多_____经历。

Snoopy 史努比

7. He lives in his own _____ world and finds real life _____ to understand.
   他生活在他自己的_____世界里，并且发现真正的生活_____理解。
8. Charles Schulz drew the cartoons to satisfy _____ people as well as children.
   查尔斯·舒尔茨画这些卡通片以使_____人和孩子们都满意。

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in the box.
用方框中的词的正确形式完成句子。

copy 册	invent 创造	lead 领导	private 私人的
satisfy 使……满意	schoolbag 书包	ugly 丑陋的	

1. Cartoon heroes—even Shrek, the _____ green man—are everywhere, on desks, _____ and computer screens. 卡通英雄们——甚至是史瑞克，那个_____绿颜色的人——随处可见，在课桌上，_____和电脑屏幕上。
2. The Monkey King _____ a group of monkeys against the Emperor of Heaven and his men.
   美猴王_____一群猴子反抗玉皇大帝和天兵天将。
3. Hergé _____ Tintin and his stories have sold about 200 million _____.
   艾尔热_____丁丁，他的故事已经卖了大约 2 亿_____。
4. Snoopy lives in a(n)_____ world. Charles Schulz created Snoopy and his friends to _____ older people as well as children. 史努比生活在一个_____世界里。查尔斯·舒尔茨创作出史努比和他的朋友们让老年人和孩子们_____。

Writing 写作

5 Write down the name of your favourite cartoon. Then answer the questions.
写下你最喜欢的卡通片的名字。然后回答问题。

1. What is it about? 它是关于什么的?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

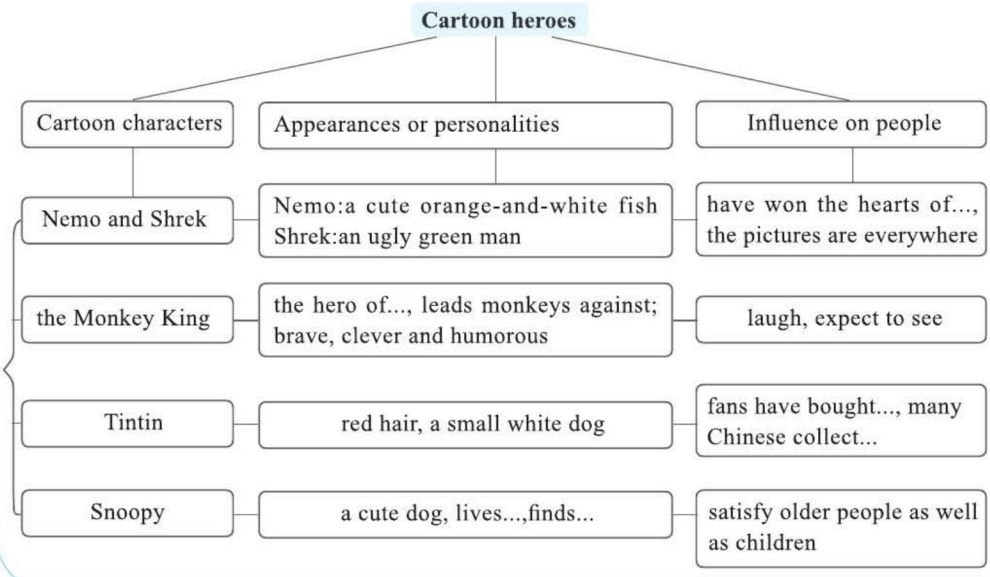
2. Who is in it? 它里面有谁?

3. Why do you like it? 你为什么喜欢它?

Now write a passage using your answers. 现在用你的答案写一篇短文。

My favourite cartoon is... 我最喜欢的卡通片是……

课文背诵指南



Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读60分

(答案见267页)

阅读策略

用构词法猜测词义(在英语阅读中,经常会遇到一些由熟悉的单词派生、转化或合成的新词,可以根据构词法方面的知识来猜测词义。)

阅读过程

一、速读文章,选择正确答案

1. Read the passage quickly and choose a sentence that best summarises it. (主旨大意题)

A. Cartoon heroes are popular all over the world,and some are more than eighty years old.

B. The most popular cartoons come out as books,not as films.

C. Many children read cartoons today.

D. Many foreign cartoons have become very popular in China.

二、细读文章,完成下列各题

拓展阅读

2. _____ have/has won the hearts of young people all over the world. (细节理解题)

A. The Monkey King B. Snoopy

C. Nemo and Shrek D. Nemo's father

3. Tintin works for a _____ and has lots of _____ experiences. (细节理解题)

A. newspaper;exciting

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

B. magazine;interesting
C. bookstore;exciting
D. newspaper;boring

4._____ lives in his own private world and finds real life hard to understand.
（细节理解题）

A. Nemo　　B. Tintin
C. Snoopy　　D. Shrek

5.What's the meaning of the word "satisfy" in the last paragraph?　（词义猜测题）
A. 感到满意的　　B. 满足，使满意
C. 感到有兴趣的　　D. 使……有兴趣

Ⅲ. 考点精讲点拨 稳拿中考基础20分

•考点应用　　•考点批注

★They look very different, but both of them have won the hearts of young people all over the world.

① **win the heart of sb.(=win sb.'s heart) 赢得某人的心**

e.g. She has won the hearts of her fans. 她已经赢得了她的粉丝们的心。
The little boy has won his grandma's heart.
这个小男孩已经赢得了他祖母的喜爱。

考题在线1 翻译句子。
该剧赢得了观众的喜爱。 [潍坊]
_____

★He leads a group of monkeys against the Emperor of Heaven and his men.

② **lead** /li:d/ *v.*(**led,led**)(***to be in control of sth.; to be the leader of sth.***) **领导；率领**

e.g. Mr Clare led his workmates against the cruel boss.
克莱尔先生带领他的同事们反对那个残忍的老板。
My father leads me to help people in trouble.
我的父亲引导我帮助处在困境中的人。
The path goes through the woods and leads to the village.
这条小路穿过树林，通往那个村庄。
She always takes the lead when we plan to do something.
当我们打算做什么事的时候总由她来领头。

- lead sb. against... 带领某人反对……
- lead sb. to do sth. 引导或领导某人做某事
- lead to 通往；导致
- take the lead 领头；领先(地位)(lead 作名词)

考题在线2 根据汉语意思完成句子。
为了让戴维在学习上处于领先地位，他的父母对他要求严格。
David's parents are _____ _____ him to make him _____ _____ _____ in study. [淮安]

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

- as 作连词，意为“当……的时候”，引导时间状语从句。
- as 作连词，意为“因为，由于”，引导原因状语从句。
- as 作介词，意为“如同，像”或者“充当，作为”。

★Parents and children laugh together as the Monkey King makes a terrible mess in heaven.

③ **as 的用法**

e.g. As I was walking down the street, an old man asked me about the way to the station. 当我在街上走时，一位老人问我去车站的路。

I must stop writing now, as I have a lot of work to do.

现在我必须停笔了，因为我有许多工作要做。

As a writer, Mo Yan is famous. 作为一名作家，莫言是很有名的。

考题在线 3 He stayed up very late that night. _____ he woke up in the morning, the sun was already high up in the sky. [无锡]

A. Until B. After C. While D. As

点拨：句意为“他那天晚上熬夜到很晚。当他早上醒来的时候，太阳已经高高挂在天上了”。as 表示“当……的时候”。

- mess
  - 名词，“脏乱；凌乱”
    - make a mess 弄得一团糟
    - in a mess 一团糟（表状态）
  - 动词，“弄乱；弄脏”
    - mess up 把……弄糟

④ **mess** /mes/ *n.* **脏乱；凌乱**

e.g. The kitchen is in a mess. 这厨房太乱了。

This illness makes a mess of my holiday plans.

这场病把我的假期计划给打乱了。

He got another chance and didn't want to mess up again.

他又获得一次机会，他不想把事情再次弄糟了。

考题在线 4 —Could you take out the rubbish and do the dishes,Tony?

—Sure. Mom will be mad if she sees this _____, I think. [黄冈]

A. matter B. mess C. trouble D. difficulty

★They always expect to see more Monkey King cartoons.

- expect + sb. / sth. 期待某人或某物
- expect + to do sth. 期待去做某事
- expect + sb. to do sth. 期望某人做某事
- expect +that 从句 期待……

⑤ **expect** /ɪkˈspekt/ *v.* **期盼；等待**

e.g. You can't expect any help from others. 你不能期待来自别人的任何帮助。

Do you expect to receive more emails? 你期望收到更多的电子邮件吗?

We expect writers to produce more and better works.

我们期望作家们写出更多更好的作品。

Children expect that it will snow in winter. Then they can make a snowman. 孩子们期待冬天会下雪，那么他们就可以堆雪人了。

考题在线 5 —Has Jane done the washing yet?

—You cannot_____ her to do such a thing. [苏州]

A. want B. hope C. expect D. wish

点拨：本题用正确把握语境法。问句意为“简已经洗完衣服了吗？”，由答语的语气可判断句意是“你不能指望她做这样的事情”。expect sb. to do sth.“期望某人干某事”。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★**He has been popular for over eighty years, ever since the artist Hergé invented him in 1929.**

⑥ **ever since 从……起**

e.g. He has been fond of playing football ever since he was a child.

他从小就喜欢踢足球。

He left last year and has been away ever since.

他去年走的，此后就一直不曾回来。

考题在线 6 I met Lucy in the primary school and we have been close friends _____.

A. as usual　　B. again and again

C. sooner or later　　D. ever since

- ever since 引导的时间状语从句一般用一般过去时，主句一般用现在完成时。
- ever since 还可作副词短语，意为“自从……以后”，常用在句尾。

★**Tintin appeared in China in the 1980s.**

⑦ **in the 1980s 在 20 世纪 80 年代**

e.g. He was born in the 1990s. 他生于 20 世纪 90 年代。

The bridge was built in the 1640's. 这座桥建于 17 世纪 40 年代。

考题在线 7 根据所给汉语完成句子。

在 20 世纪 60 年代李叔叔在这家工厂工作。

Uncle Li worked in the factory _____.

表示“在……世纪……年代”用“in+the+年份+s”，也可以用所有格形式，但前面一定要加定冠词 the。

★**Snoopy lives in his own private world and finds real life hard to understand.**

⑧ **own** /əʊn/ *adj.* **自己的**

e.g. My wife decided I should have my own shop. It was her own idea.

我妻子决定让我自己开店。那是她自己的主意。

Who owns the hotel? Do you know the name of the owner?

谁拥有这家宾馆？你知道主人的名字吗？

考题在线 8 Doctor Bethune sometimes had to treat the wounded on _____ own. [潍坊]

A. him　　B. his　　C. them　　D. their

点拨：句意为“白求恩医生有时不得不自己治疗伤员”。短语 on one's own 意为“独自地”，故此处填写 he 的形容词性物主代词 his。

- on one's own 独自，相当于 by oneself
- with one's own eyes 亲眼看见
- one's own 某人自己的

own 用作动词，意为“拥有”。owner 作名词，意为“物主；所有权人”。

★**Charles Schulz created Snoopy and his friends, and drew the cartoons to satisfy older people as well as children.**

⑨ **create** /kriˈeɪt/ *v.* **(*to make sth. happen or exist*) 创造**

e.g. The government plans to create more jobs for young people.

政府计划为年轻人创造更多的就业机会。

Christopher Columbus discovered America in 1492.

克里斯托弗·哥伦布于 1492 年发现了美洲。

Who invented the Internet? 谁发明了互联网？

★辨析 create, discover 与 invent

- create“创造”，强调从无到有，既可指创造具体的东西，也可指创造抽象的东西。
- discover“发现”，指发现早已存在，但不为人所知的东西。
- invent“发明；创造”，指创造出前所未有的事物。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 9 根据句意及汉语提示完成单词。

Shakespeare _____（创造） many famous characters.

⑩ **satisfy** /ˈsætɪsfaɪ/ *v.* **使满意；满足**

satisfy 为动词，后接名词或代词作宾语。satisfy sb. 意为“使某人满意”。

e.g. His homework satisfies the teacher. 他的作业让老师很满意。

考题在线 10 用所给词的适当形式填空。

(1)Your plan will not _____(satisfied) everyone.

(2)She isn't _____(satisfy) with what he said.

【易错点】辨析：satisfied 和 satisfying

satisfied	形容词	满足的	常用来修饰或描述人
satisfying	形容词	令人满足的	常用来修饰或描述事物

一语辨异：

Peter's parents are satisfied to know that he has found a satisfying job.

得知彼得找到了一份令人满意的工作，他的父母感到很满意。

⑪ **as well as 和；不但……而且……**

e.g. His father as well as his mother is watching TV.

他的爸爸和他的妈妈正在看电视。

Jim as well as his friends loves the pet cat.

吉姆和他的朋友们都喜欢这只宠物猫。

Mary can play the piano as well as you, though she is only six.

尽管玛丽只有六岁，但她能弹钢琴弹得和你一样好。

敲黑板 as well as 连接主语时，其谓语动词的人称和数与 as well as 之前的名词或代词保持一致。

考题在线 11 —I'm planning to climb Mount Huang this summer. Would you like to come along?

—Wow! That would be exciting _____ challenging. I'm in![无锡]

A. as well as　　B. as good as

C. as long as　　D. as far as

点拨：句意为“——我计划这个夏天爬黄山。你想要跟我一起去吗？——哇！那不仅令人兴奋，还很有挑战性。我参加！”分析四个选项可知用 as well as 表示“并且，还”符合句意。

★ as well as 还可表示“和……一样好”，其中 well 为副词。

考题在线答案 1. The play won the hearts of the audience. 2. strict with; take the lead 3. D 4. B 5. C 6. D 7. in the 1960s 8. B 9. created 10.(1)satisfy (2)satisfied 11. A

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见267页）

一、根据所给汉语提示完成单词

1.What an awful _____（凌乱）your bedroom is!

2.The famous _____（画家）is going to give us a talk next week.

3.The head chef is trying to _____（创造）a new dish.

4.Do you know who _____（发明）paper and printing?

5.Nothing can _____（使满意）him—he's always complaining.

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6.Miss Wang led us _____ (visit)the zoo yesterday.

7.—Have you read the story _____ (call) *Snow White and the Seven Dwarfs*?

—Certainly. I have read it several times.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

8. Jack as well as his parents _____ (be)good at swimming.

9. Mr. Green is _____(satisfy) with his daughter's progress.

10. Yesterday Mrs.White bought six _____(copy) of the cartoon books for her son.

三、单项选择

11. _____ the bad man was leaving, the police came and caught him.

A. If　　B. So　　C. As　　D. But

12. The little boy has a bedroom _____.

A. on his own　　B. of his own

C. at his own　　D. in his own

13. —Is this your mobile phone?

—Yes. I _____ it for two weeks.

A. bought　　B. had

C. have had　　D. have bought

14. Leonardo DiCaprio,a famous American actor,was always expecting _____ an Oscar and finally he made it. [广东]

A. to win　　B. winning

C. not to win　　D. not winning

15. Mary has some secrets. She wants to have a _____ talk with us.

A. rich　　B. strange

C. private　　D. public

四、根据汉语完成句子

16. 自从毕业以来我们一直是朋友。

We have been friends _____ _____ we left school.

17. 鹿晗已经赢得了许多年轻人的心。

Lu Han has _____ _____ _____ _____ many young people.

18. 孩子们把教室弄得很乱。

The children _____ _____ _____ in the classroom.

19. 努力工作就能通向成功。

Hard work can _____ _____ the success.

20. 这本书出版于二十世纪八十年代。

The book came out _____ _____ _____.

Unit 3 Language in use

I. 课文原文、译文

Language practice 语言练习

He has been popular for over eighty years. 他已经受欢迎八十多年了。
Tintin appeared in China in the 1980s. 丁丁在 20 世纪 80 年代出现在中国。
Snoopy lives in his own private world. 史努比生活在他自己的私人世界里。

1 Complete the conversation with the correct form of the words in brackets.

用括号中词汇的正确形式完成对话。

Daming: Hi, Tony. What are you reading? 喂，托尼。你正在读什么?

Tony: *The Adventures of Tintin*/tɪntɪn/. It's fantastic.(1)_____ you _____(ever read) a Tintin book? 《丁丁历险记》。它太棒了。你 (1)_____(曾经读过) 一本丁丁的书吗?

Daming: No, I (2)_____ (never read)a Tintin story.(3)_____(be)they popular?

不，我 (2)_____(从没有读过) 丁丁的故事。(3) 它们_____(是) 受欢迎的吗?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Tony: Yes, they(4)_____ (be)popular for more than eighty years. The first Tintin story (5)_____ (appear)① in 1929.

是的，它们(4)_____(是)受欢迎八十多年了。第一个丁丁的故事(5)_____(出现)在1929年。

Daming: What does Tintin do? 丁丁是干什么的?

Tony: He (6)_____ (work)for a newspaper and he (7)_____ (have)lots of exciting experiences. 他为一家报社(6)_____(工作)并且他(7)_____(有)许多激动人心的经历。

Daming: And(8)_____ the stories _____ (have)happy endings?

这些故事(8)_____(有)快乐的结局吗?

Tony: Oh, yes, they always do. 哦，对，它们总是这样的。

Daming: Sounds great! Do you mind if I borrow your book?

听起来棒极了！你介意我借你的书吗?

2 Complete the passage with the correct form of the words in brackets.

用括号内词汇的正确形式完成短文。

When I was young, I (1)_____(not like)green vegetables. The only vegetable I (2)_____ (eat)was potatoes. I was quite small and not very strong, so I was not very good at sport. Then when I (3)_____ (watch) television one day I saw the cartoon *Popeye*/ˈpɒpaɪ/. When Popeye stands next to the bad man,Bluto/ˈbluːtəʊ/, he (4)_____(look) small and weak, and when they fight, he always (5)_____ (lose). Then he eats some green vegetables. His arms (6)_____ (grow) thicker. He becomes stronger and he wins his fights. The next day I was going to play football at school, so I asked my mother for some green vegetables. I (7)_____ (score) three times and we won the match! I (8)_____ (love) green vegetables ever since.

当我小的时候，我(1)_____(不喜欢)绿色蔬菜。我(2)_____(吃)的唯一的蔬菜是土豆。我很小，不是很强壮，因此我不擅长体育运动。然后当我有一天(3)_____(看)电视时，我看见了卡通片《大力水手》。当大力水手站在坏人布鲁托身边时，他(4)_____(看起来)既矮小又虚弱，当他们斗争时，他总是(5)_____(输掉)。然后他就吃些绿色蔬菜。他的胳膊(6)_____(变得)更粗。他变得更加强壮，并且他赢得了战斗。第二天我打算在学校踢足球，因此我向我妈妈要了些绿色蔬菜。我(7)_____(得分)三次并且我们赢得了比赛！从那以后，我(8)_____(喜欢)绿色蔬菜。

3 Complete the passage with the words in the box. 用方框中的单词完成短文。

create 创作	laugh 笑	mess 脏乱	own 自己的
private 私人的	satisfy 使满意	ugly 丑陋的	

Many people love cartoons because they are great fun. Parents and children (1)_____ together as the Monkey King makes a terrible (2)_____ or Shrek, the (3)_____ green man, sings a song. Cartoon heroes often live in a(n)(4)_____ world of their (5)_____. Artists (6)_____ good cartoon heroes as well as bad people. The heroes always win, and their stories (7)_____ us and help us feel safe.

许多人喜欢卡通片因为它们很有趣。父母和孩子们一起(1)_____当美猴王制造了严重的

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

(2)_____，或是史瑞克，那个 (3)_____绿颜色的人，唱了一首歌。卡通英雄们经常生活在一个 (4)_____世界里，那个世界是他们 (5)_____。画家们 (6)_____好的卡通英雄和坏人。英雄们总是获胜，他们的故事 (7)_____我们并且帮助我们感到安全。

4 Work in pairs and number the pictures in the correct order.

结对练习，以正确的顺序给这些图片标号。

课文听力 4

Now listen and check. 现在听并检查。

5 Listen again and answer the questions. 再听一遍，回答问题。

1. Why does Betty not think the cartoon is funny at first? 起初为什么贝蒂认为卡通片不滑稽?
2. Why does Tony think the cartoon is really clever? 为什么托尼认为卡通片十分巧妙?

Learning to learn 学会学习

When you are listening, do not stop paying attention when you hear a word you do not know. Keep listening. The word might not be important, or the speaker may say something to explain its meaning.

当你听录音时，听到你不知道的单词时不要停止注意力。坚持听下去。这个单词可能不重要，或者说话人可能会说点什么来解释它的意思。

6 Read the passage and complete the sentences. 阅读短文，完成句子。

课文朗读 6

The first cartoons appeared in newspapers. They told stories using pictures. The first photographed cartoon film(in 1906)was about humorous faces. In the film, an artist drew pictures of two faces on a blackboard. The faces came to life. They smiled and a small dog jumped through a ring.

第一批卡通片出现在报纸上。它们用图片讲故事。第一部拍摄的卡通电影（在 1906 年）是关于幽默的面孔的。在电影里，一位画家在黑板上画了两张面孔的图画。这些面孔开始动起来。它们微笑着，一只小狗跳过一个圈。

There were lots of animals in early cartoons. One famous early cartoon character was Felix /fi:lɪks/ the Cat. 在早期的卡通片里有许多动物。一个有名的早期卡通人物是菲利克斯猫。

Walt/wɔ:lt/ Disney/'dɪznɪ/ started to make films in the 1920s. Some of his earliest films were about a famous story, *Alice in Wonderland*, but in Disney's films it was called *Alice in Cartoon Land*. Walt Disney's most famous cartoon character was Mickey Mouse. He appeared in 1928, first in a black-and-white film without ② sound, then very soon after that in a talking film and later in colour. A Mickey Mouse film was the first cartoon film with sound to become really popular.

沃尔特 · 迪斯尼在 20 世纪 20 年代开始制作电影。他最早期的一些电影是关于一个有名的故事的，《爱丽丝梦游仙境》，但是在迪斯尼电影中它被称为《爱丽丝游历卡通国》。沃尔特 · 迪斯尼最出名的卡通形象是米老鼠。他出现在 1928 年，开始是在无声的黑白电影里，接下来很快就出现在了有声电影里，后来在彩色电影里。米老鼠电影是第一部变得真正流行的有声卡通电影。

Today, over a hundred years later, cartoons are still popular with ③ people of all ages. They will probably be popular for many more years in the future.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

今天，一百多年后，卡通片仍然受到各个年龄段的人们的欢迎。或许它们在将来仍然会流行很多年。

1906

1. The first cartoon film was about _____. 第一部卡通电影是关于_____的。
2. In the film,the faces _____.They _____. 在电影里，这些面孔_____。它们_____。
3. A small dog _____. 一只小狗_____。

1920s

4. Walt Disney started to _____ in the 1920s.
   在 20 世纪 20 年代沃尔特·迪斯尼开始_____。
5. A Mickey Mouse film was the first cartoon film _____ to become really popular.
   米老鼠电影是第一部变得真正流行的_____卡通电影。

Today and in the future

6. Cartoon films are still popular with _____. 卡通电影仍然在_____流行。
7. They will probably be popular for _____ years in the future.
   它们或许在将来会流行_____年。

Around the world 环绕世界

Classic American cartoons: 经典的美国卡通片：

Batman/ˈbætmən/ and *Spiderman* 《蝙蝠侠》和《蜘蛛侠》

Batman and *Spiderman* are two of the most famous American cartoons. *Batman* is older than *Spiderman*. The first *Batman* cartoon appeared in 1939. Batman is one of the few cartoon heroes to appear in books continuously since 1940.

《蝙蝠侠》和《蜘蛛侠》是最有名的两部美国卡通片。《蝙蝠侠》比《蜘蛛侠》要早。第一部《蝙蝠侠》卡通片出现在 1939 年。自从 1940 年以来，蝙蝠侠是连续出现在书中的少数卡通男主人公之一。

Spiderman was created a lot later. He first appeared in 1962. In 1977 he appeared in daily newspapers. The *Spiderman* cartoon has been seen in over 500 different newspapers around the world. People have also made films based on *Batman* and *Spiderman*.

蜘蛛侠被创造得晚很多。他首次出现在 1962 年。在 1977 年他出现在日报中。《蜘蛛侠》卡通片已经在世界上 500 多家不同的报纸上被看到。人们也制作了以《蝙蝠侠》和《蜘蛛侠》为题材的电影。

Module task:Making a cartoon 模块任务：制作一部卡通片

7 **Work in groups. Plan your cartoon.** 小组合作。计划你的卡通片。

- Talk about your favourite cartoons and decide on the kinds of cartoon hero you would like to create. 谈论你最喜欢的卡通片，决定你想要创造的卡通主人公的种类。
- Talk about developing the heroes.What are they like? What do they look like? What do they do? How will they win people's hearts? 谈论如何就主人公进行展开。他们是什么性格？他们看起来是什么样的？他们是干什么的？他们将如何赢得人们的心？
- Decide who will write the story and who will do the drawings. 决定谁将写这个故事，谁将画画。

8 **Make your cartoon.** 制作你的卡通片。

- Plan your story. How many different pictures will you need to tell the story?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

计划你的故事。你将需要多少幅不同的图片讲这个故事?

- Write the story first and decide how it will be presented with the drawings.
  首先写这个故事，决定它将如何用图画的形式被呈现出来。
- Make some drawings. Use a computer, if you like. 画一些画。如果你喜欢，用电脑。
- Put the finished drawings and the story together and present them on large pieces of paper.
  把完成的画和故事放在一起，然后在大张纸上呈现它们。

9 **Show your cartoon to your classmates.** 把你的卡通片展示给你的同班同学们。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用　　•考点批注

★The first Tintin story appeared in 1929.

① **appear** /əˈpɪə(r)/ *v.* 出现

e.g. Three days later, Tom finally appeared at the door.
三天后，汤姆终于出现在门口。

appear：不及物动词，一般不用于被动语态中。反义词：disappear "消失"　名词形式：appearance "出现；外表；容貌"

考题在线 1 Tony said he would be here at four o'clock, but he didn't _____ until half past six.
A. go　　B. appear　　C. move　　D. start

★He appeared in 1928, first in a black-and-white film without sound...

② **without** /wɪˈðaʊt/ *prep.* 没有，无，其反义词为 with。

without 后面接动词时，只接动词的 -ing 形式。（敲黑板）

e.g. He went out without his umbrella. 他外出没有带伞。
They left without saying goodbye. 他们没说再见就走了。

考题在线 2 _____ your help, I can't get good grades. [怀化]
A. With　　B. Without　　C. For
点拨：句意为"没有你的帮助，我不会取得好成绩"。with your help 表示"在你的帮助下"，不符合逻辑，故用 without。

★Today, over a hundred years later, cartoons are still popular with people of all ages.

③ **be popular with** 受……欢迎

be popular with 后接名词或代词作宾语。

e.g. That song was popular with people from my father's generation.
那首歌受我父亲那一代人们的欢迎。

The dictionary is very popular in the scientific field.
这本词典在科学领域是非常受欢迎的。

be popular in 表示在某一领域流行或受欢迎。

考题在线 3 The program *I'm a singer* is quite popular _____ students these days. They often talk about it between classes. [乐山]
A. for　　B. with　　C. in

考题在线答案 1. B　2. B　3. B

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 模块语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

几种时态的区分

考点 一般现在时、一般过去时和现在完成时的区别

考向 1：用法不同

一般现在时	表示主语经常性和习惯性的动作或存在的状态，也表示说话者的能力及自然现象。
一般过去时	表示过去某个时间发生的事，存在的状态或经常发生的动作。说话的侧重点只在于陈述过去的事情，不强调对现在产生的影响。
现在完成时	表示动作已经发生或已经完成的动作对现在造成的影响或结果。

e.g. She always does her homework after school.

她总是在放学后做作业。（强调动作经常发生）

The sun gives out light and heat.

太阳发出光和热。（自然现象）

I went to see him last year.

去年我去看了他。（强调动作发生在过去）

Jill has bought a new building.

吉尔买了一套新房。（强调动作已经发生）

考题在线 1 用括号内所给词的适当形式填空。

(1)You _____ (promise) to take our boy to Disneyland last year. Don't let him down again. [无锡]

(2)—Oh dear! My mobile phone has turned into a brick. It's not working at all.

—Well, it _____ (happen). Take off the battery and put it back on later. [无锡]

(3)The only way to do great work is to love what you do. If you _____ (not find) it yet, keep looking. [无锡]

考向 2：句式结构不同

一般现在时	肯定句：主语 +be(am/is/are)+ 其他 . 否定句：主语 +be(am/is/are)+not+ 其他 . 疑问句：Be(Am/Is/Are)+ 主语 + 其他?
	肯定句：主语 + 动词原形 / 动词第三人称单数形式 + 其他 . 否定句：主语 +don't/doesn't/+ 动词原形 + 其他 . 疑问句：Do/Does+ 主语 + 动词原形 + 其他?
一般过去时	肯定句：主语 +be(was/were)+ 其他 . 否定句：主语 +be(was/were)+not+ 其他 . 疑问句：Be(Was/Were)+ 主语 + 其他?
	肯定句：主语 + 动词的过去式 + 其他 . 否定句：主语 +didn't+ 动词原形 + 其他 . 疑问句：Did+ 主语 + 动词原形 + 其他?
现在完成时	肯定句：主语 +have/has+ 动词的过去分词 + 其他 . 否定句：主语 +haven't/hasn't+ 动词的过去分词 + 其他 . 疑问句：Have/Has+ 主语 + 动词的过去分词 + 其他?

e.g. It takes several weeks to complete everything.

完成这一切需要花费几周时间。（一般现在时）

The little girl held her father's hand tightly.

这个小女孩紧紧握住她父亲的手。（一般过去时）

Have you finished your homework yet ?

你已经完成家庭作业了吗？（现在完成时）

考题在线 2 句型转换。

(1)My brother was late for school this morning.（改为否定句）

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

My brother _____ _____ late for school this morning.

(2)Does he play football every week?(用 since then 改为现在完成时的句子)

_____ he _____ football since then?

考向 3：时间状语的区别

一般现在时	always, usually, often, sometimes, never 等频度副词或 every day, on Sundays, in the morning/afternoon/evening 等时间状语。
一般过去时	yesterday, last week, two years ago, just now, in 2002 等表示过去的时间状语。
现在完成时	just, already, ever, never 等副词或 these days, this week, since..., for... 等表示一段时间的状语。

e.g. I always play chess with my father on the weekend.

周末我总是和父亲一起下国际象棋。

What did you do last Sunday?

上周日你做什么了?

We have been friends since ten years ago.

自 10 年前，我们就是朋友了。

敲黑板 判断句子时态时，除根据句子的时间状语或标志词外，还可以根据上下文的意思来判断。

考题在线 3 Bill likes reading. He _____ picture books with his dad every evening. [北京]

A. read　　B. reads

C. is reading　　D. has read

点拨：根据题干中的时间状语 every evening 判断使用一般现在时，表示经常发生的动作，主语 He 是第三人称单数，故谓语动词应用第三人称单数形式。

考题在线 4 Liu Chuanjian, the command pilot of Sichuan Airlines Flight 3U8633, successfully _____ down the plane last month. [宿迁]

A. has brought　　B. will bring

C. brought　　D. bring

点拨：考查时态。句意为“刘传健，四川航空公司 3U8633 航班的指挥员上个月成功地降落了飞机”。根据时间状语“last month”可知此处应用一般过去时。

考题在线 5 —The town of Huarong _____ a lot in the past five years.

—That's true. It's becoming more and more beautiful.

A. changed　　B. has changed

C. had changed　　D. is changing

点拨：由时间状语 in the past five years 可知本句时态为现在完成时。

考题在线答案 1. (1)promised　(2)happens　(3)haven't found
2. (1)was not　(2)Has; played　3. B　4. C　5. B

Ⅳ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20 分

Ⅱ 写作小练笔

介绍 Nemo 和 Shrek

Nemo is a cute orange-and-white fish and Shrek is an ugly green man. Both Nemo and Shrek have won the hearts of young people all over the world.

The Monkey King is the hero of a story called *Havoc in Heaven*. He leads a group of monkeys against the Emperor of Heaven and his men.

介绍 the Monkey King

介绍 Tintin

Tintin is another favourite cartoon hero. He has red hair and a small white dog. He works for a newspaper and has lots of exciting experiences.

Snoopy is a cute dog. He lives in his own private world and finds real life hard to understand. Charles Schulz drew the cartoons to satisfy older people as well as children.

介绍 Snoopy

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

模块话题

假如你是刘丽，你的美国朋友 Linda 在写给你的信中介绍了美国卡通人物的情况，请你根据以下提示给她回复一封信。

提示：1. 美国的一些卡通人物也为许多中国孩子所熟知，如唐老鸭（Donald Duck）、米老鼠（Mickey Mouse）、汤姆与杰瑞（Tom and Jerry）。

2. 中国也制作了许多动画片。在所有中国的动画人物中，你最喜欢机智勇敢的美猴王（the Monkey King）与哪吒（Nezha），因为不管敌人多么凶猛（ferocious）最终总能被打败。

要求：80 词左右

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

1. 本文是书信，要求介绍一些卡通人物，因此应以一般现在时为主；

2. 按照提示内容，先介绍美国的卡通人物，再介绍中国的动画人物。

3. 在介绍时，可使用最高级句式和原因状语从句。

写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

“两步骤一重点法”写卡通话题类作文

第一步，根据所给提示引出话题；第二步，对引出的话题展开描述；重点：写作过程中，重点介绍中国动画人物。

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）



经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	character, among, brave, clever, beat, ferocious
短语	thank you for...,for example, be well known to, like...best, no matter
句子	① Some of the characters you told me are also familiar to Chinese kids. ② I believe you will fall in love with them if you see them one day.

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

Dear Linda,

Thank you for telling me so much about cartoon characters from America. Some of the characters you told me are also familiar to Chinese kids. For example, Donald Duck, Mickey Mouse, Tom and Jerry are well known to almost every child in China.

China has also produced many cartoon TV plays and movies. Among all the Chinese cartoon characters, I like the Monkey King and Nezha best because they are brave and clever. They can beat all their enemies, no matter how ferocious they are. I believe you will fall in love with them if you see them one day.

Yours,

Liu Li

名师点评：本文用“两步骤一重点法”写作。

第一段：运用 Thank you for doing sth. 句式开篇点题，然后就对方的信件进行了答复和评论，运用 be familiar to 短语引出孩子们比较熟悉的角色；运用 for example 及 be well known to 短语列举出比较有名的外国卡通人物，语言凝练、简洁，行文流畅。

第二段：就提示内容重点介绍了中国的动画人物，要点齐全，叙述合理。恰当运用 no matter how 引导的让步状语从句，体现出作者驾驭语言的能力。



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅴ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础20分

(答案见267页)

一、针对性训练

1.Daming asked his mother _____ some money for the school trip.

A. with　　B. for

C. on　　D. in

2.The Old Town of Lijiang is _____ with tourists for its beautiful buildings

A. popular　　B. famous

C. special　　D. different

3.The "teacher-free exam" means that students take their exams _____ teachers. Students must be honest.

A. without　　B. against

C. through　　D. by

4.—It's too cold today.Would you mind _____ the window?

—Certainly not. Go ahead.

A. to close　　B. closing

C. close　　D. closed

5.With the development of science and technology,robot cooks _____ in our families in the future. [广东]

A. appear　　B. appeared

C. will appear　　D. were appearing

二、语法专练

6.Before the sun _____, we need to get to the top of the mountain. [安徽]

A. set　　B.sets

C. is setting　　D. will set

7. The debate on whether to keep pets _____ forty minutes yesterday afternoon. [上海]

A. lasts　　B. lasted

C. will last　　D. has lasted

8.—Do you still play basketball?

—Oh, no. I _____ it for the past two years.

【导学号：9465610】[武汉]

A. haven't played　　B. didn't play

C. won't play　　D. hadn't played

9. I _____ up late, so I missed the early bus.

A. get　　B. got

C. will get　　D. have got

10. Grandpa _____ glasses when he reads. [河北]

A. wears　　B. wore

C. has worn　　D. was wearing

三、模块知识浓缩

根据所学课文内容完成短文。

There're five cartoon _____[11]. Nemo is an orange-and-white _____[12] and Shrek is an _____[13] green man. Both of them have won the _____[14] of young people all over the world. There's another cartoon hero in *Havoc in Heaven*. His name is the Monkey King. He _____[15] a group of monkeys against the Emperor of Heaven and his _____[16]. He is brave, clever and _____[17]. Tintin is the fourth cartoon hero. The artist Hergé _____[18] him in 1929. He has been popular for _____[19] eighty years. He has red hair and a small white dog. He works for a newspaper and has lots of _____[20] experiences. Tintin appeared in China in the 1980s. The last cartoon hero is Snoopy. He lives in his own _____[21] world and finds _____[22] life hard to understand.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Revision module A

课文原文、译文

Grammar and speaking 语法和会话

1 Work in pairs. Describe the pictures. 结对练习，描述图片。

music, sound 音乐，听起来　　*flower, smell* 花，闻起来

cake, taste 蛋糕，尝起来　　*dress, look* 连衣裙，看起来

2 Make a questionnaire. Write questions with *Have you ever...?*

做一个调查表，用 *Have you ever...?* 写问题。

visit/the US 游览 / 美国

Have you ever visited the US? 你曾经游览过美国吗?

1. be/on TV 是 / 在电视上　　2. meet/a film star 遇见 / 一个电影明星

3. eat/a hamburger 吃 / 一个汉堡包　　4. hear/a bird sing 听到 / 鸟唱歌

5. learn/to cook 学习 / 做饭　　6. ride/a horse 骑 / 马

7. read/an English book 读 / 英语书

8. write/an email to an English friend 写 / 一封给英国朋友的电子邮件

Questions 问题	Student 1 学生 1	Student 2 学生 2	... ……
1. *Have you ever been on TV?* 你曾经上过电视吗?			
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			
6.			
7.			
8.			

Now work in groups. Ask and answer the questions. Complete the questionnaire.

现在分组练习。问答问题。完成调查问卷。

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

用括号中词汇的正确形式完成句子。

She *has never lived* (never live)in Australia. 她从没有住在过（从没居住）澳大利亚。

1. He _____ (never write)a book. 他_____（从没写）一本书。

2. In 2003, he _____ (leave)primary school. 在 2003 年，他_____（离开）小学。

3. We _____ (not meet)before. My name is Mei Ling. 我们以前_____（没有遇见）。我叫梅玲。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

4. _____ (you/see)the latest film? _____（你/看见）最新的电影吗?

5. When _____ (you/go)to school this morning? 今天上午什么时候_____（你/去）上学?

6. While you were playing tennis, Tony _____ (call). 你在打网球时，托尼_____（打电话）。

7. They _____ (arrive) while we were having dinner. 我们正在吃晚饭时，他们_____（到达）了。

8. She was still doing her homework when I _____(go)to bed.
当我_____（去）睡觉时，她仍在做作业。

4 Complete the report with *already*, *just* and *yet*. 用 *already*, *just* 和 *yet* 完成这篇报道。

Yesterday,I went to the cinema to meet my friends John, Tim/tɪm/ and Linda. John was there when I arrived. "I've (1)_____ got a message from Linda," he said. "She's nearly here." A few minutes later, Linda arrived. "Hello," she said. "Has anyone seen Tim (2)_____?""No,"said John. "It's (3)_____ seven o'clock. We'll miss the start of the film!" Then Tim hurried in. "Hi!Sorry I'm late. Have we got the tickets (4)_____?""Yes,"said John. "I've got them (5)_____. Let's go!"

昨天，我去了电影院见了我的朋友约翰、蒂姆和琳达。当我到的时候约翰已经在那儿了。"我(1)_____收到琳达的信息，"他说。"她快到这儿了。"几分钟后，琳达到了。"大家好，"她说。"有谁(2)_____看见蒂姆了吗？""没有，"约翰说。"(3)_____七点钟了。我们要错过电影的开头了！"然后蒂姆匆忙地进来了。"嗨！对不起，我晚了。我们(4)_____拿到票了吗？""是的，"约翰说。"我(5)_____拿到票了。咱们走吧！"

5 Complete the conversation with the correct form of the words in the box. You need to use some of the words more than once.
用方框中词的正确形式完成对话。你需要不止一次地使用其中的一些单词。

be 是	drink 喝	eat 吃	get 得到
go 去	look 看起来		

Doctor: What's the matter with you? You (1)_____ ill. How long have you (2)_____ like this? 你怎么了？你(1)_____病了。你(2)_____像这样多久了?

Jack: Ever since this morning. I (3)_____ a stomach ache. 自从今天早上开始。我(3)_____胃疼。

Doctor: What did you (4)_____ yesterday? 你昨天(4)_____什么了?

Jack: Nothing strange. I (5)_____ to my friend's birthday party. I just (6)_____some cola and (7)_____ a little cheese.
没有什么异常的东西。我(5)_____去我朋友的生日聚会。我只是(6)_____一些可乐还有(7)一点奶酪。

Doctor: Do you often (8)_____ cola? 你经常(8)_____可乐吗?

Jack: Yes, I do. But I don't often (9)_____ cheese. 是，我是。但是我不经常(9)_____奶酪。

Doctor: That's it. You can't have cheese. Never (10)_____ cheese again.
就是它了。你不能吃奶酪。别再(10)_____奶酪了。

Vocabulary 词汇

6 Complete the word map with the words in the boxes. There may be more than one

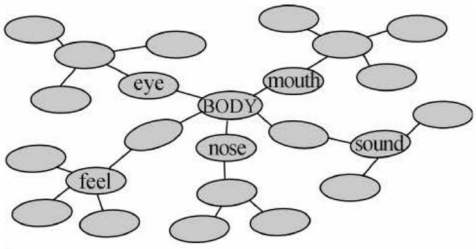
关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

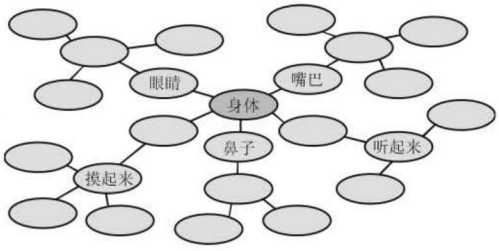
possibility. 用方框中的单词完成单词地图，或许有不止一种可能。

ear 耳朵　eye 眼睛　hand 手
mouth 嘴　nose 鼻子

feel 摸起来　look 看起来　smell 闻起来
sound 听起来　taste 尝起来

cold 冷的　cute 机灵的　delicious 美味的　fresh 新鲜的　lovely 可爱的　noisy 吵闹的　sour 酸的
strong 味重的　sweet 甜的　terrible 糟糕的　ugly 丑陋的　warm 暖和的





7 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in the second box in Activity 6. There may be more than one possibility.

用活动 6 中第二个方框中单词的正确形式完成句子。或许有不止一种可能。

Betty and Lingling are working very hard. They *look* busy.
贝蒂和玲玲正在努力工作，她们看起来很忙。

1. The shoes _____ too small for my feet. 这些鞋子_____对于我的脚来说太小。
2. Daming does not like the pizza on the table. It does not _____ fresh.
   大明不喜欢桌上的比萨饼，它_____不新鲜。
3. The music _____ wonderful! 音乐_____很美妙！
4. You need to wear a coat. It _____ cold outside. 你需要穿一件外套，外面天气 _____冷。
5. Shrek is friendly but he _____ ugly. 史瑞克很友好，但他_____丑陋。
6. Lingling is making chocolate cookies.They _____ delicious.
   玲玲在做巧克力饼干，它们_____美味可口。

8 Complete the passage with the correct form of the words in the box.

用方框中单词的正确形式完成短文。

create 创造　discover 发现　expect 期盼
fight 斗争　laugh 笑

William Hanna/ˈhænə/ and Joseph/ˈdʒəʊzɪf/ Barbera/bɑːˈbeɪrə/ (1)_____ the cartoon series *Tom and Jerry* in the 1940s. The stories are about a cat called Tom and a mouse called Jerry. They (2)_____ all the time and seem to hate each other. Tom tries to lead Jerry to dangerous places or catch him. But Jerry is too clever and he always manages to run away. I (3)_____ this funny show when I was four years old, and I still (4)_____ when I watch *Tom and Jerry* today. Why don't you try it? I (5)_____ you will enjoy it too!

在 20 世纪 40 年代威廉 · 汉纳和约瑟夫 · 巴伯拉 (1)_____动画集《猫和老鼠》。这些故事是关于一只叫汤姆的猫和一只叫杰瑞的老鼠。他们一直 (2)_____并且看起来彼此憎恨。汤姆试图带杰瑞到危

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

险的地方或抓住他，但是杰瑞太聪明了，他总能设法逃掉。我 4 岁的时候就 (3)_____这个有趣的动画片，并且现如今我看《猫和老鼠》的时候，仍然 (4)_____。为什么你不试着看一看呢？我 (5)_____你也会喜欢它！

9 Complete the conversation with the correct form of the expressions in the box.

用方框中短语的正确形式完成对话。

arrive at 到达　at the moment 现在　catch a cold 患感冒 proud of 为……而自豪　take part in 参加

James: Hi, Helen. How are you feeling? You were off school yesterday, weren't you?

喂，海伦。你感觉如何？昨天你没有在学校，对吗？

Helen: Yes, I was. I (1)_____ and had a headache. I felt quite ill when I (2)_____ school and the teacher sent me home. But I'm fine now.

是的，我不在。我 (1)_____并头痛。我感觉很不舒服，当我 (2)_____学校时，老师送我回了家。但是我现在很好。

James: Oh good. So are you still going to (3)_____ the cartoon competition?

哦，好的。那么你仍然会去 (3)_____卡通比赛吗？

Helen: Yes, I'd like to. But (4)_____ I don't think I can do it.

是的，我想去。但 (4)_____我想我不能做这件事。

James: Hey, don't say that! You're great at drawing cartoons. I'll be unhappy if you don't try!

喂，不要那么说！你很擅长画卡通。我会不高兴的如果你不尝试的话！

Helen: No, you won't! 不，你不会的！

James: Yes, I will. You're the best in the class. We'll all be very (5)_____ you if you try.

我会的。在班里你是最好的。如果你尝试我们都将为你而 (5)_____。

Helen: Well...OK. 噢……好吧。

Listening 听力

10 Listen and check(√)the correct answer. 听一听并勾出 (√) 正确答案。

Questions 问题	Daming 大明	Betty 贝蒂
1. Who has a pet? 谁有一只宠物？		
2. Who walks his/her dog? 谁带着他的 / 她的狗散步？		
3. Whose dog has entered a competition? 谁的狗已经进入比赛？		
4. Who can go to Qingdao? 谁能去青岛？		

11 Listen again and answer the questions. 再听一遍，回答问题。

1. Who gave Daming the dog? 谁给了大明那只狗？
2. When did Daming enter his dog for a competition? 大明什么时候带着狗参加了比赛？
3. What was the competition? 比赛是什么？
4. What was the prize? 奖品是什么？

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

12 Listen to the poem and read. 听诗歌，并读一读。

Look up at the sky 仰望天空

Look up at the sky, 仰望天空，
Bright white stars shining so high. 明亮的星星一闪一闪地高高在上。
I see them twinkle one by one, 我看见它们一颗一颗地闪烁，
Turning, turning around. 一圈圈地旋转。
When the dark night falls, 当黑夜降临时，
I stand and watch the soft white moon. 我站着观赏柔柔的皎洁的明月。
Gravity keeps me standing on the ground, 地球引力使我站在地上，
While the earth is spinning around. 而地球在不停地旋转着。

Reading 阅读

13 Read the passage and complete the poster. 阅读短文，完成海报。

Do you want to know more about the stars and planets? Would you like to make a model space station? Or would you like to visit the science museum to discover more about space? You would? Then join our school's new Space Club.

你想更多地了解星星和行星吗？你想制作一个太空站模型吗？或者你想参观科技馆来发现更多太空的知识吗？你想吗？那么就来参加我校的新太空俱乐部吧。

At our first meeting we are going to learn about the moon and the planets. We have learnt something about them in our science lessons, but at the Space Club we are going to find out a lot more. We know that scientists have recently made new discoveries about several of the planets. Mr Lu, our science teacher, has invited a famous scientist to come and talk to us about the latest space news.

在我们第一次会议上，我们将学习关于月亮和行星的知识。在我们的科学课上我们已经了解到关于它们的知识，但在太空俱乐部里我们将要弄清楚更多的知识。我们知道科学家们最近对几个行星有了新的发现。卢老师，我们的科学老师，已经邀请了一位出名的科学家来告诉我们关于最新的太空新闻。

Our first meeting will be in the Science Lab on the first floor of the Science Building. The meeting is on Thursday at 5:00 pm. First, Mr Lu will tell us about the different things that we are going to do at the club, and then at 5:30 pm the talk will begin. There will be time for you to ask questions, so please think about what you would like to ask before you come.

我们的第一次会议将在科技楼一层的科学实验室里举行。会议定在周四下午 5:00。首先，卢老师将告诉我们一些将在俱乐部里做的不同的事情，然后在下午 5:30 演讲将开始。对你来说将有时间来询问问题，因此在你来之前请考虑一下你想要问什么。

Join the Space Club! 加入太空俱乐部吧！

What to do? 干什么？

- To know more about (1)_____. 了解更多关于 (1)_____。
- To make (2)_____. 制作 (2)_____。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

• To visit (3)_____. 参观 (3)_____。

• To discover (4)_____. 发现 (4)_____。

When and where will be the first meeting? 第一次会议将什么时候、在哪里召开?

• The first meeting will be on (5)_____ at (6)_____ in (7)_____.

第一次会议将在 (5)_____(6)_____(7)_____召开。

Who will come? 谁要来?

• (8)_____ will come and talk to us about the latest space news.

(8)_____要来告诉我们最新的太空新闻。

Writing 写作

14 **Work in pairs. Talk about your favourite cartoons using the following questions. Take notes when necessary.** 结对练习。用下面的问题谈论一下你最喜欢的卡通片。有必要的话要做笔记。

1. What is your favourite cartoon? 你最喜欢的卡通片是什么?
2. Who are the main characters? 谁是主要人物?
3. What happens in the cartoon? 卡通片里发生了什么事情?
4. Why do you like it? 你为什么喜欢它?

—*What's your favourite cartoon*? 你最喜欢的卡通片是什么?

—*My favourite cartoon is... It's...* 我最喜欢的卡通片是…… 它是……

Now write a passage about your partner's favourite cartoon. 现在就你搭档最喜欢的卡通片写一篇文章。

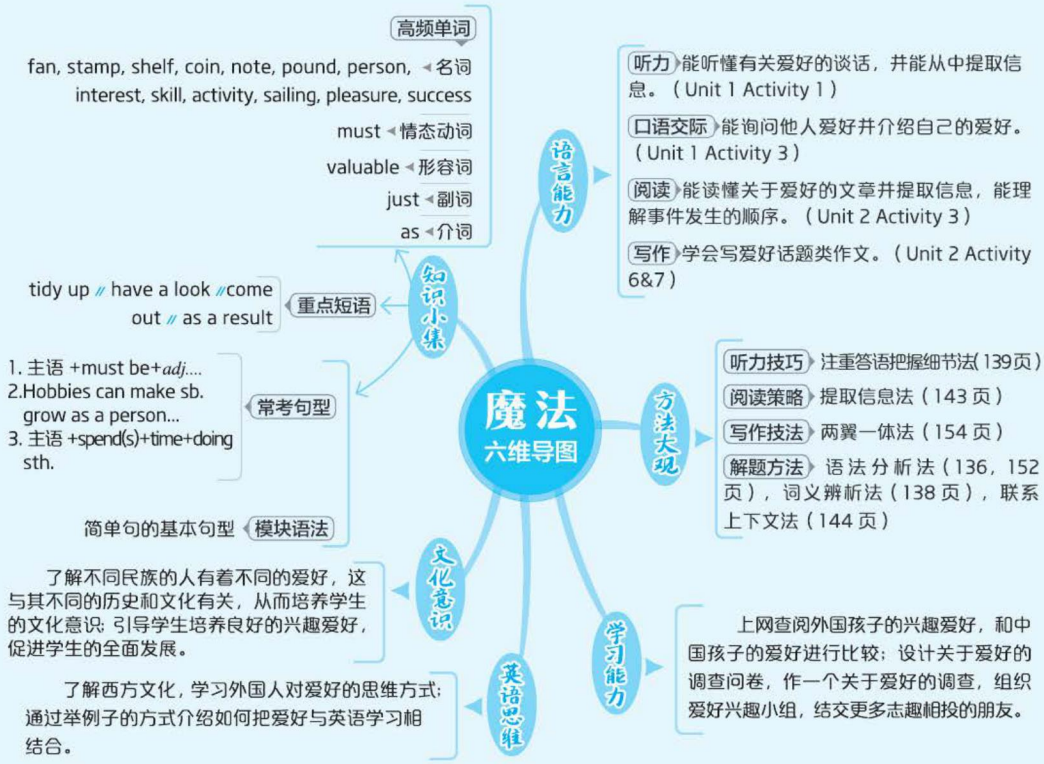


我一定要好好学习，
不然别人会说：看看那个人，
除了帅，一无所有。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Module 6 Hobbies

词汇表听写



记忆大师

Unit 1 Do you collect anything?

必背单词

1.**shelf** *n.* 隔板；架子 →**shelves** *pl.*

2.**dollar** *n.*（美国、加拿大、澳大利亚等国的货币单位）元 →**dollars** *pl.*

3.**valuable** *adj.* 值钱的；有价值的 →**value** *n.* 价值；用途

4.**with** *prep.* 用

5.**fan** *n.* 扇子

6.**stamp** *n.* 邮票

7.**as** *prep.* 作为；当

8.**coin** *n.* 硬币

9.**note** *n.* 纸币

10.**pound** *n.* 英镑

11.**must** *v. aux.* 一定；肯定

12.**just** *adv.* 只是；仅仅

必背短语

13.tidy up 收拾，整理

14.take up 占据，占用（空间或时间）

15.come in 进来

16.collect stamps 集邮

17.something important 重要的东西

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

必背句子

18. Sorry, it's **a bit of** a mess.
抱歉，这有点乱。

19. Let me **have a look**. 让我看看。

20. My hobby doesn't **cost as much as** yours.
我的爱好花费没有你的那么多。

21.Can I **see** them? 我可以看看它们吗?

Unit 2 Hobbies can make you grow as a person.

必背单词

1.person *n.* 人（通常指成年人）→**personal** *adj.* 个人的

2.interest *n.* 兴趣；爱好 →**interested** *adj.* 感到有趣的 →**interesting** *adj.* 令人感兴趣的

3.activity *n.* 活动 →**activities** *pl.*

4.sailing *n.* 航海；航行 →**sail** *v.* 航行

5.pleasure *n.* 愉悦；快乐 →**pleasant** *adj.* 令人愉悦的

6.success *n.* 成功；成就 →**successful** *adj.* 成功的 →**successfully** *adv.* 成功地 →**succeed** *v.* 成功

7.skill *n.* 技能；技艺

8.result *n.* 结果；后果

必背短语

9.play volleyball 打排球

10.encourage sb. to do sth. 鼓励某人做某事

11.come out 出版；发行；问世

12.as a result 结果，因此

13.be interested in 对……感兴趣

14.free time 空闲时间

15.enjoy doing sth. 喜欢做某事

必背句子

16. Hobbies can **make you grow** as a person,**develop** your interests and **help you learn** new skills.
爱好可以促使你成长，培养你的兴趣并帮助你学习新的技能。

17.As well as the usual activities, **such as** sailing and climbing, **there was** a writing class.
除了像帆船运动和爬山这样常见的活动以外，还有一门写作课程。

18. David has been very lucky **because** his hobby **has brought him pleasure and success**.
戴维很幸运，因为他的爱好给他带来了快乐和成功。

19.I spend some of my free time playing volleyball for my school team.
我花了一部分业余时间在校队打排球。

Unit 3 Language in use

必背短语

1.give sth. to sb. 把某物给某人

2.close to 靠近

3.write to sb. 给某人写信

4.all the time 一直，总是

5.run out of 用完；用光

6.get ready for 为……做好准备

必背句子

7.I hope David will have great success **in the future**.
我希望戴维将来取得极大的成功。

8.A British boy **has become one of the youngest** people **to sail** alone across the Atlantic Ocean.
一个英国男孩已成为独自驾船穿越大西洋的最年轻的人之一。

9.I enjoyed sailing alone, but I'm **looking forward to** going back to school now.
我喜欢独自航行，但是我现在渴望回到学校。

必背语法

10. David Smith **is a student**.
戴维·史密斯是一名学生。

11. It **came out** as a book in 2012.
它在 2012 年出版成书。

12. David **wrote** a story about the life of a sixteen-year-old boy. 戴维写了一个关于一名十六岁男孩生活的故事。

13.I'll show you my stamps too.
我也会向你展示我的邮票。

14.There was a writing class. 有写作课。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 1 Do you collect anything?

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

Listening and vocabulary 听力和词汇

1 Listen and find out who collects the things in the pictures. 听并找出图片中的物品是谁收集的。

Tony 托尼　Tony's dad 托尼的爸爸　Tony's mum 托尼的妈妈

课文听力1

2 Answer the questions. Use the words and expression in the box to help you.
回答问题，用方框中的单词和短语来帮你。

collect 收集　fan/fæn/ 扇子　postcard 明信片　stamp/stæmp/ 邮票
ticket 票　tidy up①使整齐　toy 玩具

1. What does Tony's mum want him to do? 托尼的妈妈想让他干什么?
2. Which hobby does Tony think is expensive? 托尼认为哪个爱好是昂贵的?
3. Which hobby do you think takes up the most space? 你认为哪个爱好占用了最大的空间?

Now listen again and check. 现在再听一遍并检查。

3 Listen and read. 听一听，读一读。

课文朗读3

Lingling: Hi, everyone! Come in and find somewhere② to sit down. Sorry, it's a bit of③ a mess. I'll put the fans on the shelf/ʃelf/④.
喂，大家好！进来，找个地方坐下。很抱歉，它有点乱。我会把扇子放在架子上。

Betty: Let me have a look⑤. You've got so many fans. 让我看看。你有这么多扇子。

Lingling: Yes, about sixty. 是的，大约六十把。

Betty: Where did you get them? 你从哪里得到它们的?

Lingling: Most of them are presents. People often give me fans as/æz/ presents because they know I like them. Do you collect anything?
大部分是礼物。人们经常给我扇子当礼物，因为他们知道我喜欢它们。你收集什么东西吗?

Betty: Yes, I collect coins/kɔɪnz/ and notes/nəʊts/, you know, like British pounds/paʊndz/and US dollars/dɒləz/. 是的，我收集硬币和纸币，你知道，像英镑和美元。

Lingling: Coins? They must/mʌst/⑥ be really valuable/væljʊbl/⑦. Can I see them?
硬币？它们一定很值钱。我能看看它们吗?

Betty: Sure! I'll show you my stamps⑧ too. I've collected stamps from all over the world. I've got six or seven books of stamps.
当然了！我也要向你展示我的邮票。我已经收集了来自世界各地的邮票。我有六、七本邮票册了。

Tony: My hobby doesn't cost as much as yours—I collect tickets, bus tickets and train tickets!
我的爱好不像你们的花费那么多钱——我收集车票、公交车票和火车票！

Betty: You can't do anything with/wɪð/⑨ old tickets! 你不能用旧车票干任何事情!

Tony: I know, but when I look at them, I remember some wonderful places.
我知道，但当我看着它们时，我想起了一些奇妙的地方。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lingling: Right! Their value/ˈvælju:/ isn't always important. People also collect things just/dʒʌst/ to remember something important in their lives.

对！它们的价值并不总是重要的。人们也收集东西只是为了记住他们生活中重要的事情。

Everyday English 日常英语

·Sorry, it's a bit of a mess. 抱歉，它有点乱。　·Let me have a look. 让我看一看。

·Can I see them? 我能看看它们吗？　·Right! 对！

Now complete the notes. 现在完成笔记。

Lingling's hobby:_____ 玲玲的爱好：_____

Betty's hobbies:_____ 贝蒂的爱好：_____

Tony's hobby:_____ 托尼的爱好：_____

4 Complete the passage with the correct form of the words in the box.

用方框里单词的正确形式完成短文。

coin 硬币　dollar 美元　pound 英镑　remember 记起

shelf 架子　somewhere 在某处

Many people collect things, like postcards and toys. They like to put them (1)_____ special to look at. Lingling collects fans and keeps them on a (2)_____ in her bedroom. Betty collects (3)_____ and notes, such as British (4)_____ and US (5)_____. She also collects stamps from all over the world. Tony collects tickets, but Betty thinks that you cannot do anything with old tickets.Lingling thinks that people also enjoy collecting things to (6) _____ something important in their lives.

许多人收集物品，像明信片和玩具。他们喜欢把它们放在特殊的 (1)_____来看。玲玲收集扇子，并且把它们放在她卧室的 (2) _____上。贝蒂收集 (3)_____和纸币，如英 (4) _____和美 (5)_____。她也收集来自世界各地的邮票。托尼收集车票，但贝蒂认为你不能用旧车票做任何事情。玲玲认为人们也喜欢收集物品是为了 (6)_____他们生活中重要的事情。

Pronunciation and speaking 发音和会话

5 Listen and notice the intonation. 听一听，注意语调。

1. Let me have a look. 让我看看。　2. Do you collect anything? 你收集什么东西吗？

3. Yes, I collect coins and notes. 对，我收集硬币和纸币。　4. Can I see them? 我能看看它们吗？

Now listen again and repeat. 现在再听一遍并重复。

6 Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about your hobbies. 结对练习，对于你的爱好问答问题。

1. What's your hobby? 你的爱好是什么？
2. Why do you enjoy your hobby? 为什么你喜欢你的爱好？
3. When did you start doing it? 你什么时候开始做这件事的？
4. How often do you ...? 你多长时间……一次？
5. Where do you ...? 你在哪里……？

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

·考点批注 ·考点应用

★tidy up

① tidy up 使整齐；使整洁

tidy up 是“动词＋副词”型短语，人称代词作其宾语时，要放在 tidy 和 up 中间。 敲黑板

e.g. I'll tidy up the dinner table. 我要收拾一下饭桌。

The room is in a mess. Tidy it up before the guests arrive.

这个房间杂乱不堪。客人来之前把它整理干净。

考题在线 1 The bathroom is in a mess. Please _____.

A. tidy it up　　B. tidy up it

C. tidy them up　　D. tidy up them

tidy adj. 整洁的；整齐的

（反义词）

untidy adj. 不整洁的；凌乱的

核心素养之良好习惯

养成讲卫生的好习惯

好的习惯会影响人的一生，同学们要从小养成爱整洁讲卫生的习惯。一个整洁干净的人给人以干练、有修养、办事有条不紊的感觉。

我们应从小事做起，将教室、卧室内物品摆放整齐；保持衣服整洁，不随地吐（*spit*）痰；保持环境卫生，不随手扔垃圾（*rubbish*）；不在墙壁上、桌上、门窗上乱写乱画等。

养成爱整洁讲卫生的习惯，提升综合素养。

★Come in and find somewhere to sit down.

② somewhere /ˈsʌmweə(r)/ *adv.* & *pron.* **某个地方**

- somewhere 用于肯定句，也用于表请求的疑问句中，在否定句或疑问句中用 anywhere。
- 形容词修饰 somewhere 时要后置。
- 动词不定式（短语）修饰像 somewhere 这样的不定代词时需后置。

e.g. Would you like to go somewhere on vacation? 你想去某个地方度假吗？

He couldn't find his keys anywhere. 他在哪里都找不到他的钥匙。

I'd like to go somewhere interesting during the summer vacation.

暑假期间我想去有趣的地方。

We need to find somewhere to live. 我们需要找个住处。

考题在线 2 —Did you go _____ last summer holiday?

—Yes. I went to Shanghai Disneyland. [贵港改编]

A. somewhere special　　B. anywhere special

C. special somewhere　　D. special anywhere

点拨：用语法分析法解题。形容词 special 置于 somewhere 或 anywhere 之后，在一般疑问句中用 anywhere。

★Sorry, it's a bit of a mess.

③ a bit of 有点儿

a bit of 和 a little 可以直接修饰不可数名词，而 a bit 只能修饰动词、形容词或副词。

e.g. Tom knows a bit of/a little French. 汤姆懂一点法语。

She's a bit/little afraid of the teacher. 她有点怕老师。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 3 —What a hot day! I'm _____ thirsty.

—Would you like _____ water?

A. a bit; a bit of　　B. a bit of; a bit

C. a bit; a bit　　D. a bit of; a bit of

点拨:a bit 可以修饰形容词或副词；a bit of 修饰不可数名词。

速记 小筱：
巧记从 -f, -fe 结尾的名词变复数
树叶（leaf）半（half）数自己（self）黄，
妻子（wife）拿刀（knife）去割粮，
架（shelf）后蹿出一只狼（wolf），
就像小偷（thief）逃命（life）忙。

★I'll put the fans on the shelf.

④ **shelf** /ʃelf/ *n.* 隔板；架子 → 复数形式为 shelves

e.g. There are many shelves in the room. 在房间里有许多架子。

考题在线 4 根据句意和所给汉语，完成句子。

In the USA, people eat with _____(刀) and forks. [青岛]

★Let me have a look.

⑤ **have a look** 看一看

e.g. Let us have a look at your new watch. 让我们看看你的新手表吧。

考题在线 5 完成句子。

让我看看你的全家福。

Let me _____ your family photo.

★ have a look 相当于 take a look，后面跟宾语时常加介词 at，即“have/take a look at sth.”。

★They must be really valuable.

⑥ **must** /mʌst/ *v.aux.* 一定，肯定

【难点】辨析：must, may 和 can't

must	一定，必定	表示有把握的肯定推测，用在肯定句中。	The lady looks young. She must be under thirty. 这位女士看上去很年轻，她肯定不到 30 岁。
may	可能	表示可能性较小的推测。	He may be on his way to school. 他可能在去上学的路上。
can't	不可能	表示一种有把握的否定推测。	It can't belong to Mary. Hers is totally different from this one. 它一定不属于玛丽。她的和这个完全不同。



考题在线 6 —I went to Mount Wudang with my five friends in one small car last weekend.

—Oh, my God! I think it _____ be an uncomfortable trip.[十堰]

A. must　　B. can't　　C. may　　D. shouldn't

点拨：考查情态动词的用法。句意为“——上周末我和五位朋友开一辆小的小汽车去了武当山。——哦，我的天哪，我认为那一定是一次不舒适的旅行”。must 一定；can't 不可能；may 可能；shouldn't 不应该。根据句意表示肯定的猜测用 must。

⑦ **valuable** /ˈvæljʊbl/ *adj.*(***worth a lot of money***) 值钱的；有价值的

e.g. This old table is a valuable piece of furniture.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

这张旧桌子是一件很值钱的家具。

No one knows the value of health until he loses it.
直到失去了健康，人们方知健康的重要性。

I really value him as a friend. 我真的把他视为朋友。

The photo is of great value to Helen.
=The photo is very valuable to Helen.
这张照片对海伦来说很有价值。

敲黑板
be of value=be valuable，value 前可有 great，little，no 修饰。

valuable
adj. 值钱的；有价值的
↓
value
n. 价值；用途 v. 重视

考题在线 7 Your advice is very _____ to me. I'm sure our activity will be more meaningful. [抚顺]

A. terrible B. comfortable
C. impossible D. valuable

点拨：用词义辨析法解题。terrible 可怕的；comfortable 舒服的；impossible 不可能的；valuable 有价值的。由第二句"我确信我们的活动将更有意义。"可知，这个建议非常有价值。

be of value to sb.
对某人有价值

考题在线 8 用所给词的适当形式填空。

They've been friends for many years and they both _____ (value) their friendship very much.

★I'll show you my stamps too.

⑧ **show sb. sth.=show sth. to sb. 向某人展示某物**

e.g. Can you show me your new watch? 你能向我展示一下你的新手表吗？

Please show that letter to me. 请把那封信给我看看。

考题在线 9 同义句转换。

She showed us her new sweater last week.

She showed her new sweater _____ _____ last week.



with a pen
用钢笔



in ink
用墨水

★You can't do anything with old tickets!

⑨ **with** /wɪð/ *prep.* **用；有；具有**

辨析：with 与 in

with	常指用某种工具或身体部位。
in	常指用某种材料或语言。

e.g. Lily writes with a pen. 莉莉用钢笔写字。

She wrote a letter in black ink. 她用黑色的墨水写信。

考题在线 10 —I'm thirsty. I'd like a glass of orange juice. What about you, Dad?

—I prefer a cup of coffee _____ nothing in it. [连云港]

A. with B. without C. for D. to

考题在线答案 1. A 2. B 3. A 4. knives 5. have a look at 6. A 7. D 8. value 9. to us 10. A

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

☞(答案见268页)

听力技巧

注重答语把握细节法(听力对话的设题往往是根据答话人所说的内容而提问的。有些题目涉及行为发生的时间、地点、价格或干什么等。解答这类问题时,要听清对话的细节、内容和问题。)

听力过程

听教材 Activity 1,完成下列表格

课文听力1

Person	Collection
Tony	toy ___1___ and tickets
Tony's dad	___2___ and toy cars
___3___	___4___ and Chinese fans

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

☞(答案见268页)

一、根据汉语提示或首字母提示完成单词

1. It's _____(只是;仅仅)half past five. You can't leave now.
2. The painting is very _____(值钱的).
3. Please put the books on these _____(架子).
4. I want to buy some s_____for the letters.
5. I paid one p_____ for the flower on the underground.

二、选词并用其适当形式填空

so many, tidy up, collect, as...as, take up

6. These books _____ the most space of my bedroom.
7. There are _____ cars in the street and it's crowded.
8. My mother is _____ busy _____ my father at the weekend.
9. Linda, can you help me _____ the room?
10. She has a large _____ of tickets and stamps.

三、单项选择

11. She wrote a letter to her parents _____ the new pen.
A. on B. with C. for D. use

12. You've had a new watch. Could you show _____, please?
A. us it B. it to us
C. us to it D. it us

13. Could you please give me _____ paper?
A. a few B. a bit
C. a bit of D. few

14. —Finally,they came back.
—They _____ be hungry after such a long walk. [长沙]
A. can't B. must C. needn't

15. There is _____ with my computer. It doesn't work well.
A. something wrong B. wrong nothing
C. nothing wrong D. wrong something

四、根据汉语完成句子

16. 你一定是个作家,对吗?
You _____ _____ a writer, aren't you?

17. 大部分的工作已经做完了。
_____ _____ the work has been done.

18. 她听到有人在叫她,所以她停下来看了看。
She heard someone calling her,so she stopped to _____ _____ _____.

19. 当你离开时,请关灯节能。 [泰安改编]
When you leave, please turn off the lights _____ _____ _____.

20. 好书对学生非常有价值。
Good books are _____ _____ _____ _____ students.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 Hobbies can make you grow as a person.

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文及导读

导读批注

原文译文·导读

Reading and vocabulary 阅读和词汇

Pre-reading（读前）

1. What are your hobbies?
2. Which one is your favourite hobby?
3. What can you get from your hobbies?

1 Work in pairs. Talk about your hobbies. Use the words and expressions in the box to help you. 结对练习。谈论你们的爱好。用方框中的单词和短语来帮助你们。

climbing 爬山　dancing 跳舞　growing vegetables 种植蔬菜
looking after animals 照看动物　painting 绘画
playing volleyball 打排球　singing 唱歌　writing 写作

批 标题：

由"David's hobbies 戴维的爱好"可知，爱好是本文的主旨。

2 Work in pairs. Choose the words from the box to describe your hobbies. 结对练习。从方框中选择单词来描述你的爱好。

active 活跃的　dangerous 危险的　healthy 健康的
interesting 有趣的　relaxing 令人放松的

3 Read the passage and answer the questions. 阅读短文并回答问题。

While-reading（读中）

1. What advantages can hobbies bring to young people?
2. Who encouraged David to write about the experiences at the camp?
3. Is writing one of David's hobbies?

课文朗读3

David's hobbies 戴维的爱好

批 段落主题句：

第一段介绍了学生有爱好以及爱好的益处，最后一句为本段主题句，是对爱好益处的总结：grow as a person, develop your interests, learn new skills。

Many students have hobbies, such as reading, painting, growing vegetables and looking after animals. Some hobbies are relaxing and others① are active. Hobbies can make you grow as a person/pɜːsn/, develop your interests/ɪntrəsts/② and help you learn new skills/skɪlz/.

许多学生有爱好，例如：阅读、绘画、种植蔬菜和照看动物。一些爱好是令人放松的，其他的是活跃的。爱好能促使你成长，培养你的兴趣并帮助你学习新的技能。

David Smith is a student, and one of his hobbies is writing.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

During the summer of 2010, he spent four weeks at a summer camp. As well as the usual activities/ækˈtɪvətɪz/, such as sailing/ˈseɪlɪŋ/ and climbing, there was a writing class. "The teacher was a writer, and she asked us to talk about our lives and tell interesting stories. Then she encouraged[3] us to write about our experiences at the camp."

戴维·史密斯是一个学生，而他的一个爱好是写作。在2010年夏季期间，他在一个夏令营度过了四周。除了常见的活动，如帆船运动和爬山，还有写作课。"老师是一位作家，她让我们谈论我们的生活，并讲有趣的故事。然后她鼓励我们写我们在营地的经历。"

Back at school, David wrote a story about the life of a sixteen-year-old boy, and it came out as a book in 2012. Many young people love his book, and as a result/rɪˈzʌlt/[4], David has become a successful young writer.

回到学校，戴维写了一个关于一名十六岁男孩生活的故事，并且它在2012年作为一本书出版了。许多年轻人喜欢他的书，结果，戴维已经成为一个成功的年轻作家。

David has been very lucky because his hobby has brought him pleasure/ˈpleʒə/[5] and success/səkˈses/[6]. But writing is not his only hobby. He is also interested in many other things. "I like playing volleyball too," says David. "I spend some of my free time playing volleyball for my school team. Maybe I'll write about my volleyball team in my future books."

戴维很幸运，因为他的爱好已经带给他快乐和成功，但是写作不是他唯一的爱好。他也对许多其他的事情感兴趣。"我也喜欢打排球，"戴维说。"我花费了我的一些业余时间在校队打排球。或许在我将来的书中我会写写我的排球队。"

批 说明方法：举例子

由第一段中"such as reading, painting, growing vegetables and looking after animals"及第二段中"such as sailing and climbing"可知对hobbies的介绍频繁使用了举例子的说明方法。

批 段落之间的逻辑关系：

从概括(Paragraph 1)到具体(Paragraphs 2-4)

批 句子赏析：

第四段运用了直接引语"I like playing...""I spend...playing...Maybe I'll write..."使语言更加生动，体现出作者爱好之广泛并表达了把爱好写进作品的美好愿望。

Post-reading（读后）

写作小练笔

☞（答案见153页）

1. What advantages can hobbies bring to young people? 爱好会给年轻人带来什么好处?
2. What hobbies does David have? 戴维有什么爱好?
3. When did David become a successful writer? 戴维什么时候成为一名成功的作家?
4. Will David's new books be successful? 戴维的新书将会是成功的吗?

Learning to learn 学会学习

Find a hobby to help you improve your English. If you like football, follow an English team.If your hobby is watching films, try to watch English films.

找到一种爱好来帮助你提高你的英语。如果你喜欢足球，跟着一个英国足球队吧。如果你的爱好是看电影，尽力看英语电影。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in the box.

用方框中单词的正确形式完成句子。

activity 活动	pleasure 快乐	result 结果
skill 技能	success 成功	

1. What _____ do you enjoy doing? 你喜欢做什么_____?
2. What new _____ have you learnt through your hobbies?
   通过你的爱好你已经学到了什么新_____?
3. Has any of your hobbies brought you _____ and _____?
   你的任何一个爱好已经带给你_____和_____吗?
4. Have you made new friends as a(n) _____ of your hobby?
   作为你的爱好的一个_____你已经结交了新朋友吗?

5 Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions in Activity 4. 结对练习。问答活动 4 中的问题。

Writing 写作

6 Look at the following sentences. 看下列句子。

As well as the usual activities ... 除了一些常见的活动……

... such as sailing and climbing ... ……如帆船运动和爬山……

... as a result, David has become a successful young writer.

……结果，戴维已经成为一名成功的年轻作家。

Now rewrite the following sentences using *as well as*, *such as* or *as a result*.

现在用 *as well as*, *such as* 或 *as a result* 重写下列句子。

1. Some hobbies, for example, reading and painting, are very relaxing.
   一些爱好，例如，阅读和绘画，是非常令人放松的。
2. David likes writing. He also likes playing volleyball.
   戴维喜欢写作，他也喜欢打排球。
3. Many young people love David's book, and so his hobby has brought him success.
   许多年轻人喜欢戴维的书，因此他的爱好已经带给他成功。

7 Work in pairs. Find out about your partner's hobby and make notes.

结对练习。找出关于你的同伴的爱好并记笔记。

Now write a short passage called *My classmate's hobby*. Use *as well as*, *such as* or *as a result*. Use the following example to help you.

现在写一篇叫《我的同班同学的爱好》的短文，用上 *as well as*, *such as* 或 *as a result*。用下列例子来帮助你。

Li Kai is my classmate. His hobby is music. He enjoys playing music as well as listening to it. His favourite music bands are ..., such as ... As a result, his band is now ...

李凯是我的同班同学。他的爱好是音乐。他喜欢演奏音乐和听音乐。他最喜欢的乐队是……，例如……结果，他的乐队现在……

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

核心素养之良好习惯

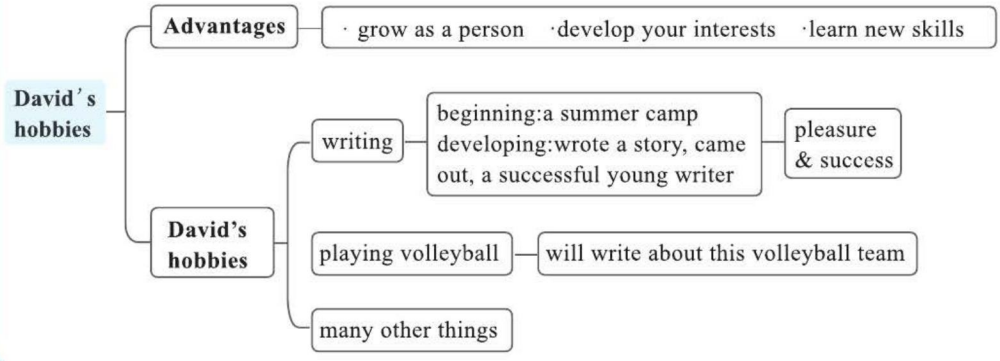
培养多读书、读好书的爱好

现在，电脑和手机（*mobile phones*）已经占据了人们大部分的空闲时间。人们甚至没有时间读书。更重要的是，学生花在读书上的时间越来越少，尤其是好书。事实上，好书比手机好多了。

它们不仅可以给我们带来知识（*knowledge*）和快乐（*happiness*），还可以帮助提高我们的阅读和写作技能（*reading and writing skills*）。最重要的是，在我们成长的过程中，它们可以引导我们走好未来之路。

俗话说："书籍是人类进步的阶梯（*Books are the stepping stones to human progress.*）。"所以，应该多读书、读好书，而不是在网上（*online*）玩游戏。读书越多，学到的东西就越多，眼界就越开阔，未来就会越光明。

课文背诵指南



Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读60分

☞（答案见268页）

阅读策略

提取信息法（阅读文章时，先看给出的问题，再带着问题在文章中找答案。回答完一个问题，再带着下一个问题找答案。这样既能提高答题效率，又能提高答题的正确率。）

阅读过程

一、速读文章，回答下列问题

1. ⊙ What hobbies does David have?

（归纳概括题）

_____

二、细读文章，完成下列题目

2.What does David Smith do?

A. He is a teacher.

B. He is a student.

C. He is a worker.

D. He is a scientist.

拓展阅读

3.David became a successful writer _____.

A. in 2010　　B. in 2011

C. in 2012　　D. in 2013

4.Will David's new books be successful?

A. Yes,they will.　　B. No,they won't.

C. Yes,they are.　　D. No,they aren't.

5.David will write about _____ in his future books.

A. writing　　B. dancing

C. his volleyball team　　D. singing

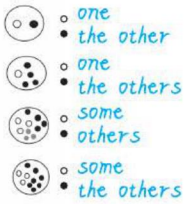
关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

·考点批注 ·考点应用

★Some hobbies are relaxing and others are active.

① some...others... 的用法

- some...others... 意为“一些……，另一些……”，others 表示除去一部分外的另一些，但并不是剩下的全部。
- some...the others... 意为“一些……，其余的……（剩下的全部）”。



e.g. There are a lot of people in the park. Some are walking, and others are looking at the flowers. 公园里有许多人。一些在散步，另一些在赏花。

The students are doing some cleaning. Some are sweeping the floor, and the others are cleaning the windows.

学生们正在大扫除。一些在扫地，其余的都在擦窗户。

考题在线 1 Catherine has two cousins. One is quiet, and _____ is noisy. [上海]

A. another B. the other C. other D. others

点拨：考查代词的用法。句意为“凯瑟琳有两个表兄弟。一个是安静的，另一个是吵闹的”。根据前面的 two cousins 和 One 可知此处用 the other（另一个）。

★Hobbies can make you grow as a person, develop your interests and help you learn new skills.

② interest /ˈɪntrəst/ *n.* 兴趣；爱好

- show/have/take (an) interest in sth. 对某事物表现出/有/感兴趣
- have no interest in... 对……不感兴趣
- with interest 感兴趣地

e.g. He shows great interest in music. 他对音乐表现出极大的兴趣。

As he grew older, his interest in radio grew. 随着他逐渐长大，他对无线电广播的兴趣也在增长。（interest 作及物动词，意为“使感兴趣”，主语通常是物。）

The book interests most of us. 这本书使我们大多数人都很感兴趣。

考题在线 2 —Hi, Li Mei. How is your new school?

—Fantastic. We can choose the courses according to our _____. I love operas, so I took the Beijing Opera class. [东营]

A. grades B. talents C.interests D.experiences

点拨：用联系上下文法解题。由“我喜欢戏剧，所以我选择了京剧课。”可知，“我们”可以根据“兴趣爱好”选择课程。

★Then she encouraged us to write about our experiences at the camp.

③ encourage /ɪnˈkʌrɪdʒ/ *v.* 鼓励

- encourage sb. to do sth. 鼓励某人做某事
- encourage sb. in sth. 在某方面鼓励某人

encourage v. 鼓励
- encouragement n. 鼓励；激励
- discourage v. 使泄气

e.g. We should think of other ways to encourage people to protect animals. 我们应该想其他的办法来鼓励人们保护动物。

My parents always encourage me in my study.

我父母总是在学业方面鼓励我。

考题在线 3 Miss Chen, my dear English teacher, often encourages me

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

_____ the challenges in my study. [盐城]

A. face B. faces C. facing D. to face

★**Many young people love his book, and as a result, David has become a successful young writer.**

④ **as a result** 结果；因此

e.g. He made a big mistake. As a result, he lost his job.

他犯了一个大错。结果丢了工作。

Bill was late as a result of the heavy traffic. 由于交通拥挤，比尔迟到了。

考题在线 4 He was late _____ the heavy snow.

A. result B. as a result

C. as a result of D. result from

- as a result 副词短语，意为"结果；因此"。
- as a result of 介词短语，意为"因为；由于"，后常跟表示原因的名词、代词等，相当于because of。

★**David has been very lucky because his hobby has brought him pleasure and success.**

⑤ **pleasure** /'pleʒə/ *n.* 愉悦；快乐

e.g. The little boy enjoys watching cartoons for pleasure.

这个小男孩喜欢看卡通片作为消遣。

—Could you look after my pet dog while I'm away?

我不在的时候，你能照看一下我的宠物狗吗？

—Yes, with pleasure. 是的，很愿意。

—Thank you for helping me. 谢谢你帮助我。

—It's my pleasure. 不客气。

考题在线 5 —Thanks a million for your help.

—_____. [衡阳]

A. Never mind B. My pleasure C. Good idea

- with pleasure 意为"很愿意"，指客气地接受或同意。
- my pleasure 意为"不客气；很乐意效劳"，用来回答别人的感谢。

辨析： pleasure,pleasant,pleased

pleasure	名词，笼统地指与痛苦相对的"愉快；快乐"时，是不可数名词；具体地指"愉快的事"时，是可数名词。
pleasant	形容词，意为"令人愉快的"，多用于修饰天气、旅行、谈话等，侧重指事物给人的感受。
pleased	形容词，意为"开心的；满意的"，主要用来说明人的情绪、心情等，常与 with 连用。

⑥ **success** /sək'ses/ *n.* 成功；成就，为不可数名词。

e.g. I tried to call him, but without success. 我试图联系他，但没有成功。

The film *Zootopia* was a great success. 电影《疯狂动物城》大获成功。

—Has Ben succeeded in the speech contest? 本在演讲比赛中成功了吗？

—Yes, his successful speech helped him beat the other speakers successfully in the end.

是的，他成功的演讲帮他最终成功地打败了其余演讲者。

success 作可数名词，意为"成功的人；成功的事"。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

success n. 成功；成就
↓
succeed v. 成功
↓
successful adj. 成功的
↓
successfully adv. 成功地

考题在线 6 用所给词的适当形式填空。

The road to _____ (succeed)is to work honestly. [兰州]

考题在线 7 You need not only talent but also hard work to become a _____ football player. [盐城]

A. young　　B. successful

C. happy　　D. friendly

考题在线答案 1. B　2. C　3. D　4. C　5. B　6. success　7. B

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见268页)

一、根据所给汉语或首字母提示完成单词

1.—Can I borrow your bike?
—With p_____.

2. I want to know how to improve my listening _____(技能).

3.It's hard to get on with a bad-tempered _____(人).

4.Do you often go _____(航行) with your father?

5. My sister shows an _____(兴趣) in painting.

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6.The writer is interested in _____ (write) stories.

7. Some people are singing and _____(other) are dancing.

8.—Would you like to camp with us next week?
—Sorry. There are a lot of _____ (activity) in our football club.

9.How long does she spend _____ (play) baseball after school every day?

10.Finally the firemen saved the little girl under the damaged building _____(success).

三、单项选择

11.—Who _____ your pet dogs while you were out for a holiday?
—My neighbor,a warm-hearted woman.

A. put on　　B. looked after

C. gave up　　D. turned off

12. The cartoon was very funny and it made the children _____ very loudly.

A. to laugh　　B. laughing

C. laughed　　D. laugh

13. The students are very _____ in the _____ cartoon story.【导学号：9465610】

A. interesting; interesting

B. interested; interested

C. interesting; interested

D. interested; interesting

14.—When will his new novel _____?
—Maybe next month.

A. come out　　B. come over

C. come in　　D. come up

15.—Thank you for helping us so much.
—_____. Many hands make light work.

A. My pleasure　　B. All right

C. Never mind　　D. That's right

四、根据汉语完成句子

16. 在学校有许多种球类运动，如篮球、足球、排球等。
At school there're many kinds of ball games, _____ _____ basketball, football, volleyball and so on.

17. 杰克学习不刻苦，结果，他考试未通过。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Jack didn't study hard, and _____ _____ _____, he failed the exam.

18. 老师经常鼓励我赶上其余的学生。

My teacher often _____ me _____ _____ up with the other students.

19. 这位老板经常让工人们每天工作 10 个小时。

The boss often _____ the workers _____ for ten hours every day.

20. 写作已经给莫言带来了巨大的成功。

Writing has brought Mo Yan _____ _____.

Unit 3 Language in use

I. 课文原文、译文

Language practice 语言练习

David Smith is a student. 戴维·史密斯是一名学生。
It came out as a book in 2012. 它在 2012 年出版成书。
David wrote a story about the life of a sixteen-year-old boy.
戴维写了一个关于一名十六岁男孩生活的故事。
Hobbies can make you grow as a person. 爱好能促使你成长。
I'll show you my stamps too. 我也会向你展示我的邮票。
There was a writing class. 有写作课。

1 Read the sentences and pay attention to their structures.Write new sentences.

阅读句子，并注意它们的结构，写新句子。

1. In my spare time, I read. 在我的业余时间，我阅读。
   In my spare time, I _____*write*_____. 在我的业余时间，我_____写作_____。
2. My hobby is reading. My hobby _____. 我的爱好是阅读。我的爱好_____。
3. My mother likes reading too. _____. 我的妈妈也喜欢阅读。_____。
4. My mother bought us a lot of books. _____. 我的妈妈给我们买了许多书。_____。
5. Reading can make you clever. _____. 阅读能使你聪明。_____。
6. There are many interesting facts in books. _____. 在书里有许多有趣的事实。_____。

2 Work in pairs. Look at the picture. Ask and answer the questions about the activities in it.

结对练习。看看图片，关于里面的活动问答问题。

1. Which activity do you think is the most interesting? 你认为哪一个活动是最有趣的?
2. Which skills do you have? 你有哪些技能?
3. Which skill do you want to learn most?Why? 你最想学习哪一项技能? 为什么?
4. Which skill do you think would be the most useful for young people?
   你认为哪项技能对于年轻人来说是最有用的?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words or expressions in the box.

用方框中的单词或短语的正确形式完成句子。

activity 活动	as a result 结果	come out 出版
pleasure 快乐	success 成功	

1. I get lots of _____ from my hobbies. 我从我的爱好中获得了许多_____。
2. I like doing outdoor _____ best. 我最喜欢做户外_____。
3. I hope David will have great _____ in the future. 我希望戴维在将来将会有巨大的_____。
4. The *Harry Potter* stories are very popular. _____, the writer of the books, J.K.Rowling /rəʊlɪŋ/, has become very famous.

   《哈利·波特》的故事很受欢迎。_____，这些书的作者，J.K. 罗琳，已经变得非常出名。
5. I buy the magazines when they _____ each month.

   每个月当它们_____，我买这些杂志。

4 Complete the passage with the correct form of the words and expressions in the box.

用方框中单词和短语的正确形式完成短文。

as a result 结果	fan 扇子	hobby 爱好	interesting 有趣的	model 模型	stamp 邮票
such as 例如	ticket 票	tidy up 使整齐			

When I was (1)_____ my room yesterday, I found an old box of my father's. He gave it to me two years ago. It was really (2)_____ to discover something about my father's life as a child. He once told me about his (3)_____ as a child. He wrote to people from all over the world, and they sent him letters back. (4)_____, he had a book of interesting (5)_____. People also gave him things from different countries, (6)_____ a silk (7)_____ from China, a little model car from Germany and a small (8)_____ ship from Australia. My father even kept the (9)_____ from his first football match. The box made me think about my hobby. I want to keep ① my old picture books and magazines for a long time too.

昨天当我 (1)_____我的房间时，我发现了我父亲的一个旧盒子。两年前他把它给了我。发现我父亲孩童时代生活的事情确实是 (2)_____。他曾经告诉我他儿时的 (3)_____。他给来自世界各地的人们写信，而且他们给他回信。(4)_____，他有一本有趣的 (5) _____。人们也给他来自不同国家的东西，(6)_____来自中国的一把丝绸 (7)_____，来自德国的一辆小汽车模型和来自澳大利亚的一辆小型 (8)_____轮船。我父亲甚至保存着来自他的第一场足球赛的 (9)_____。这个盒子使我思考我的爱好。我也想长久地保存我的旧图画书和杂志。

5 Put the words and expressions in the boxes into the correct columns.

把方框中的单词和短语放进正确的栏里。

camping 野营	climbing 爬山	growing vegetables 种植蔬菜	looking after animals 照看动物
painting 绘画	swimming 游泳	taking photos 照相	

fans 扇子	models 模型	stamps 邮票	tennis 网球
tickets 票	volleyball 排球		

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Sports 运动	Collections 收集	Others 其他

Now make at least five sentences about your hobbies. 现在至少编五个关于你的爱好的句子。

My hobby is swimming. 我的爱好是游泳。

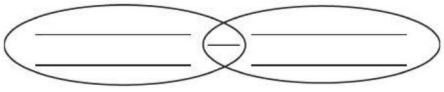
Swimming can make me strong and healthy. 游泳能使我强壮和健康。

6 Listen and complete the diagram. 听并完成图表。

课文听力 6

What hobbies do they have? 他们有什么爱好?

Girls 女孩　　Boys 男孩



Now listen again and answer the question. 现在再听一遍，并回答问题。

Why is it good to have hobbies?_____ 为什么有爱好是好的? _____

7 Read the passage and complete the notes. 阅读短文并完成笔记。

课文朗读 7

A fantastic hobby 一个极棒的爱好

A British boy has become one of the youngest people to sail alone across the Atlantic Ocean. Seb/seb/ Clover/ˈkləʊvə/ has a fantastic and exciting hobby—sailing. He sailed his 9.8-metre-long boat 5, 000 km from Tenerife/ˌtenəˈrɪf/ to Antigua/ænˈtiːgə/.

一个英国男孩已经成为独自驾船穿越大西洋最年轻的人之一。塞巴·克洛弗有一个极棒的令人兴奋的爱好——航行。他驾着 9.8 米长的船从特内里费岛到安提瓜岛航行了 5, 000 公里。

Fifteen-year-old Seb said, "Sometimes I was afraid. But I still enjoyed every moment. The best thing was seeing fish and other sea animals swimming close to the boat." He was also very happy to arrive in Antigua.

十五岁的塞巴说："有时我很害怕，但我仍享受着每个时刻。最好的事情是看鱼和其他的海洋动物游近船只。"到达安提瓜岛他也非常高兴。

"You are busy all the time on a boat alone. It's difficult to cook something to eat on this kind of journey because you have to watch the sea all the time. Usually, you eat something small and often.That way, you don't have to stop working." The worst part of the journey? "That's easy to answer," said Seb. "I ran out of② chocolate!"

"你一直一个人在船上会很忙碌，在这种旅行中很难做东西吃，因为你必须一直注视着大海。通常情况下，你吃小东西和常见的东西。那样，你就不必停止工作。"旅行中最坏的部分？"那很容易回答，"塞巴说，"我吃光了巧克力！"

Seb has sailed boats since he was very young and started to get ready for this journey when he was only twelve. Seb said, "I enjoyed sailing alone, but I'm looking forward to going back to school now. Next time, I'd like to go sailing with my friends."

塞巴自从他很小时就驾船航行，仅仅十二岁时就开始为他的这次旅行做准备。塞巴说："我喜欢独自航行，但我期待着现在回到学校。下次，我想要和我的朋友们一起去航行。"

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Experiences 经历

·At twelve years old, Seb started to (1)_____. 十二岁时，塞巴开始 (1)_____。

·At fifteen years old, Seb sailed (2)_____ across the Atlantic Ocean.

十五岁时，塞巴航行 (2)_____穿过大西洋。

Feelings 感觉

·The best thing was seeing (3)_____ swimming close to the boat.

最好的事情是看见 (3)_____游近船只。

·The worst part of the journey was when he ran out of (4)_____.

旅程最糟糕的部分是当他吃光 (4)_____时。

·In the future, he would like to (5)_____. 在将来，他想要 (5)_____。

Around the world 环游世界

Living history 鲜活的历史

A popular hobby in America and some other countries is to live in the way that people lived long ago. Groups of people find out about the past. At the weekend, they dress in the clothes which people wore in the past and live in the way that people did then. They not only enjoy the weekend, but also ③ learn a lot about life in the old days.

美国和一些其他国家的一个流行的爱好是以很久以前的人的生活方式生活。大批的人弄清过去（的事情）。周末，他们穿上人们过去穿的衣服，像那时的人那样生活。他们不仅享受周末，而且了解了过去生活的许多事情。

Module task:Making a survey of hobbies 模块任务：做一个爱好的调查

8 Work in pairs. Plan your survey on hobbies. 结对练习，关于爱好计划你的调查。

·Decide the questions you want to ask. 选定你想问的问题。

·Think about what kind of information might be interesting — if people in the same family have the same hobbies, which hobbies young people usually do not like, which hobbies your classmates all like,etc.

考虑一下什么种类的信息或许是有趣的——是否同一个家庭的人们有相同的爱好，年轻人通常不喜欢哪些爱好，你的同班同学都喜欢哪些爱好等。

·Look up new words. 查阅生词。

9 Write your survey. 写写你的调查。

·Make sure that the sentences are clear and easy to understand. 确保句子是清楚且容易理解的。

·Ask your teacher or your classmates to check the survey when you have finished.

当你完成时让你的老师或同班同学检查一下这个调查。

10 Do your survey with other students. 你和其他学生一起做调查。

·Ask your questions and make notes on the answers. 问你的问题，关于答案记笔记。

11 Present the results of your survey to the rest of the class. 向班里其他学生呈现你的调查结果。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

•考点应用 •考点批注

★I want to keep my old picture books and magazines for a long time too.

① **keep** /ki:p/ *v.* 保存；保管

【易错点】辨析：keep,borrow 与 lend

不同的“借”
- keep：表示“借某物多长时间”，可与“for+一段时间”或how long连用
- borrow：“借入”，构成borrow sth. from sb./sp.“从某人/某地借某物”结构
- lend：“借出”，常与to连用，构成lend sth. to sb.“把某物借给某人”结构

e.g. You can keep the book for only a week. 这本书你只能借一周。

She often borrows some books from me. 她经常从我这借一些书。

I can lend my bike to you. 我可以把我的自行车借给你。

考题在线1 —Could you _____ me your bike,Tom?

—OK. And you can _____ it for a week. [荆州]

A. lend; keep B. borrow; lend

C. lend; borrow D. borrow; keep

点拨：问句句意为“你可以借给我你的自行车吗，汤姆？”属于借出，应用动词lend，而答语中存在时间状语for a week，所以第二空必须为延续性动词keep。



★I ran out of chocolate!

② **run out of** 用完……；用尽……，相当于 **use up**。

e.g. Jimmy has run out of money. 吉米已经把钱花完了。

My money has run out. 我的钱用完了。

考题在线2 Some people waste too much water. They don't believe that it can _____ some day. [烟台]

A. keep out B. run out C. be run out D. run out of

辨析：run out of 与 run out

- run out of 意为“用完……；用尽……”，是及物动词短语，主语一般是人。
- run out 意为“用完；耗尽”，是不及物动词短语，其主语通常为时间、食物、金钱等。

★They not only enjoy the weekend, but also learn a lot about life in the old days.

③ **not only...but also...** 不但……而且……

e.g. Tom enjoys not only music but (also) sports.

汤姆不仅喜欢音乐，而且喜欢运动。

He was not only a successful writer but (also) the greatest poet of his time. 他不仅是个成功的作家，而且还是那个时代最伟大的诗人。

Not only my friends but also my father enjoys writing blogs.

不仅我的朋友们，而且我的父亲也喜欢写博客。

not only...but also... 用于连接两个并列的成分，其中 also 可以省略。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

敲黑板

not only... but also... 连接并列成分作主语时，谓语动词遵循“就近原则”

考题在线 3 A break between classes is a good time for students to play sports and talk with their classmates. So it _____ helps with students' health, _____ improves their social skills. [临沂]

A. either; or　　B. neither; nor　　C. not only; but also

点拨：either...or... 或者……或者……；neither...nor... 既不……也不……；not only...but also... 不但……而且……。根据上句“课间休息是学生运动、同学交谈的好时间。”可知，课间休息是有益的。故后一句句意为：因此它不但帮助学生健康，而且提高他们的社会技能。

考题在线答案 1. A　2. B　3. C

Ⅲ. 模块语法沙龙　夺取中考语法满分

简单句的基本句型

考点 英语是一种结构型的语言，动词在句型构成中起着重要作用。现在对已经学过的几种基本句型总结如下：

考向 1：主语 + 系动词 + 表语（S+V+P）

系动词本身具有词义，后面需跟表语，构成系表结构，说明主语的状况、性质、特征等。表语通常由名词、形容词、副词、介词短语、动词不定式（短语）、动名词（短语）来充当。此句型中常见的系动词有 be，become，turn，get，seem，keep，smell，taste，feel，sound，look 等。

e.g. The cake smells good. 蛋糕闻起来很香。

Everything looks different.

一切看起来都不同了。

考题在线 1 —The cheese doesn't _____ good. Why don't we go to buy some fresh cheese?

—Sounds great! [天津]

A. see　　B. find　　C. sound　　D. taste

考向 2：主语 + 谓语（S+V）

该句型中的谓语动词是不及物动词。不及物动词本身意义完整，无需带宾语，但后面可以跟副词、介词短语等作状语。

e.g. The sun rose. 太阳升起来了。

They are not talking happily.

他们并不是在愉快地谈话。

考题在线 2 指出下列句子画线部分的句子成分。

The plane has taken off.

点拨：此题用语法分析法解答。The plane 为句子主语，故 has taken off 为句子谓语。

考向 3：主语 + 谓语 + 宾语（S+V+O）

该句型中的动词必须是及物动词，及物动词后需跟宾语，宾语可以是名词或相当于名词的成分。

e.g. He is doing morning exercises. 他在做早操。

Who's going to cook supper？ 谁来做晚饭？

考题在线 3 What is the sentence pattern of “I love English.”？ [武威]

A. S+V　　B. S+V+O

C. S+V+P　　D. S+V+O+OC

点拨：“I love English.”为“主谓宾”结构，即：S+V+O。

考向 4：主语 + 谓语 + 间接宾语 + 直接宾语（S+V+IO+DO）

一些及物动词（如 give，pass，show，send，bring，tell，teach，buy，lend 等）可以接双宾语。一个是指物的直接宾语，另一个是指人的间接宾语。通常情况下，间接宾语在前，直接宾语在后。当间接宾语放在直接宾语之后时，要加介词 to 或 for。

e.g. He bought you a dictionary.=He bought a dictionary for you. 他给你买了一本词典。

My friend gave me an apple.=My friend

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

gave an apple to me. 我的朋友给了我一个苹果。

敲黑板 to 表示动作对准谁，常见的接 to 的动词有 give, pass, return, tell, show, lend 等；for 表示动作为谁做，常见的接 for 的动词有 buy, cook, get, make, choose 等。

考题在线 4 Miss Li left her purse at my home. Please _____. [恩施改编]

A. give it to her　　B. give her it

C. give it her

点拨：结构 give sb. sth. 中 sth. 如果是代词，则用“give sth. to sb.”。

考向 5：主语＋谓语＋宾语＋宾语补足语（S+V+O+OC）

该句型中的谓语由可接宾语补足语（简称宾补）的及物动词充当，宾语和其补足语一起构成复合宾语。若无宾语补足语，则句意不完整。能充当宾语补足语的有名词、形容词、副词、介词短语、不定式（短语）和分词（短语）。

常见的可接复合宾语的动词有：call, find, think, see, feel, keep, hear, watch, ask, want, invite, let, make, have 等。

e.g. They usually call the baby Dick.

他们通常叫那个婴儿迪克。

I find maths very difficult. 我发现数学很难。

考题在线 5 They asked their son _____ the bed last weekend. [岳阳]

A. to make　　B. making　　C. made

点拨：ask sb. to do sth. “要求某人做某事”，其中的动词不定式作宾语补足语。

考向 6：There be+主语（+状语）.（即 there be 句型）

there be 句型表示“某处有某物 / 某人”，其中 there 没有语义，be 为系动词，be 后面的名词为句子的主语。

e.g. There is a book on the table. 桌子上有本书。

There are some students on the playground. 操场上有一些学生。

There is a table and four chairs in the room. 房间里有一张桌子和四把椅子。

敲黑板 在 there be 句型中，当两个或两个以上的名词并列作主语时，be 动词应与离它最近的名词在数上保持一致，即“就近原则”。

考题在线 6 —What's in the picture?

—There _____ a teacher and some students playing games on the playground. [铜仁]

A. is　　B. are　　C. has　　D. have

点拨：在 there be 句型中应遵循“就近原则”，故用 is。

考题在线答案 1. D　2. 谓语　3. B　4. A　5. A　6. A

Ⅳ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20 分

写作小练笔 介绍“Advantages of hobbies”

Hobbies can make one grow as a person, develop one's interests and help one learn new skills.

One of David Smith's hobbies is writing. During the summer of 2010, he attended a summer camp. The teacher of a writing class encouraged them to write about their experiences at the camp. Back at school, David wrote a story and it came out as a book. Young people love his book. David has become successful. David's hobby has brought him pleasure and success. And he may write about his volleyball team in his future books. 介绍“One of David's hobbies—writing”

模块话题 [荆州]

请以“My Hobby”为题写一篇短文，必须包括以下要点和词语提示信息。

1. What is your hobby?

2. How do you develop your hobby?

3. Share your happiness you get from your hobby. Give at least one example.

提示词语：practice, different, forget, no longer

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

要求：1. 可以适当发挥，文中不得出现真实姓名和学校名称；

2. 语言通顺，意思连贯，条理清楚，书写规范；

3. 词数：80 左右。短文开头已给出，不计入总词数。

My Hobby

Everyone has his or her own hobby and so do I.

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

1. 根据写作要求可知，文中应以第一人称为主；介绍自己的爱好时多采用一般现在时。

2. 按照提示内容，先说明自己的爱好是什么，爱好的发展历程，并举例说明爱好带来的积极影响。

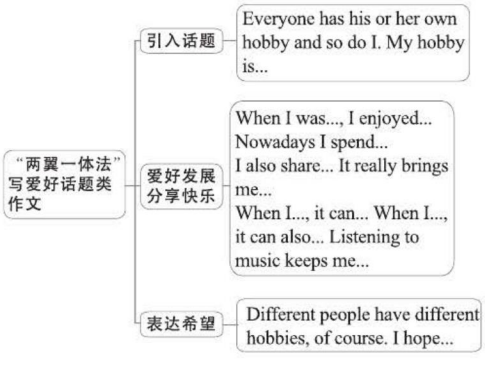
写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

“两翼一体法”写爱好话题类作文

“两翼一体法”介绍爱好，采取的写作方法是：简单引入话题——重点描述自己爱好的发展历程并与别人分享爱好带来的快乐——总结全文，表达希望。



写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）



经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	own,especially,bring, pleasure,make, relaxed,keep, health
短语	listen to,enjoy doing sth., share...with...,be angry with,in a good mood, be good for
句子	①Nowadays I spend most of my spare time enjoying music. ②When I am in trouble, music can make me calm down. ③I hope our hobbies will make us grow as a person and help us have a better future.

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

My Hobby

Everyone has his or her own hobby and so do I. My hobby is listening to music.

When I was a child, I enjoyed listening to music very much, especially classical music. Nowadays I spend most of my spare time enjoying music. I also share the music I like with my family and friends. It really brings me much pleasure. When I am in trouble, music can make me calm down. When I am very tired, it can make me relaxed. When I am angry with something, it can also make me happy again. Listening to music keeps me in a good mood and it's good for my health.

Different people have different hobbies, of course. I hope our hobbies will make us grow as a person and help us have a better future.

名师点评：本文用“两翼一体法”介绍个人爱好，层次分明。

第一：开篇点明自己的爱好，紧扣题目要求。倒装句 so do I 及动名词作表语使用正确，体现出作者深厚的语言功底。

第二：用“两翼一体法”重点介绍内容：自己爱好的发展历程及爱好带来的积极影响。使用 spend some time doing sth. 及 share...with... 结构，巧妙地表现出自

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

己对爱好的享受；使用了三个 when 引导的时间状语从句，说明爱好带来的积极影响，使得文章重点突出。
第三：文章最后紧扣话题总结全文，并表达祝愿。



Ⅴ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见268页)

一、针对性训练

1. Don't _____ your free time on computer games!

A. run out　　B. run out of

C. give out　　D. use up of

2. You speak good English. I hope _____ us with our English.

—No problem.

A. you to help　　B. to help

C. you'll help　　D. to you help

3. I noticed Ann _____ a green dress at the school meeting.

—I think she looks better _____ red.

A. dressed;in　　B. put on;on

C. wearing;in　　D. wear;on

4. Please look at these stamps. I _____ them for five years.

A. kept　　B. have bought

C. borrowed　　D. have kept

5. Not only I but also my parents _____ looking forward to seeing you. We can't wait.

A. are　　B. am　　C. were　　D. is

二、语法专练

6. —Who is the lady in red?

—Miss Gao. She teaches _____ English. [扬州]

A. we　　B. us　　C. our　　D. ours

7. —Have you ever read the traditional story *Yu Gong Moves A Mountain*?

—Yes, our teacher often advises us _____ more meaningful traditional books. [南充]

A. reading　　B. reads

C. read　　D. to read

8. _____ a clock on the desk. It wakes me up every day. [湘潭]

A. There are　　B. There be

C. There is

9. *Taiji* is my favourite and I often play it _____ healthy.

A. to keep　　B. keeps

C. keeping　　D. kept

10. —Jill,who _____ that in the white coat?

—It's my brother,Joe. [济南]

A. did　　B. does　　C. are　　D. is

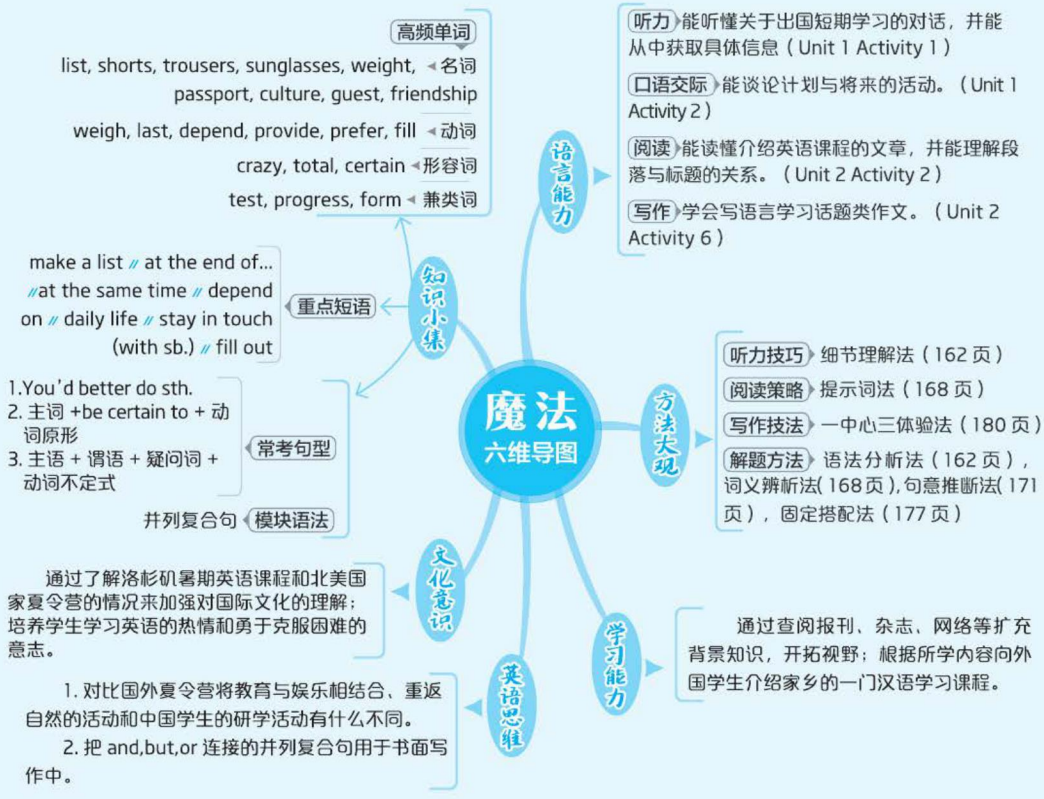
三、模块知识浓缩

Many students have hobbies, _____[11] as reading, painting and looking _____[12] animals. Hobbies can make you _____[13] as a person. One of David's hobbies is writing. During the summer of 2010, he _____[14] four weeks at a summer camp. Then he began to write about his _____[15] at the camp. He wrote a story about the life of a sixteen-year-old boy, and it came out _____[16] a book in 2012. As a _____[17], he has become a successful young writer. Not only does David like writing, _____[18] also he is interested in volleyball. He spends his free time _____[19] volleyball for his school team. We hope he will write about his volleyball team in his _____[20] books.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Module 7 Summer in Los Angeles

词汇表听写



记忆大师

Unit 1 Please write to me and send me some photos!

必背单词

1.**crazy** *adj.* 发疯的；荒唐的 →**crazier**（比较级）→**craziest**（最高级）

2.**weigh** *v.* 重量有……；重……→**weight** *n.* 重量

3.**list** *n.* 名单；清单

4.**shorts** *n.*（用复数）短裤

5.**trousers** *n.*（用复数）裤子

6.**sunglasses** *n.*（用复数）太阳镜；墨镜

7.**homestay** *n.* 家庭寄宿

8.**total** *adj.* 总的；全部的

9.**passport** *n.* 护照

必背短语

10.prepare for 为……做准备

11.make a list 列清单

12.a pair (of) 一副，一双，一对

13.pay for 付钱；为……付款

14.had better 最好

15.make sure 确保；保证

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

必背句子

16.**How** can I **help**? 我怎样帮助呢?

17.Well,it **sounds crazy**, but I don't know what **to take**.
好吧，它听起来很荒唐，但是我不知道带什么。

18.**Is** 200 dollars **enough**? 二百美元足够了吗?

19.Oh, **by the way**, don't forget **to take** your passport.
噢，顺便说一下，不要忘记带你的护照。

20.Please **write to** me and **send** me some **photos**!
请写信给我并且给我寄一些照片!

Unit 2 Fill out our form and come to learn English in Los Angeles!

必背单词

1.**last** *v.* 持续；延续 →*adj.* 最后的

2.**provide** *v.* 提供；供应 →**offer** *v.*（同义词）

3.**test** *n.* 测验；考试 →**exam** *n.*（同义词）

4.**prefer** *v.* 更喜爱；钟爱 →**preferred**（过去式）→**preferred**（过去分词）

5.**certain** *adj.* 确定的；无疑的 →**certainly** *adv.* 当然

6.**fill** *v.* 填满；填充 →**full** *adj.* 满的

7.**culture** *n.* 文化

8.**depend** *v.* 视……而定；决定（于）

9.**progress** *n.* 进步；进展；*v.*（继续）发展；推进

10.**guest** *n.* 客人；宾客

11.**form** *v.* 形成；*n.* 表格

12.**friendship** *n.* 友谊；友好

必背短语

13.at the same time 同时

14.at the beginning of 在……之初

15.depend on 取决于；决定于

16.stay in touch with 与……保持联系

17.at least 至少

18.fill out 填写；填充

19.form close friendships 建立亲密的友谊

必背句子

20.Our teachers **are well trained** and have a lot of **experience**.
我们的老师受过很好的培训并且经验很丰富。

21.We **provide** books,and we set tests every week **to check** your progress.
我们提供书，而且每周安排测试来检查你的进步情况。

22.**As well as** learning English,we **want you to experience** life in the US. 除了学习英语之外，我们还想让你体验一下美国的生活。

23.You **are certain to get** the best possible experience of English learning and life in the US. 你一定能得到最好的英语学习和美国生活的体验。

24.You **must pay for** your course at least one month **before it starts**.
你必须至少在课程开始前一个月支付费用。

Unit 3 Language in use

必背短语

1.study in groups 小组学习

2.go sightseeing 去观光

3.make new friends 交新朋友

4.try out new ideas 尝试新想法

必背句子

5.**Let** a British family **teach** you all about the culture in the UK.
让一户英国家庭教你所有关于英国文化的知识。

6.It is **a great way to learn about** British culture. 它是了解英国文化的一个极好的方法。

7.**Through** the small group size,we **provide** students **with** the chance to **make new friends**. 通过这种小组规模，我们提供给学生交新朋友的机会。

必背语法

8.When are you leaving **and** how long are you going to stay there? 你打算什么时候离开且呆在那儿多长时间?

9.It sounds crazy, **but** I don't know what to take.
它听起来很荒唐，但我不知道带什么。

10.Shorts are good, **or** you can wear light trousers. 短裤就合适，或者你可以穿轻薄的裤子。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 1 Please write to me and send me some photos!

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

Listening and vocabulary 听力与词汇

1 Listen and complete the notes. 听并完成笔记。

课文听力1

1. Where Daming and Lingling are going:_____ 大明和玲玲将去哪儿：_____
2. What they are going to do:_____ 他们将去做什么：_____
3. How long they will stay:_____ 他们将呆多长时间：_____
4. How many students there are in the group:_____ 有多少学生在这组：_____

2 Listen and read. 听和读。

课文朗读2

(*Lingling is preparing for her trip to LA.*)（玲玲正在为她去洛杉矶的旅行做准备。）

Lingling: Hi, Betty.I'm making a list/lɪst/① of things for my trip.I like to get things ready earlier.Can you help me?

你好，贝蒂。我正在为我旅行的东西列清单。我喜欢早一点儿把东西准备好。你能帮我吗?

Betty: Sure.How can I help? 当然。我怎样帮助呢?

Lingling: Well, it sounds crazy/'kreɪzi/②, but I don't know what to take.

好吧，它听起来很荒唐，但是我不知道带什么。

Betty: You should take notebooks, pens and a dictionary. 你应该带笔记本、钢笔和一本词典。

Lingling:OK.What clothes should I take to LA? 好吧。我该带什么衣服去洛杉矶呢?

Betty: When are you leaving and how long are you going to stay there?

你什么时候离开并且你打算在那儿呆多长时间?

Lingling:I'm leaving at the end of③ July and I'm going to stay there for four weeks.

我将在七月底离开并且我将在那儿呆四周。

Betty: Shorts/ʃɔ:ts/ are good, or you can wear light trousers/'traʊzəz/.It'll be sunny and hot there.

短裤就合适，或者你可以穿轻薄的裤子。那儿的天气将会是晴朗且炎热的。

Lingling:I haven't got any sunglasses/'sʌnˌglɑ:sɪz/.I'll buy a pair there.

我没有太阳镜。我将在那儿买一副。

Betty: That's a good idea.But remember, many things are more expensive in America.Have you got any American dollars? 那是一个好主意。但是记住，许多东西在美国更贵。你有美元吗?

Lingling: Yes. Is 200 dollars enough?④ 有。二百美元足够了吗?

Betty: If you've already paid for the air tickets and for homestay/'həʊmˌsteɪ/, it should be OK.

如果你已经支付过机票钱和家庭寄宿的费用，那就应该够了。

Lingling: What else? 还有什么?

Betty: Your bag mustn't weigh/weɪ/⑤ too much.You'd better⑥ ask the travel company about the total/'təʊtl/⑦ weight/weɪt/ for all your bags.Oh, by the way, don't forget to take your passport /'pɑ:spɔ:t/.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

你的包一定不能太重。关于你所有包的总重量，你最好问一下旅行公司。噢，顺便说一下，不要忘记带你的护照。

Lingling:OK.Thank you. 好的，谢谢你。

Betty: You're welcome.You'll have a great time.Please write to me and send me some photos!

不用谢。你将玩得开心。请写信给我并且给我寄一些照片！

Lingling: Yes, I will! 是的，我会的！

Everyday English 日常英语

·Can you help me? 你能帮助我吗?

·How can I help? 我怎样帮助呢?

·Well, it sounds crazy, but... 好吧，它听起来很荒唐，但是……

·By the way, ... 顺便说一下，……

Now check (√) the things Betty suggests Lingling take. 现在给贝蒂建议玲玲带上的东西打（√）。

1. dollars □ 美元□
2. shorts □ 短裤□
3. jeans □ 牛仔裤□
4. T-shirts □ T 恤衫□
5. pens □ 钢笔□
6. a dictionary □ 一本词典□
7. passport □ 护照□
8. sunglasses □ 太阳镜□
9. notebooks □ 笔记本□

3 Find sentences in the conversation which suggest that... 在对话中找出建议……的句子。

1. Lingling wants help. 玲玲需要帮助。
2. Betty is glad to offer help. 贝蒂乐于提供帮助。
3. Lingling asks for more help. 玲玲要求更多的帮助。
4. Betty tells Lingling to remember something important. 贝蒂叫玲玲记住一些重要的事。

4 Complete the passage with the words in the box. 用方框中的单词完成短文。

crazy 疯狂的　list 名单；清单　passport 护照　shorts 短裤　total 总的；全部的
trousers 裤子　weigh 重量有……；重……　weight 重量

When you are planning a trip, make a (1)_____ of things to take.Do not go (2)_____ and take too many clothes. For warm countries you can keep cool with (3)_____ and some light (4)_____.If you travel by plane,your bag cannot (5)_____ too much.For some flights,twenty kilos may be the (6)_____ you can take.To make sure,ask the travel company for help. Remember to check the (7)_____ of your bag. And finally, the most important thing:do not forget to take your (8)_____!

当你正计划一个旅行的时候，列出要带的东西的 (1)_____。不要 (2)_____和带太多的衣服。对于暖和的国家，带着 (3)_____和一些轻薄的 (4)_____，你能够保持凉快。如果你乘飞机旅行，你的包不能太 (5)_____。对于一些航班来说，20 千克或许是你能带的 (6)_____。为了弄清楚，向旅行公司寻求帮助。记住核查你的包的（7）_____。最后，最重要的事：不要忘记带你的 (8)_____！

Pronunciation and speaking 发音和会话

5 Listen and underline the words the speaker stresses. 听并在说话者所重读的单词下画线。

1. What clothes should I take to LA? 我应该带什么衣服去洛杉矶?
2. I haven't got any sunglasses.I'll buy a pair there. 我没有太阳镜。 我将在那儿买一副。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3. Many things are more expensive in America. 许多东西在美国更贵。

Now listen again and repeat. 现在再听一遍并跟读。

6 Work in pairs.Talk about Lingling's plans and Betty's advice.

结对练习。谈谈玲玲的计划和贝蒂的建议。

Lingling likes to get things ready earlier. 玲玲喜欢早点儿把东西准备好。

7 Imagine you are going to travel to LA.Make notes about your plans.

想象一下你将要去洛杉矶旅行。记下你的计划。

Now work in pairs.Ask and answer questions about your trip to LA.

现在结对练习。问并且回答关于你去洛杉矶旅行的问题。

A:*How are you going to travel to LA*? 你打算怎样去洛杉矶旅行?

B:... ……

A:*Where are you going to stay*? 你打算呆在哪儿?

B:... ……

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注　　•考点应用

★I'm making a list of things for my trip.

① **list** /lɪst/ *n.* 名单；清单

e.g. You should make a list before going shopping. 去购物前你应该列个清单。

Please list the things for the picnic. 请把野餐所需要的物品列出来。

考题在线 1 根据句意及汉语提示完成单词。

He wrote a _____(名单，清单) of names on the paper.

- make a list 列清单
- a list of 一栏；一列

list 作动词，意为"列清单；把……列成表"。

★Well, it sounds crazy, but I don't know what to take.

② **crazy** /'kreɪzi/ *adj.* 发疯的；荒唐的

e.g. He is crazy about *Crazy English*. 他对《疯狂英语》很着迷。

He is crazy to go out in this weather. 他简直疯了，这种天气还到外面去。

We all had some crazy ideas and dreams when we were kids.

当还是小孩子的时候，我们都有过一些荒唐的主意和梦想。

考题在线 2 He was so _____ rock music that he almost spent all his free time listening to it. [东营模拟]

A. care about　　B. crazy about　　C. think about

点拨: 题意为"他对摇滚音乐是如此着迷，以至于他几乎把所有的空闲时间都用来听摇滚音乐了"。be crazy about"对……着迷"符合题意。

- be crazy about 对……着迷
- be crazy to do sth. 做某事是疯狂的
- go crazy 发疯，失去理智
- drive sb. crazy 使某人发疯 / 发狂

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★**I'm leaving at the end of July and I'm going to stay there for four weeks.**

③ **at the end of... 在……的结尾；在……的末端**

【易错点】辨析：at the end of, in the end 和 by the end of

短语	用法	例句
at the end of	意为“在……的结尾；在……的末端”，后面常常跟表示时间、地点的名词。	Go along the road, and you'll see the school at the end of it. 沿着这条路走，你将在路的尽头看到那所学校。
in the end	意为“最后；最终”，指时间，相当于 at last 或 finally。	He worked out the problem in the end. 他最终解决了这个难题。
by the end of	意为“到……为止”，其后常跟表示时间的词，常用于完成时态。	I will have been in the company for two years by the end of this year. 到今年年底，我就在这个公司呆了两年了。



考题在线 3 —How is your work going?

—It will be finished _____ the end of this week. We must be on time. [自贡]

A. at B. in C. on

点拨：考查介词短语。at the end of 在……末尾，根据句意可知指的是在这周末尾。

时间、距离、金钱、价格、长度、重量等作主语时，通常看作一个整体，谓语动词要用单数形式。

★**Is 200 dollars enough?**

④ **谓语动词用单数的情况**

e.g. Ten thousand dollars is a lot of money. 一万美元是一大笔钱。

Thirty kilometres is a good distance.30 公里是一段相当远的距离。

Three years is a long time. 三年是一段很长的时间。

小贴士：某些表示“学科”的名词，虽然以 -s 结尾，但并非是复数形式，作主语时，谓语动词用单数形式，如 maths, physics, politics 等。

考题在线 4 将句子翻译成英语。

每天锻炼一小时对健康和学习都有好处。 [扬州]

_____

★**Your bag mustn't weigh too much.**

⑤ **weigh** /weɪ/ *v.* **重量有……；重……**

e.g. —How much do you weigh? 你体重多少？

—I weigh 60 kilos. 我体重 60 千克。

Have you weighed yourself lately? 你最近称过体重吗？

The weight of this baby is 3 kilos. 这个婴儿的重量是 3 千克。

★ weigh 作及物动词，意为“称；量”；作不及物动词，意为“有……重”。

★ weight 名词，意为“重量”。常见搭配：

- put on weight 变胖
- lose weight 减肥
- lift weights 举重

考题在线 5 用所给词的适当形式填空。

He _____(weight) only 70 kilos now after taking a balanced diet.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 6 完成句子。

自从我上次见到他以来，他又长胖了。

He _____ _____ _____ _____ since I last saw him.

★You'd better ask the travel company about the total weight for all your bags.

⑥ **had better** 最好

had better 无人称和数的变化；一般疑问句需将 had 提到句首。 敲黑板

e.g. You'd better take an umbrella with you. 你最好带着雨伞。

You had better not miss the last bus. 你最好不要错过末班公共汽车。

考题在线 7 You'd better _____ hard from now on, _____ you will fail in the exam. 【导学号：9465610】[大庆]

A. work; and　　B. working; or

C. working; and　　D. work; or

- had better do sth. 最好做某事
- had better not do sth. 最好不要做某事

点拨：用语法分析法解题。根据句型 had better (not)do sth. 可知应排除 B、C 项；根据前面“你最好从现在开始努力学习”推知后面句意“否则你会考试不及格”。or 为并列连词，意为“否则”。

⑦ **total** /ˈtəʊtl/ *adj.* 总的；全部的

total 为形容词，通常作前置定语，相当于 whole。

e.g. His total income is 100,000 *yuan* a year. 他一年的总收入是 10 万元。

There were two hundred visitors in total. 总共有 200 名参观者。

考题在线 8 —What do you like to do in your spare time?

—I like collecting train tickets, and I have a collection of 100 _____ now.

A. in common　　B. in total　　C. in danger　　D. in silence

total 作名词，意为“总数”，in total 总共

点拨：考查介词短语辨析。in common 共同；in total 总共；in danger 处于困境中；in silence 在沉默中。由前面“我喜欢收集火车票”可知，我现在总共有 100 张。

考题在线答案 1. list　2. B　3. A　4. Doing exercise for one hour every day does good to both health and study.　5. weighs　6. has put on weight　7. D　8. B

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

☞（答案见268页）

听力技巧

细节理解法（从听力对话中寻找想得到的相关信息，对于细节问题要全神贯注，提高辨别细节的能力。）

听力过程

听教材 Activity 1，选择最佳答案

课文听力 1

1.Lingling and Daming are doing _____ in LA this summer.

A. housework

B. homework

C. an English course

2.How long will Daming and Lingling stay in LA?

A. About four weeks.

B. About five weeks.

C. Six weeks.

3.It's a good chance for Daming to _____.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

A. practise Chinese B. practise English
C. play

4.How many students are there in the group?
A. 12. B. 20. C. 40.

5.They'll all stay with _____.
A. the same family B. different families
C. their friends

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

☞(答案见268页)

一、根据句意及首字母提示写单词

1.When David Beckham came to China, the football fans were c_____.

2.Wearing s_____ can help you protect your eyes from the strong sunlight.

3. The t_____ number of the students is 500.

4.You can lose w_____ by eating less and keeping exercise more. [济宁]

5.Li Lei planned to fly to the US.But he left his p_____ at home and missed the plane.

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6.You have worked for several hours.You'd better _____(stop) to have a rest.

7.I haven't decided when _____(take) a holiday.

8. The pair of shorts _____ (be) too expensive.

9. They had a great time _____ (play) games under the tree.

10.Dick decided to lose _____(weigh) by eating less and doing more exercise. [淮安]

三、单项选择

11.Fifty *yuan* _____ enough. [常德]
A. is B. am C.are

12.They plan to go on a trip to Beijing _____ this month.
A. at the end of B. in the end
C. by the end of D. come to an end

13.We'll stay at home _____ it rains tomorrow.
A. and B. if C. but D. so

14. —I want to be an astronaut in the future.
—Work hard, _____ you will succeed.
A. and B. or C. but D. so

15. —Can you tell me the _____ of the box?
—Sorry, I haven't _____ it.
A. weight; weight B. weight; weighed
C. weighed; weighed D. weighed; weight

四、根据汉语意思完成句子

16. 你最好尽可能多地读点书。
You _____ _____ read as many books as possible.

17. 我已付过你的票钱。
I have already _____ _____ your ticket.

18. 当你下公交车时，别忘了拿走你的包。
Don't _____ _____ _____ your bag when you get off the bus.

19. 你能列出你需要的所有物品的清单吗?
Can you _____ _____ _____ _____ all the things you need?

20. 他们俩都不对电脑游戏着迷，相反地，他们喜欢看书。
Neither of them _____ _____ _____ computer games.Instead,they like reading.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 Fill out our form and come to learn English in Los Angeles!

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文及导读

导读批注

原文译文·导读

Reading and vocabulary 阅读与词汇

Pre-reading（读前）

1. Which country would you like to go to learn English?
2. Where do you want to go most if you go to America?
3. Would you like to stay as a guest with an American family?

请开始你的表演



1 Work in pairs.Look at the photos in Activity 2 and say what you can see. 结对练习。看活动 2 中的照片并且说说你能看到什么。

课文朗读 2

course 课程　Disneyland 迪斯尼乐园　family 家庭
Hollywood 好莱坞　shopping 购物

2 Read the passage and choose the best answer.

阅读文章并选择最佳答案。

The passage is _____. 这篇文章是_____。

a) a guide to Los Angeles 去洛杉矶的指南

b) information about English courses 关于英语课程的信息

c) a story of life in Los Angeles 一个在洛杉矶的生活故事

d) a newspaper story about language courses
关于语言课程的一篇报纸报道

批 标题：点明中心式
由"Learn English in Los Angeles 在洛杉矶学英语"可以很清楚地判断此为本文的主旨。

While-reading（读中）

1. How long do the teachers teach English every day?
2. What can the students do after class?
3. Is it free to learn English in Los Angeles?

批 课文结构：总-分-总

Part 1（Para. 1）：总体阐述来此学英语的意义

Part 2（Para. 2-Para. 4）：就"教学-居住-空闲"分别介绍

Part 3（Para. 5）：总结来此学习英语的好处，并呼吁来此学习英语

Learn English in Los Angeles 在洛杉矶学英语

❶ Come to learn English in Los Angeles! We can offer you great summer English courses. You will love coming to Los Angeles to learn about American culture/ˈkʌltʃə/ and improve your English at the same time.

来洛杉矶学英语吧！我们能给你提供优质的夏季英语课程。你将会乐意来洛杉矶学习美国文化并同时提高你的英语水平。

❷ The courses last/lɑ:st/ ① for four, six or eight weeks.They

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

start at the end of July.Our teachers are well trained and have a lot of experience. They teach English classes for four hours a day. You can work in small or large groups: it depends/dɪˈpendz/ on ② your personal choice.We provide/prəˈvaɪd/ ③ books, and we set tests /tests/ every week to check your progress/ˈprəʊgres/ ④.There are also computers for personal study.

课程持续四、六或八周。它们在七月末开始。我们的老师受过很好的培训并且经验很丰富。他们一天教四小时的英语课。你可以参加小组或大组学习：这取决于你个人的选择。我们提供书，而且每周安排测试来检查你的进步情况。还有电脑供个人学习用。

❸ As well as learning English, we want you to experience life in the US. You can stay as a guest/gest/ with an American family and take part in their daily life.You will have meals with the family and do some activities with them too.For many of our students this is the best part of the course. Many families form/fɔːm/ close friendships /ˈfrendʃɪps/ with the students and stay in touch with ⑤ them.But if you prefer/prɪˈfɜː/ ⑥, of course, you can stay in a hotel.

除了学习英语之外，我们还想让你体验一下美国的生活。你可以作为一位客人和一个美国家庭住在一起，并且加入他们的日常生活。你将和这个家庭一起吃饭，也和他们一起做一些活动。对我们很多学生来说，这是课程中最好的部分。很多家庭和学生们建立了亲密的友谊，而且与他们保持联系。但是如果你喜欢，你当然可以呆在旅馆里。

❹ There are many exciting things to do in Los Angeles. We plan activities every day after class.You can choose to take trips to Hollywood, Disneyland or San Francisco/ˌsænfrænˈsɪskəʊ/, or you can go shopping.

在洛杉矶有很多令人激动的事可以做。我们在每天的课后都安排一些活动。你可以选择去好莱坞，迪斯尼乐园或旧金山旅行，或者你可以去购物。

❺ You are certain/ˈsɜːtn/ ⑦ to get the best possible experience of English learning and life in the US. You must pay for your course at least one month before it starts.Do not wait — fill/fɪl/ ⑧ out our form and come to learn English in Los Angeles!

你一定能得到最好的英语学习和美国生活的体验。你必须至少在课程开始前一个月支付费用。别等了——填写我们的表格，来洛杉矶学习英语吧！

批 段落之间的逻辑关系：

文中第2,3,4段为分层次介绍英语班的具体信息，三段为并列关系，但按照"从主到次"的逻辑顺序描写：Teaching → Places to stay → Free time。

批 句子赏析：

课文首段最后一句及末段第一句均是讲来洛杉矶学英语的好处：学习美国文化；提高英语水平；得到最好的英语学习和美国生活体验。

批 写作方法：

首尾呼应法

本文首尾均用了"learn English in Los Angeles"，如此重复使用且首尾呼应，使表达语气更加强烈，态度更加真挚，让人体会到了广告语的语言魅力。

Post-reading（读后）

写作小练笔

☞（答案见179页）

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

3 Match the headings with the paragraphs. 把文章的标题和段落配对。

a) Teaching 授课

b) Free time 空闲时间

c) Places to stay 呆的地方

d) More information 更多的信息

e) Study English with us 和我们一起学英语

4 Read the passage again and answer the questions. 再次读文章且回答问题。

1. How long does the shortest course last? 最短的课程持续多长时间?
2. How do you check your progress? 你怎样检查你的进步?
3. What is the best part of the course? 课程最好的部分是什么?
4. When should you pay for the course? 你应该什么时候为课程付费?

5 Complete the passage with the correct form of the words and expressions in the box.
用方框中所给单词和短语的正确形式完成短文。

certain 确定的；无疑的　culture 文化　depend on 取决于　fill out 填写　friendship 友谊
guest 客人　progress 进步　provide 提供　test 测试

Come and study in Los Angeles! You are (1)_____ to learn a lot from the course and understand more about American (2)_____.We also hope you will form close (3)_____ with the other students in your class. You can stay in a hotel or as a (4)_____ with a family but that (5)_____ your personal choice.The school (6)_____ books and computers to help you study, and the teachers set (7)_____ every week to check your (8)_____.Do not forget — you must (9)_____ a form and pay at least one month before you start the course.

来洛杉矶学习！你是 (1)_____从课程中学到许多且了解更多的美国 (2)_____。我们也希望你和你班里其他学生形成密切的（3）_____。你可以住在旅馆里或作为（4）_____和一个家庭生活在一起，但那（5）_____你个人的选择。学校（6）_____书和电脑来帮助你学习，并且老师们每周设立（7）_____来检查你的（8）_____。不要忘记——你必须（9）_____一张表且至少在你开始上课前一个月付费。

Writing 写作

6 Think about a course for foreign students learning Chinese in your town or city。
为在你的镇里或城市学习汉语的外国学生想一门课。

Make notes on: 做笔记关于：

·teaching 教学

·where to stay and what to eat 呆在哪里和吃什么

·what to see and what to do 看什么和做什么

·why students will enjoy the course 学生为什么将会喜欢这门课

Now write about the course. 现在关于这门课写一写。

·Describe the language course. 描述语言课程。

Classes last for four hours a day.The teachers... 课程一天持续四个小时。老师们……

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

·Say where the students live. 说学生们住在哪里。

Students live either... or ... 学生们要么住……要么住……

·Say what other activities the students can do. 说说学生们能做其他哪些活动。

There are many things to do in ... For example, ... 在……有许多的事可做。例如，……

·Say why the students will enjoy themselves learning Chinese.

说说学生们为什么将在学汉语中获得快乐。

All our students have a wonderful time learning Chinese in... 我们所有的学生在……学汉语很开心。

Learning to learn 学会学习

In the passage in Activity 2, some sentences about what will happen are used to convince you to learn English in Los Angeles.Find the sentences.

在活动 2 的文章中，关于将会发生什么的一些句子被用来说服你去洛杉矶学习英语。找出这些句子。

核心素养之文化意识

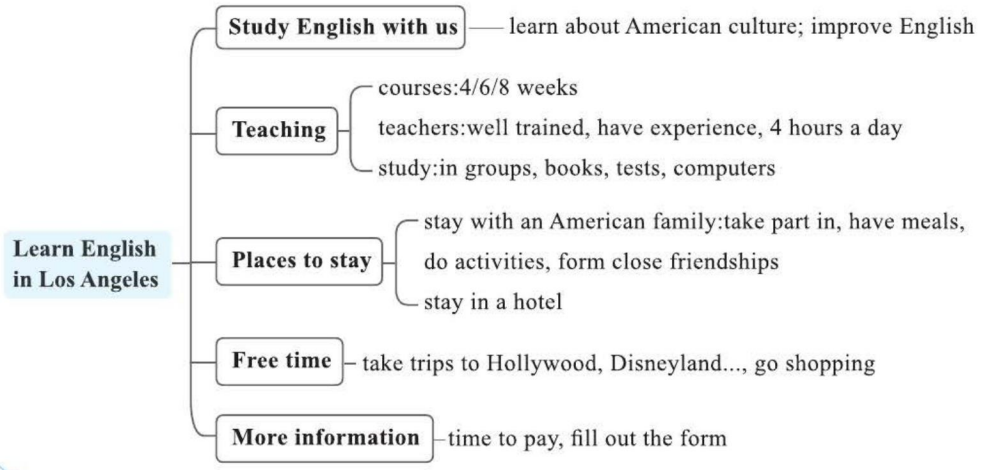
汉语桥

汉语桥 *(Chinese Bridge)* 是由孔子学院 *(Confucius Institute)* 举办的中文比赛，是世界人文交流领域的知名品牌活动，共分为"汉语桥"世界大学生中文比赛、"汉语桥"世界中学生中文比赛和"汉语桥"全球外国人汉语大会三项比赛。每年一届，由汉语桥比赛组委会进行项目的具体组织和实施。

"汉语桥"中文比赛已成为各国大学生学习汉语、了解中国的重要平台，在中国与世界各国青年之间架起了一座沟通心灵的桥梁。比赛内容包括汉语语言能力、中国国情知识、中国文化技能和综合学习能力。选手们首先在各自国家参加预赛阶段比赛，优胜者应邀来华参加复、决赛阶段比赛。优胜者还将获得相应的来华留学奖学金等奖励。比赛之余，选手们还将参加不同主题、丰富多彩的文化活动。



课文背诵指南



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 60分

(答案见269页)

阅读策略

提示词法（提示词常用来表示意思递进、思路转折、概括总结、发展顺序、前因后果等。提示词具有指示的作用，表明句子之间或者句子内部存在的逻辑关系。）

拓展阅读

阅读过程

一、速读文章，选择正确答案

1.The passage is _____.（归纳概括题）

A. a guide to Los Angeles

B. a story of life in Los Angeles

C. information about English courses

D. a newspaper story about language courses

二、细读课文，完成下列各题

2.The courses start _____.（细节理解题）

A.at the end of June

B.at the beginning of July

C.at the end of July

D.in June

3. ⊙You can work in _____ to learn English in Los Angeles.（细节理解题）

A.only small groups

B.only large groups

C.small and large groups

D.small or large groups

4.What's the heading of Paragraph 3?（概括大意题）

A.Teaching

B.More information

C.Study English with us

D.Places to stay

5.You must pay for your course _____.（细节理解题）

A.at least one month before it starts

B.one month after it starts

C.when it starts

D.as soon as it starts

Ⅲ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注　　•考点应用

★The courses last for four, six or eight weeks.

① **last** /lɑːst/ *v.* 持续，延续

e.g. This good weather won't last long. 这种好天气不会持续太久。

He was the last one to leave. 他是最后一个离开的。

Who is speaking last? 谁最后一个发言?

考题在线 1 —How was the concert last night?

—It was so good.Though it _____ nearly four hours, few people left early.

A. covered　　B. reached　　C. lasted　　D. ended

点拨：用词义辨析法。cover“盖住”；reach“到达”；last“持续”；end“结束”。由语境“尽管持续了近四个小时，但几乎没有人提前离开。”可知答案。

last
- 动词
  - “持续，延续”，不用于进行时态
  - “last(for)+时间”表示“持续多长时间”
- 形容词：“最近的；最后的”，last week“上周”
- 副词：“最后；上一次，最近”

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★**…it depends on your personal choice.**

② **depend on 取决于；决定于**

e.g. The cooking time depends on the size of the potato.

烹调时间的长短取决于土豆的大小。

You can't always depend on your parents.

你不能总是依赖父母。

depend on 中的 on 也可以用 upon 代替，其后可接名词、代词等，通常不用于进行时。

depend on 还可意为"依赖，依靠"。

考题在线 2 将句子翻译成英语。

在那个时候，他别无选择，只有依靠自己。 [扬州]

_____

★**We provide books, and we set tests every week to check your progress.**

③ **provide** /prəˈvaɪd/ *v.*(***to give sth. to sb. or make it available for them to use***) **提供；供应**



e.g. The Chinese government has provided free books for students for a few years.

=The Chinese government has provided students with free books for a few years.

中国政府已经连续几年为学生提供免费课本了。

为某人提供某物

provide sth. for sb.

provide sb. with sth.

考题在线 3 将句子翻译成英语。

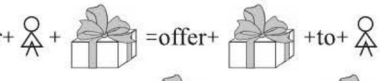
谢谢你为我们提供了这么多有趣的书籍。 [扬州]

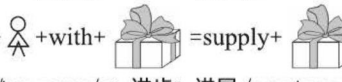
_____

拓展：表示提供的其他词的用法：

（1）give+  +to+

（2）offer 强调"主动提供"

offer+  +to+

（3）supply+  +to+

④ **progress** /ˈprəʊgres/ *n.* **进步；进展** /prəˈgres/ *v.*（**继续**）**发展，推进；搬家；改变……的位置**

e.g. The boy has made great progress this year. 这个男孩今年进步很大。

David made great progress in learning English last term.

上学期，戴维在学习英语方面取得了很大进步。

His work is progressing well. 他的工作进展得很好。

progress 不可数名词，其前常用 great, good, much, some 等词修饰。

make progress in (doing) sth. 在(做)某事方面取得进步。

progress 不及物动词，意为"(继续)发展，推进"。

考题在线 4 根据所给的中文意思完成句子。

孩子！我想知道是否你这学期已经取得了进步。 [达州]

My kid! I want to know if you have _____ _____ this term.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★Many families form close friendships with the students and stay in touch with them.

⑤ **stay in touch (with sb.)**(与某人) 保持联系，与 **keep in touch (with sb.)** 同义。

get in touch with sb. 表示"与某人取得联系"，表示动作。

e.g. Wherever you go, stay/keep in touch with me.

无论你去哪里，与我保持联系。

We will get in touch with you as soon as we know the results of the test. 我们一得知测试结果就和你联系。

考题在线 5 Today, WeChat becomes very popular, and quite a lot of people like to use it to _____ each other. [恩施]

A. get in touch with　　B. catch up with　　C. keep up with

点拨：考查动词短语辨析。由句意可知"很多人喜欢用微信彼此联系"。get in touch with 表示"与……联系"，catch up with 和 keep up with 均表示"赶上"，与语境不符。

★But if you prefer, of course, you can stay in a hotel.

⑥ **prefer** /prɪˈfɜː/ *v.*(***to choose one thing rather than sth. else because you like it better***) 更喜爱；钟爱

prefer 的过去式和过去分词均为 preferred，现在分词为 preferring。 敲黑板

e.g. He prefers walking to cycling.

相比较于骑自行车而言，他更喜欢步行。

My mother prefers apples to bananas.

与香蕉比起来，我妈妈更喜欢苹果。

I prefer to read books rather than watch TV.

我宁愿看书也不愿看电视。

知识微课

prefer
- prefer doing sth. to doing sth. 与做某事相比，更喜欢做某事
- prefer A to B 与B相比更喜欢A
- prefer to do ...rather than do... 宁愿做……也不愿做……

考题在线 6 I prefer _____ the failure rather than _____ my dream. 【导学号：9465610】[龙东]

A. experience; to give up　　B. to experience; give up

C. experiencing; giving up

点拨：考查非谓语动词的用法。prefer to do sth. rather than do sth. 表示"宁愿做某事，也不愿做某事"，符合句意"我宁愿经历失败也不愿放弃梦想"。

★You are certain to get the best possible experience of English learning and life in the US.

⑦ **certain** /ˈsɜːtn/ *adj.* 确定的；无疑的

e.g. They are certain to win the game. 他们肯定能赢得这场比赛。

It is certain that he will succeed. 他无疑将成功。

He is certain of finishing the work on time.

他有把握按时完成这项工作。

— May I go shopping with you? 我可以跟你一起去购物吗？

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

—Certainly. 当然。 副词，意为“当然，行”。

考题在线 7 完成句子。

毫无疑问，他从房子里拿走了这本书。

It _____ _____ _____ he took the book from the house.

考题在线 8 根据句意及首字母提示补全单词。

—Do you think more money should be given to education?

—C_____! I couldn't agree more. [杭州]

certain
- be certain to do sth.
  表推测，指说话人对某事有把握
- be certain+that 从句
  表示确信……
- be certain about/of (doing) sth.
  表示主语对(做)某事有把握

Do not wait — fill out our form and come to learn English in Los Angeles!

⑧ **fill** /fɪl/ *v.* 填满；填充

e.g. The boy filled his backpack with books and pencils.

那个男孩在背包里装满了书和铅笔。

The basket is filled with all kinds of fruits.

=The basket is full of all kinds of fruits.

篮子里装满了各种各样的水果。

He filled out the check for $100.

他开了一张 100 美元的支票。

- fill sth. with sth. 用……装满……
- be filled with(=be full of) 充满了
- fill out(=fill in) 填写；填充

考题在线 9 —This is an application(申请) form.Please _____ first and then come to my office.

—OK.

A. pick it out　　B. find it out

C. put it out　　D. fill it out

点拨：此题用句意推断法。A. 挑选出它；B. 找出它；C. 扑灭它；D. 填写它。根据“这是一张申请表。”可见不需要挑选出和找出，排除 A 和 B,C 与题意无关。

考题在线 10 根据汉语意思完成句子。

正如习总书记所说：“只要我们撸起袖子加油干，中国梦就一定会实现。”

[恩施]

As President Xi says, “If we are _____ _____ energies to do everything, China Dream is sure to come true.”

考题在线答案 1. C　2. At that time, he had no choice but to depend on himself.　3. Thank you for providing so many interesting books for us.　4.made progress　5. A　6. B　7. is certain that　8. Certainly　9. D　10. full of/filled with

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见269页)

一、根据句意及首字母或汉语提示写单词

1. Many visitors come to China to enjoy the ancient c_____.
2. Our country is c_____ to become stronger and stronger in the future.
3. Han Mei made great _____(进步) in learning English.
4. You have to take the _____(测验)again.
5. Parents always try to _____(提供) a comfortable environment for their children.

二、单项选择

6. How long do you think the bad weather will _____?

A. last　　B. change
C. protect　　D. stop

7. The newly-opened company _____ the local people with more chances to work. [连云港]

A. gives　　B. provides
C. offers　　D. shows

8. It's easy to make friends,but it's difficult to keep the _____ longer.

A. days　　B. friendship
C. classmates　　D. life

9. Tony is a clever boy. He prefers _____ to _____.

A. do; talk　　B. to do; talk
C. does; talk　　D. doing; talking

10. —What would you like to do to relax yourself?
—I prefer _____ basketball rather than _____magazines.

A. playing;reading　　B. to play;to read
C. play;read　　D. to play;read

三、根据汉语意思完成句子

11. 用方框中单词的适当形式填表。
_____ _____ the form with the correct form of the words in the box.

12. 现在许多国家已经与中国建立了亲密关系。
Now many countries _____ _____ _____ friendships _____ China.

13. 他们同时到达山顶。
They arrived at the top of the mountain _____ _____ _____ _____.

14. 现在人们能和遥远的朋友通过QQ或电子邮件相联系。
Now people can _____ _____ _____ with their friends far away on QQ or by e-mail.

15. 他今天至少已经走了八千米了。
He has already walked _____ _____ eight kilometres today.

四、用方框内单词或短语的适当形式填空

daily life, get, form, depend on, provide

16. Your choice _____ _____ your interest.
17. The company _____ some goods for people in need after the earthquake.
18. She likes to write down what happens every day in the _____ of dairies.
19. We are certain _____ _____there in time.
20. Water is necessary in our _____ _____. We should save it.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 3 Language in use

I. 课文原文、译文

Language practice 语言练习

When are you leaving and how long are you going to stay there?
你打算什么时候离开且呆在那儿多长时间?
It sounds crazy, but I don't know what to take. 它听起来很荒唐，但我不知道带什么。
Shorts are good, or you can wear light trousers. 短裤就合适，或者你可以穿轻薄的裤子。

1 Join the two parts of the sentences with *and*, *but* or *or*.

用 *and*, *but* 或 *or* 把句子的两部分连接起来。

1. I would like to go to England... 我想要去英国……
a) ... I have got my passport. ……我得到了我的护照。
2. You should wear a raincoat ... 你应该穿一件雨衣……
b) ... practise① my English. ……练习我的英语。
3. You can go by plane ... 你可以坐飞机去……
c) ... I can buy a new pair. ……我可以买一双新的。
4. I did not bring my sunglasses ... 我没有把我的太阳镜带来……
d) ... they must not weigh too much. ……它们一定不能太重。
5. I have bought my ticket ... 我已买我的票……
e) ... you can carry an umbrella. ……你可以携带一把雨伞。
6. You can take two bags ... 你可以带两个包……
f) ... you can take the train. ……你可以乘火车。

Now work in pairs and say the sentences. 现在结对练习并且说这些句子。

2 Complete the passage with *and*, *but* and *or*. 用 *and*, *but* 和 *or* 完成文章。

There are many English language courses all over the world.You can go to the UK (1)_____ take lessons at a language school.There are usually classes in the morning, (2)_____ in the afternoon you can go sightseeing.You can stay in a cheap hotel, (3)_____ you can stay with a family.With a family, you get a lot more speaking and listening practice, (4)_____ you may not be so close to the school or the city centre.

世界各地有许多英语语言课程。你可以去英国（1）_____在一个语言学校上课。通常在早晨有课，（2）_____在下午你可以去观光。你可以呆在一个便宜的旅馆里，（3）_____你可以和一个家庭呆在一起。和一个家庭一起，你得到更多说和听的练习，（4）_____你可能不能太靠近学校或市中心。

3 Work in pairs. 结对练习。

Student A: Say a sentence about travel. A 学生：说一个关于旅行的句子。
New York is a long way from Beijing. 纽约离北京很远。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Student B: Add to Student A's sentence with another sentence beginning with *but*.

B 学生：用另一个以 *but* 开头的句子添加到 A 学生的句子中。

But London is closer. 但是伦敦更近。

Student A: Add to Student B's sentence with another sentence beginning with *but*.

A 学生：用另一个以 *but* 开头的句子添加到 B 学生的句子中。

But the weather isn't as good as that in New York. 但是天气不如纽约那么好。

Continue to add sentences. 继续增加句子。

4 Read the advertisement. 读广告。

Want to learn about the culture in the UK? 想了解关于英国的文化?

Come and join us! 来加入我们吧!

·Let a British family teach you all about the culture in the UK. 让一户英国家庭教你所有关于英国文化的知识。

·Students study together in groups. 学生分组在一起学习。

·After-school activities for students. 学生的课外活动。

·For students from all over the world. 对来自世界各地的学生。

·Cost: £ 800 for a four-week course. 花费：一个四周的课程 800 英镑。

Now complete the sentences with the words or expression in the box.

现在用方框中的单词或短语完成句子。

come 来　cost 花费　culture 文化　progress 进步 studies 学习　take part in 参加

1. The _____ of the course is £ 800. 课程的_____是 800 英镑。
2. It is a great way to learn about British _____. 它是了解英国_____的一个极好的方法。
3. Students _____ from all over the world. 学生_____自全世界。
4. In the course, each group _____ together. 在课程中，每组在一起_____。
5. All students will be able to② _____ different activities. 所有的学生将能够_____不同的活动。
6. During the course, students will make lots of new friends—and good _____ in English! 在课程期间，学生们将交许多的新朋友——且在英语方面取得好的_____!

5 Work in pairs. Imagine that you are going to take a summer English course in Australia. Write down questions about the course. Use the words or expression in the box in Activity 4 to help you. 结对练习。设想你将去澳大利亚上暑期英语课程。写下关于课程的问题。用活动 4 方框中的单词或短语来帮助你。

How long does the course last? 课程持续多长时间?

Now ask and answer. 现在问答。

—*How long does the course last*? 课程持续多长时间?

—*It lasts for four weeks.* 它持续四周。

6 Complete the conversation with the words and expressions in the box.

用方框中的单词和短语完成对话。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

chance 机会　experience 经历　grow up 长大　information 信息　last 持续
provide 提供　take part in 参加

Mrs Smith: Excuse me. 打扰一下。

David: Yes, how can I help you? 什么事，我怎样帮助你?

Mrs Smith:I'd like to get some (1)_____ about your summer camp.
我想要得到一些关于你们夏令营的（1）_____。

David: Yes, of course.Our summer camp is a great (2)_____ for children.They learn about themselves, live close to nature and make new friends.
好的，当然。我们的夏令营对孩子们来说是一个好的（2）_____。他们了解他们自己，亲近自然且交到新朋友。

Mrs Smith: It sounds wonderful.And how long does it (3)_____?
它听起来好极了。它要（3）_____多长时间?

David: Three weeks, starting from the beginning of July. 三周，从七月初开始。

Mrs Smith: How many students are there in each group? 每组里有多少学生?

David: Eight.Through the small group size,we (4)_____ students with the chance to make new friends. 八位。通过这种小组规模，我们（4）_____学生交新朋友的机会。

Mrs Smith: That's great.And do you plan different activities? 那太好了。你们计划不同的活动吗?

David: Yes, of course.Students can (5)_____ different activities to get close to nature and try out③ new ideas. 是的，当然。学生们能够（5）_____不同的活动来亲近自然和尝试新想法。

Mrs Smith: Sounds good. 听起来是好的。

David: Yes, and it gives your child the (6)_____ to live away from home.
是的，并且它给你的孩子离开家生活的（6）_____。

Mrs Smith: That's true.Summer camping is always good to help children (7)_____.
那是真的。夏令营总是对帮助孩子们（7）_____有好处。

7 Listen and answer the questions. 听并回答问题。

课文听力7

1. Who has left the message? 谁留下这条信息?
2. Where is Wang Feng now? 现在王峰在哪儿?
3. What does he think of his American family? 他认为他的美国家庭怎么样?
4. What is his American family going to watch on the beach this afternoon?
今天下午，他的美国家庭打算在海滩上观看什么?
5. What does his American family think of the French group? 他的美国家庭认为这个法国的乐队怎么样?

8 Listen again and complete the advertisement. 再听一遍并完成广告。

This evening 今晚

Concert in the park 公园音乐会

Come and listen to some fantastic music by the group, (1)_____.They are from (2)_____.Price:(3)_____— with a (4)_____! Come and join us!
过来听一些来自乐队(1)_____的极好的音乐。他们来自(2)_____。价格:(3)_____——

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

带有一个（4）_____！来加入我们！

Around the world 环游世界

Summer camps 夏令营

Summer camps for children are very popular in many countries.In Canada and the US, some of the summer camps are in the countryside or on lakes.Children stay there for one to four weeks and sleep in cabins.They do arts and crafts, and play sports or music. Sometimes they go for long walks in forests or trips on rivers or lakes.They learn many useful outdoor skills.

在许多国家，夏令营对孩子们来说是非常受欢迎的。在加拿大和美国，一些夏令营是在乡下或在湖上举行。孩子们呆在那儿一周到四周且睡在木屋里。他们做艺术手工，进行体育活动或者演奏音乐。有时他们在森林里远足或在河上或湖面上旅行。他们学会很多有用的户外技能。

Module task:Having a class discussion about summer courses

模块任务：进行一个关于暑期课程的课堂讨论

9 **Plan what you want to say about summer courses.Think about the answers to the following questions.** 计划关于暑期课程你要说的话。考虑一下下面这些问题的答案。

·Have you ever taken a summer course? How was it? 你曾经参加过暑期课程吗？它怎么样？

·Is it better to take a summer course or do something completely different?

参加一个暑期课程更好还是做完全不同的事更好？

·Do you like taking summer courses in subjects you are not doing well in?

你喜欢在暑期课程中参加你不擅长的课程吗？

·Do summer courses make it easy to start school again in autumn? 暑期课程会使秋季再开学容易吗？

Now write two good things and two bad things about taking summer courses.

现在各写两件关于参加暑期课程好的和坏的事情。

10 **Take part in your class discussion.** 参加你们班的讨论。

·Think about what you want to say and how you want to say it. 考虑一下你想说什么及你想怎样说它。

·Speak loudly and clearly so everyone can understand what you say.

大声并清晰地说，以便大家都能明白你说的话。

·Listen politely to what the other students say and ask questions. 礼貌地听其他学生说的话并问问题。

11 **Work in pairs and write sentences describing the conclusions of the class discussion.Say if you agree or disagree with the conclusions.** 结对练习且写出句子描述班级讨论的结果。说出你是否同意或不同意讨论的结果。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

•考点应用 •考点批注

★…practise my English.

① **practise** /ˈpræktɪs/ *v.* 练习

e.g. He often practises playing the violin. 他经常练习拉小提琴。

Practice makes perfect. 熟能生巧。

考题在线 1 These foreigners are practising _____ Chinese. [遂宁]

A. to speak B. speaking C. speak D. speaks

点拨：用固定搭配法解题。practise doing sth. 意为“练习做某事”，为固定搭配。

practise：名词形式为practice，既可以作可数名词，也可用作不可数名词；其后常跟名词、代词或动名词作宾语

★All students will be able to take part in different activities.

② **be able to** 能，会

e.g. He will be able to finish reading the book next week.

他下周将能读完这本书。

【易错点】辨析：can 与 be able to

can	通常指一般性的能力，表示“有能力做某事”，can 没有人称和数的变化，且只有过去式 could。	Birds can fly. 鸟会飞。
be able to	强调在具体事件中有某种能力，表示“经过努力而成功地做成某事”，有人称和数的变化，可用于多种时态。	I'm sure the girl will be able to look after herself. 我确信这个女孩能照顾自己。



考题在线 2 Finish your homework first, and then you'll _____ surf the Internet for half an hour.

A. can B. need C. be able to D. may

★Students can take part in different activities to get close to nature and try out new ideas.

③ **try out** 试用；试验

e.g. Edison always tried out his new ideas.

=Edison always tried his new ideas out. 爱迪生总是尝试他的新想法。

That's a good idea. Let's try it out. 那是个好主意，让我们试验一下吧。

敲黑板：try out 是“动词＋副词”型短语，宾语是人称代词时，必须置于二者之间；宾语是名词时，置于 out 之前或之后皆可。

考题在线 3 I have a new idea. I want to _____.

A. try out it B. try it out C. try on it D. try it on

点拨：考查动词短语辨析。try out 试验，尝试；try on 试穿，二者都是动副型短语，当宾语是人称代词时，只能放在动词和副词之间。由前句“我有一个新想法。”可知，后句应为“我想试验一下”。

考题在线答案 1. B 2. C 3. B

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 模块语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

并列复合句

一、定义

并列复合句是指由 and, but, or 等把两个或两个以上的简单句连在一起而构成的句子。

二、知识结构

构成：简单句 + 并列连词 + 简单句

并列句分类：{表顺延　表递进　表转折 / 表对比　表选择　表因果}

考点 常见的连词的用法

考向 1：and 的基本用法

(1) 连接对等成分，当对等成分为 3 个及以上时，前面的并列成分间用“，”隔开，后两项用“and”连接。

e.g. She quickly cooked supper and cleaned the house.

她迅速地做晚饭并打扫房子。

I like tennis, golf, basketball and football.

我喜欢网球、高尔夫球、篮球和足球。

(2) 连接两个相同的词，表示反复、一再等。

e.g. The weather became hotter and hotter.

天气变得越来越热了。

(3) 前一个分句是祈使句（相当于一个条件状语从句），后一个分句表示结果时，用 and 连接。

e.g. Give me one more minute, and I'll be able to finish it. 再给我一分钟，我就能够完成它了。

考题在线 1 China is getting more and more independent of western technology,_____ it is leading in many fields, such as the self-driving car industry. [广东]

A. /　　B. or　　C. but　　D. and

点拨：句意为“中国越来越无需依赖西方国家的技术，甚至在某些领域处于领先地位，比如在汽车自动驾驶工业领域”。连词 and 表示“递进”关系。

考向 2：but 的基本用法

表转折，不能与 although, though 连用。

e.g. His home is far from school, but he is never late for school.

=Though his home is far from school, he is never late for school.

虽然他的家离学校很远，但是他上学从不迟到。

考题在线 2 She was tired, _____ she continued her work. [天津]

A. so　　B. until　　C. but　　D. that

点拨：由前面“她很累”及后面“她继续她的工作”可知前后存在一种转折关系，故用 but 引导。

考向 3：or 的基本用法

(1) 连接对等成分，表选择，意为“或，还是”；在否定句中，当要同时否定两个并列成分且共用一个否定词时用 or 连接，如用 and 连接，则要重复使用否定词。

e.g. Is your friend a boy or a girl?

你的朋友是男孩还是女孩？

A clock has no eyes or ears.

=A clock has no eyes and no ears.

时钟既没有眼睛也没有耳朵。

(2) 连接两个主语时，谓语动词与最接近的主语在数上保持一致。

e.g. You or he has taken my bike.

你或者他带走了我的自行车。

Have you or he taken my bike?

是你还是他带走了我的自行车？

(3) 前一分句是祈使句，后一分句与前一分句之间表转折，or 此时意为“否则”。

e.g. Be quiet, or you can't hear me clearly.

安静，否则你不能清楚地听见我说的话。

考题在线 3 Emily, you're playing video games again! Study hard, _____ you will fail in the coming exam. [滨州]

A. then　　B. so　　C. and　　D. or

点拨：then“然后”；so“那么”；and“并且”；or“或者；否则”。根据句意可知要用 or。

考向 4：so 的基本用法

表结果，意为“因此，所以”，不与 because 连用。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

e.g. The weather is very good, so we can have our party in the open air.
天气非常好，所以我们能在户外举办聚会。

考题在线 4 I have to study too much _____ I don't get enough sleep. [岳阳]
A. but B. so C. or

点拨：句意为“我必须学习太多东西因此得不到足够的睡眠”。表示“因此”应用 so。

考向 5：not only...but also, either... or 和 neither... nor 连接对等成分，可以是主语、谓语、宾语，也可以连接状语、补语、表语，但连接主语时，谓语动词应与最近的主语在数上保持一致。

e.g. Not only you but also he is wrong.
不但你而且他也是错的。
Either he or you are right.
要么他是对的，要么你是对的。

考题在线 5 —Why don't you get used to the life in Beijing?
—_____ the crowded traffic _____ the high living cost.The only reason is the badly polluted air. [达州]
A. Not only;but also B. Either;or
C. Both;and D. Neither;nor

点拨：考查并列连词词义辨析。not only...but also...“不但……而且……”；either...or...“或者……或者……”；both...and...“两者都”；neither...nor...“既不……也不……”。从句意可知，表示“既不是 A 也不是 B”。

小贴士：(1) 并列复合句有时可不用连词，而用分号隔开(前后句之间的关系相当紧密)。
eg: We fished all day; we did not catch a single fish. 我们钓了一整天鱼；我们一条鱼都没钓到。
(2) 并列连词后的简单句如果与其前的简单句有相同的部分，则相同的部分可省略。
eg: Snoopy lives in his own world and (Snoopy) finds real life hard to understand.
史努比生活在自己的世界里，(史努比)觉得现实生活难以理解。

考题在线答案 1. D 2. C 3. D 4. B 5. D

Ⅳ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20 分

写作小练笔

Welcome to our great summer English courses in Los Angeles. You will learn about American culture and improve your English. 欢迎并阐明学习意义

The courses last for four, six or eight weeks. They start at the end of July. Our teachers are well trained and have lots of experience. They teach English classes for four hours a day. You can work in small or large groups. We set tests every week to check your progress. You can stay as a guest with an American family or stay in a hotel. After class, you can choose to take trips to Hollywood, Disneyland or San Francisco, or you can go shopping.
介绍课程、教师、课后活动。

If you have an interest, please pay for your course at least one month before it starts and fill out our form. 介绍更多信息

模块话题

Mary 是一个正在北京学习汉语课程的交换生。她想给朋友 Judy 写一封信，谈论在北京的学习、生活等情况。假设你是 Mary，完成这封信。词数 100 左右。主要内容：

1. 你对中国风俗的认识；
2. 你在寄宿家庭的住宿情况及与寄宿家庭的交往情况

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3. 你的学习和课余生活。

Dear Judy,

_____

_____

_____

Love,

Mary

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

1. 题目要求"你"以 Mary 的身份写回信，因此主体人称为第一人称"I"。

2. 由于此信是介绍现在的学习、生活状况，故主体时态用一般现在时及现在进行时。

3. 除了提示的三点内容之外，作为书信格式，要做到首尾呼应。

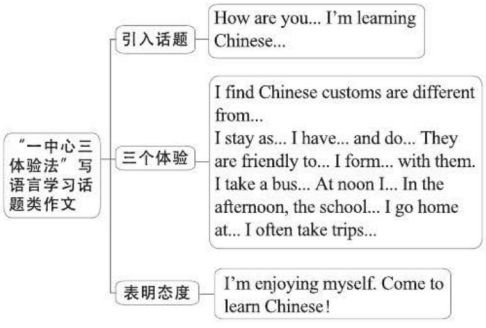
写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

"一中心三体验法"写语言学习话题类作文

一中心：以"学习汉语课程"为中心；

三体验：一是体验中国风俗；二是体验在寄宿家庭的住宿情况及与中国家庭的交往情况；三是体验学习、课余生活。

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）



经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	understanding, customs, improve, guest, friendships, organize
短语	stay as, have meals, do some activities, be friendly to, plenty of, places of interest
句子	① How are you getting on with your study? ② I find Chinese customs are different from ours.

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

Dear Judy,

How are you getting on with your study? I'm learning Chinese at a language school. I find Chinese customs are different from ours. My understanding of Chinese customs is improving.

I stay as a guest with a Chinese family. I have meals with the family and do some activities with them. They are friendly to me. I form close friendships with them.

Every day I take a bus to go to school. At noon I eat lunch at school with my classmates. In the afternoon, the school organizes plenty of activities for us. I go back home at 5 o'clock. I often take trips to many places of interest in Beijing on weekends.

I'm enjoying myself. Come to learn Chinese!

Love,

Mary

名师点评：本文用"一中心三体验法"介绍作者在中国的语言学习和生活状况，主次分明，详略得当。

第一：开篇引入话题，点明"中心"——学习汉语。

第二：重点介绍"三个体验"：体验中国不同的风俗；体验在中国寄宿家庭的生活及交往；体验在北京学习汉语及课余生活。

第三：文章最后表达作者的态度和期望，首尾呼应。

另外，作者的语言能力也较为出色，词语运用丰富、得当，如 be different from, be friendly to, enjoy oneself 等，"find+宾语从句"的合理使用也为本文添彩。



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅴ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础20分

☞(答案见269页)

一、针对性训练

1. I often hear the little girl _____ the piano in the next room.

A. practising to play　B. practise to play

C. practise playing　D. to practise playing

2. You had better _____ the machine before buying it.

A. try on　B. put on

C. come out　D. try out

3. The students practise _____ the texts aloud.

A. read　B. to read

C. reading　D. reads

4. I'm afraid I won't _____visit you on Saturday.

A. can　B. be able to

C. must　D. may

5. The parents grow old when the children _____.

A. grows up　B. grow up

C. put up　D. puts up

二、语法专练

6. It is raining heavily, _____ none of the students are late for school. [青岛]

A. although　B. but

C. so　D. because

7. —Dad, I want to be a policeman in the future.

—Work hard, _____ you will succeed. [益阳]

A. or　B. and　C. but

8. —I want to travel to the Black Bear Island next weekend.

—Good idea!Make a plan first, _____ you will enjoy more beautiful scenery.

A. but　B. and

C. however　D. or

9. Taxi apps (打车软件) can help us travel around more easily, _____ more and more people like using them.

A. or　B. so

C. because　D. but

10. _____ Lucy _____ you can't go to the party.One of you has to stay at home to look after your grandma. [呼和浩特]

A. Neither; nor　B. Either; or

C. Not only; but also　D. Both; and

三、模块知识浓缩

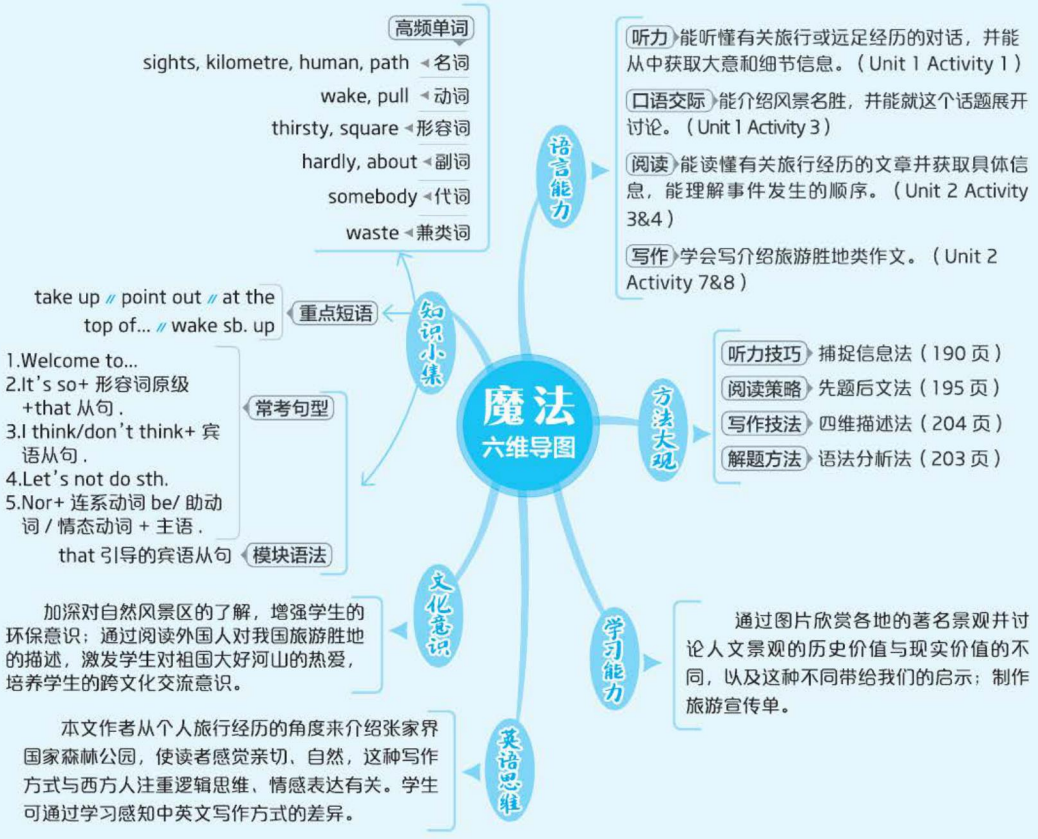
provide, at the end of, make, experience, pay for, take part in, improve, culture, at the same time, fill out

Every year, we have summer courses for foreign students.They start _____[11] July. Our teachers are well trained and we _____[12] weekly tests to see the progress you've _____[13].We also want you _____[14] life in the USA.You can live with an American family, so you can _____[15] many different kinds of after-school activities, such as doing some shopping and going sightseeing.If you're interested, please _____[16] the form and you must _____[17] the course before it begins.I'm sure you'll enjoy coming here to learn about American _____[18] and _____[19] your English _____[20].

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Module 8 Time off

词汇表听写



记忆大师

Unit 1 I can hardly believe we're in the city centre.

必背单词

1.**waste** *n.* 浪费；滥用 →*v.* 浪费；滥用 →**wasteful** *adj.* 浪费的

2.**hardly** *adv.* 几乎不；几乎没

3.**sights** *n.* （用复数）风景；名胜

4.**thirsty** *adj.* 渴的

必背短语

5.hear about 听说

6.be famous for 以……而闻名

7.point out 指出，指明

8.go for a swim 去游泳

9.come on 加油，快点

10.at the top of 在……的顶端

必背句子

11.**Here we are.** 我们到了。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

12.It's **so** quiet here **that** I can even **hear** the birds **singing**!

这儿如此安静以至于我甚至能听见鸟儿在歌唱!

13.I can **hardly believe** we're in the city centre.

我几乎不能相信我们在市中心。

14.I think **it's** better **to have** our picnic at the top of the hill.

我认为在山顶上进行我们的野餐更好。

15.**Let's** not **waste** any more time.

我们不要再浪费时间了。

Unit 2 We thought somebody was moving about.

必背单词

1.**human** *n.* 人 →**humans** *pl.*

2.**wake** *v.* 唤醒;醒来 →**woke**(过去式)→**woken**(过去分词)

3.**pull** *v.*(用手)拉,牵,扯 →**push**(反义词)

4.**square** *adj.*(表示面积单位)平方的

5.**kilometre** *n.* 千米;公里

6.**shape** *n.* 外形;形状

7.**somebody** *pron.* 某人;有人

8.**about** *adv.* 向四周;向各处

9.**path** *n.* 小路;路径

10.**freshwater** *adj.* 淡水的

必背短语

11.promise to do sth. 许诺做某事

12.wake sb.up 唤醒某人

13.move about 走来走去;四处走动

14.make noise 制造噪音

15.find out 弄清;查明

必背句子

16.**Some** of them **look like** humans **while others** look like wild animals.

它们中有些看起来像人,而另一些像野生动物。

17.But it was a pity that it was cloudy.

但是很可惜,天是阴的。

18....it was wrong **to pull** leaves **off** plants and that we **should protect** everything here.

……从植物上采摘叶子是不对的,而且我们应该保护这儿的一切。

19.Tomorrow we're going to Dongting Lake,**the second-largest freshwater** lake in China.

明天我们将去洞庭湖,中国的第二大淡水湖。

Unit 3 Language in use

必背短语

1.get lost 迷路

2.agree on 在……上达成一致

3.stay at home 呆在家

4.in the middle of the night 在半夜

5.fall asleep 入睡

6.in the end 最后

必背句子

7.We ate some cakes and I was **not** hungry **any more**.

我们吃了一些蛋糕,我不再饿了。

8.Lake District National Park is **in the north of** England.

湖区国家公园在英格兰北部。

9.**On a clear day**, you **can see** a long way from the top of the mountain.

在晴朗的日子里,你可以从山顶看得很远。

必背语法

10.I can hardly believe **we're in the city centre**.

我简直不能相信我们在市中心。

11.I don't think **they allow people to swim in the lake**. 我认为他们不允许人们在湖里游泳。

12.We thought **somebody was moving about**.

我们认为有人在周围移动。

13.Lingling's uncle said **that it was wrong to pull leaves off plants** and **that we should protect everything here.**

玲玲的叔叔说从植物上采摘叶子是不对的,而且我们应该保护这儿的一切。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 1 I can hardly believe we're in the city centre.

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

Listening and vocabulary 听力与词汇

1 Look at the photo and listen.What is the conversation about?

看图并听。这段对话是关于什么的？

课文听力1

2 Listen again and choose the correct answer. 再听并选出正确答案。

1. Tony has/hasn't heard about Beihai Park. 托尼听说过 / 没听说过北海公园。
2. Tony guesses that the park is very popular/not very popular.
   托尼猜想这个公园非常受欢迎 / 不太受欢迎。
3. Lingling suggests that they spend the day there/Daming and Betty come too.
   玲玲建议他们在那儿度过一天 / 大明和贝蒂也来。
4. Lingling thinks/doesn't think the park will be busy. 玲玲认为公园会 / 不会热闹。

3 Listen and read. 听并读。

课文朗读3

Lingling: Here we are.Welcome to① Beihai Park. 我们到了。欢迎来到北海公园。

Tony: Wow! It's so quiet here that② I can even hear the birds singing! I can hardly /hɑ:dli/③ believe④ we're in the city centre.

哇！这儿如此安静以至于我甚至能听见鸟儿在歌唱！我几乎不能相信我们在市中心。

Lingling: This park is famous⑤ for its lake, bridges and the ancient buildings on the hill.The lake takes up⑥ over half of the park area.Let's walk along the lake, cross the bridge and climb up the hill.Then I can point out⑦ the sights/saɪts/ of Beijing for you.

这个公园因它的湖、桥及山上的古代建筑而出名。这个湖占了公园一半多的面积。让我们沿着湖走，穿过桥，然后爬上山。然后我就能为你们指出北京的景点了。

Tony: Yes, good idea.I'm sure it'll be fantastic to see the city from the top.

好的，好主意。我确信从顶部看这个城市将会非常棒。

Daming: But I'm so tired, and it's so hot here.I don't want to climb.The lake looks nice and cool. Why don't we go for a swim?

但我好累，并且这儿是那么热。我不想爬了。湖看起来不错且凉爽。为什么我们不去游泳?

Lingling:I don't think they allow⑧ people to swim in the lake. It's dangerous.

我认为他们不允许人们在湖里游泳。那很危险。

Daming: That's too bad.Then why don't we have our picnic here? I'm so hungry and thirsty/'θɜ:sti/.

那太糟糕了。那么我们为什么不在这儿野餐呢? 我又饿又渴。

Lingling:I think it's better to have our picnic at the top of the hill.

我认为在山顶上进行我们的野餐更好。

Tony: Come on! Let's not waste/weɪst/⑨ any more time. 快点！我们不要再浪费时间了。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Daming: All right.I hope it will be cooler up there. 好吧。我希望上面会更凉爽些。

Everyday English 日常英语

·Here we are. 我们到了。

·Wow! 哇!

·I can hardly believe... 我几乎不能相信……

·That's too bad. 那太糟糕了。

·Come on! 快点!

Now complete the sentences about Beihai Park. 现在完成关于北海公园的句子。

1. Beihai Park is so _____ that you can even hear the birds singing.
   北海公园是如此_____以至于你甚至能听见鸟儿在歌唱。
2. The park is famous for its _____,bridges and the ancient buildings on the hill.
   公园出名是因为它的_____,桥和山上的古代建筑。
3. The lake takes up _____ of the park area. 这个湖占了公园_____的面积。
4. You can point out the _____ of Beijing from the top of the hill.
   你可以从山顶指出北京的_____。
5. They do not allow people to swim _____. 他们不允许人们_____游泳。

4 Read the sentences and answer the questions. 读句子，并回答问题。

hardly 几乎不　sights 风景
thirsty 渴的　waste 浪费

1. "I can *hardly* believe we're in the city centre." "我几乎不能相信我们在市中心。"
   Does Tony know they are in the city centre or not? 托尼知道他们在市中心，还是不知道?
2. "Then I can point out the *sights* of Beijing for you." "然后我就能为你们指出北京的景点了。"
   Does Lingling want them to look at something or listen to something?
   玲玲想让他们看看还是听听某些东西?
3. "I'm so hungry and *thirsty*." "我又饿又渴。"
   Does Daming want something to drink? 大明想喝点东西吗?
4. "Let's not *waste* any more time." "我们不要再浪费时间了。"
   Does Tony think they are spending their time well or badly? 托尼认为他们的时间过得好,还是不好?

Pronunciation and speaking 发音和会话

5 Listen and notice how the speaker pronounces the words. 听并注意说话的人怎样读这些词。

1. It's so quiet here that I can even hear the birds singing.
   这儿如此安静以至于我甚至能听到鸟儿在歌唱。
2. Let's walk along the lake, cross the bridge and climb up the hill. 让我们沿着湖走,穿过桥,然后爬上山。
3. I don't want to climb. 我不想爬。

Now listen again and repeat. 现在再听，并跟读。

6 Work in pairs.Talk about a place of interest in your home town.
结对练习。谈论你家乡的一处名胜古迹。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Student A: You're a visitor from another country. 你是来自另一个国家的来访者。

Student B: You're introducing a place of interest in your home town to student A. You can talk about: 你正在为学生 A 介绍你家乡的一处名胜古迹。你可以谈论：

·where it is 它在哪儿

·how big it is 它有多大

·how old it is 它的历史有多久

·what is special about it 它有什么特别的

·any other information you know about it 你知道的关于它的任何其他信息

Use these expressions: 用这些表达：

I guess (that)... 我猜想……

I'm sure (that)... 我确信……

I know (that)... 我知道……

I can't believe (that)... 我不能相信……

I think (that)... 我认为……

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

·考点批注

·考点应用

- welcome 作及物动词，意为"迎接；欢迎"。
- welcome 作形容词，意为"受欢迎的"。常用句型：You're welcome. 不用谢 / 别客气。
- welcome 作名词，表示"欢迎"。常用短语：give a (warm) welcome to sb./give sb. a (warm) welcome（热烈）欢迎某人

★Welcome to Beihai Park.

① welcome to+ 地点名词表示欢迎来到某地

e.g. Welcome to China! 欢迎来中国！

Hi, welcome home. 嗨，欢迎回家。

We welcome you with flowers. 我们用鲜花欢迎你。

—Thank you very much. 非常感谢你。

—You're welcome. 不用谢。

敲黑板 当 welcome 后接 here, there, home, back 等词时，介词 to 要去掉。

考题在线 1 —It's very kind of you to help me. Thank you very much.

—_____. [武汉]

A. Thank you　　B. Don't thank me

C. Sorry to help you very little　　D. You are welcome

点拨：考查情景交际。由上句"十分感谢你。"判断空格句意为"不必谢"。

★It's so quiet here that I can even hear the birds singing!

② so...that... 的用法

e.g. David is so strong that he can lift the heavy box.

→David is strong enough to lift the heavy box.

戴维如此强壮以至于他能搬动这个重箱子。

The girl is so young that she can't dress herself.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

→The girl is too young to dress herself.

→The girl is not old enough to dress herself.

这个女孩如此小以至于她不能自己穿衣服。

【易错点】辨析：so...that 与 such...that

so... that	so 后跟形容词或副词，that 后为表示结果的状语从句	It's so wonderful a match that I can't miss it. =It's such a wonderful match that I can't miss it. 它是如此精彩的一场比赛，以至于我不能错过。
such... that	such 后必须跟名词，that 后为表示结果的状语从句	

e.g. He had so little education that he was unfit for this job.

他所受教育很少，不适合做这个工作。

考题在线 2 Santaishan Forest Park is _____ beautiful that it has become a hot tourist attraction. 【导学号：9465610】[宿迁]

A. so　　B. very　　C. such　　D. quite

考题在线 3 —*Harry Potter* is _____ an interesting novel _____ I want to read it again.

— I agree with you. [咸宁]

A. so; that　　B. too; to　　C. such; that　　D. as; as

点拨：考查结果状语从句。句意为"——《哈利·波特》是如此有趣的一部小说，我想再看一遍。——我同意你的说法"。根据后面的从句可排除 B、D，根据修饰名词可知应用 such。

★ so...that... 意为"如此……以至于……"，that 后为结果状语从句。

● 当从句为肯定句时，so...that... 可以与 be...enough to do... 转换；

● 当从句为否定句时，可以与 too...to... 或 be not...enough to do... 转换。

敲黑板 如果名词被 many, much, few, little(少) 等词修饰，则名词前不用 such 而用 so。

★I can hardly believe we're in the city centre.

③ **hardly** /'hɑ:dli/ *adv.* 几乎不；几乎没

【易错点】辨析：hardly 与 hard

hardly	①是否定意义的副词。常与 ever, any, anything, anyone, anybody 等词连用。 ②通常用在实义动词之前，助动词、be 动词或情态动词之后。 ③用于反意疑问句时，反意疑问句的附加问句要用肯定形式。
hard	用作形容词，意为"艰难的；坚硬的"。
	用作副词，意为"努力地；猛烈地"。

e.g. I hardly know what to say. 我简直不知道说什么好了。

I have to work hard. 我必须努力工作。

考题在线 4 — Many products made in China are very popular in the United States.

—Yeah. Americans can _____ avoid buying Chinese products.

[荆州]

一语辨异：

I can hardly believe he is exercising hard in the yard. It's hard to exercise outside when it blows hard.

我几乎不能相信他正在院子里努力训练。当风刮得很猛烈的时候，在外面训练是很困难的。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

A. nearly　　B. mostly　　C. hardly　　D. widely

点拨：考查副词辨析。根据上文语境“中国制造的许多产品在美国非常受欢迎。”和肯定答语 Yeah 可知“美国人几乎不可能避免买中国产品”。

一语辨异：

I believe what he says but I don't believe in him.
我相信他说的话，但我不信任他。

④ **believe** /bɪ'liːv/ *v.* 相信

e.g. I believe you are right. 我相信你是对的。

辨析：believe 与 believe in

believe	相信，它是及物动词，其后直接跟宾语。	I believe what you say. 我相信你说的话。
believe in	信仰，信任。其后常跟理论、原则、概念及可信任之人。	I believe in you. 我信任你。

考题在线 5 完成句子。

When I saw so many models of places of interest in the World Park, I simply couldn't _____（相信自己的眼睛）. [连云港]

★**This park is famous for its lake, bridges and the ancient buildings on the hill.**

一语辨异：

Edison is famous as an inventor in the world, and he is famous for his inventions. He is famous to the people all over the world.
爱迪生是世界著名的发明家，他因他的发明而闻名。他为全世界的人所熟知。

⑤ **famous** /'feɪməs/ *adj.* 著名的，出名的

e.g. Egypt is famous for its pyramids. 埃及以它的金字塔而闻名。

辨析：be famous for, be famous as 与 be famous to

be famous for	“因……而出名”，后接出名的原因。
be famous as	“作为……而出名”，后跟表示职业、身份等名词。
be famous to	“为……所熟知”，后跟表示人的名词或代词。

考题在线 6 根据汉语提示完成句子。

无锡因水著名，也曾因水而困。

Wuxi _____ its water but it once had trouble because of water.

★**The lake takes up over half of the park area.**

⑥ **take up** 占去（时间或空间）

e.g. The machine takes up too much room. 这台机器太占地方。

Reading takes up all his free time. 阅读占用了他所有的空余时间。

He took up writing after graduation. 毕业后他开始从事写作。

take up 还可意为“开始从事”，后跟名词、动词的-ing 形式等作宾语。

考题在线 7 My grandmother is going to _____ a hobby like shopping on the Internet. [岳阳]

A. take up　　B. look up　　C. get up

点拨：考查动词短语辨析。句意为“我的奶奶将要开始培养一种爱好，像网上购物”。take up（尤指为消遣）学着做，开始做；look up 查阅，向上看；get up 起床。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★Then I can point out the sights of Beijing for you.

⑦ **point out** 指出；指明

【易错点】辨析：point out, point to 与 point at

point out	指出	He pointed out their mistakes. 他指出了他们的错误。
point to	侧重指方向，意为“指向”	The needle of a compass points to the north. 罗盘针指向北方。
point at	侧重指对象，意为“指着”	The teacher is pointing at the map and saying, “Here is Beijing.” 老师正指着地图说：“这儿是北京。”

考题在线 8 I guess you don't mind if I _____ your mistakes.

A. point out　　B. give out　　C. send out　　D. look out

★I don't think they allow people to swim in the lake.

⑧ **allow** /əˈlaʊ/ *v.* 允许

e.g. My mother doesn't allow me to stay out too late.

妈妈不允许我在外面呆得太晚了。

They don't allow smoking in the hospital.

他们不允许在医院里抽烟。

The young boy isn't allowed to go for a drive.

这个年轻的男孩不被准许开车兜风。

- allow sb. to do sth. 允许某人做某事
- allow doing sth. 允许做某事
- be allowed to do sth. 被允许做某事

考题在线 9 —Have you ever heard that China is building a nationwide 5G network?

—Right. 5G will allow us _____ English movies faster than ever.

[咸宁]

A. download　　B. downloads

C. to download　　D. downloading

★Let's not waste any more time.

⑨ **waste** /weɪst/ *v.* 浪费；滥用

e.g. Don't waste time on computer games. 不要在电脑游戏上浪费时间。

You can't waste too much time (in)playing games.

你不能在玩游戏上浪费太多时间。

It's a waste of time to speak to her. 和她说话是浪费时间。

- waste time/money on sth. 在……上浪费时间/金钱
- waste time/money (in)doing sth. 在做某事上浪费时间/金钱

考题在线 10 根据汉语提示完成句子。

More and more people have realized that we shouldn't _____(浪费) food.

waste 名词，意为“浪费；滥用”，常用搭配：a waste of time 浪费时间。

考题在线答案 1. D　2. A　3. C　4. C　5. believe my eyes　6. is famous for　7. A　8. A　9. C　10. waste

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

(答案见269页)

听力技巧

捕捉信息法(我们要善于捕捉重点信息并适时记录，比如记下时间、地点、人物、评论等。)

听力过程

听教材 Activity 1，选择最佳答案



1.There are _____ people in this dialogue.

A. two B. three C. five

2.Tony has heard that _____ is very beautiful.

A. Beihai Zoo B. Beihai Park

C. Weihai Park

3.Tony guesses that the park is _____.

A. very small

B. not very popular

C. very popular

4.Tony thinks that _____ will come,too.

A. Daming and Betty

B. Tom and Lucy

C. Daming and Lily

5._____ doesn't think the park will be very busy.

A. Daming B. Tony C. Lingling

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见269页)

一、根据句意及汉语提示或首字母提示完成句子

1.Can you p_____ out your father for me?

2.We're going to Paris at the weekend to see the _____(名胜).

3.At last, they climbed to the _____(顶部) of the hill.

4. I'm very_____(渴的). Could you get some water for me?

5.I don't want to _____(浪 费) my time talking with her. It's like playing the lute to a cow. [乐山]

二、用方框内单词或短语的适当形式填空

take up, be famous for, go, at the top of, point out

6.He suggested _____ by plane,but I thought it would cost too much.

7.We can enjoy the beautiful view _____ Mount Tai.

8.Playing basketball _____ most of my time.

9.When the teacher _____ our mistakes,we should correct them in time.

10.China _____ the Great Wall.

三、单项选择

11. Mo Yan is famous _____ a writer and he is also famous _____ his great works.

A. for; as B. as; for

C. for; for D. as; as

12.—Bob, this desk is _____ heavy _____ I can't move it.

—Don't worry. I'll help you.

A. such; that B. too; to

C. so; that

13. Yesterday our teacher told us that the earth _____ the sun.

A. goes around B. went around

C. is going around D. would go around

14.The lady _____ dancing as a hobby in her sixties, and she is really good at it now.

A. dressed up B. looked up

C. took up D. put up

15.It is _____ for him to get to school on time, because it is raining _____. [宜宾]

A. hard; hardly

B. hardly; hard

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

C. hard; hard

四、完成句子

16. 欢迎来到北京。

_____ _____ Beijing.

17. 我几乎不可能一天内完成这项工作。

I can _____ _____ the work in a day.

18. 这张桌子太占地方。

This table _____ _____too much room.

19. 如果你看到那个男孩，请把他指给我看。

If you see that boy, please _____ _____ _____ for me.

20. 我父母不允许我晚回来。

My parents won't _____ me _____ _____ back late.

Unit 2 We thought somebody was moving about.

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文及导读

原文译文 · 导读　　导读批注

Reading and vocabulary 阅读与词汇

Pre-reading（读前）

1. Have you ever been to Zhangjiajie?
2. What do you know about Zhangjiajie?

1 Look at the photo and write down words that can best describe it.

看图，写出最能描绘它的词。

2 Work in pairs.What do you know about Zhangjiajie?Can you answer the questions?

结对练习。你知道关于张家界的什么？你能回答这些问题吗？

1. Where is it? 它在哪?
2. How large is it? 它多大?
3. Where can you stay? 你能呆在哪儿?
4. What animals can you see? 你能看到什么动物?
5. What is the most famous thing to see? 可看的最著名的东西是什么?

3 Read the email and check your answers to Activity 2.

读这封电子邮件，检查活动 2 你的答案。

课文朗读 3

While-reading（读中）

1. Did they have a wonderful view from the top?
2. What did Sally do when they went back to their tent?
3. What are they going to do tomorrow?

FROM:Betty 来自：贝蒂

TO:Mum and Dad 寄给：妈妈和爸爸

批 主题：

本文围绕"张家界简介—野营惊奇夜—天子山之旅"展开描述，三个小话题都是张家界之行的一部分，故"Wonderful time in Zhangjiajie"是本文主旨大意。

批 体裁：应用文

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

批 文章结构：层进结构

- Para. 1 — Information about Zhangjiajie
- Para. 2 — A special experience at night
- Para. 3 — The visit to Mount Tianzi
- Para. 4 — The plan for tomorrow

批 名胜简介：

- Name — Zhangjiajie
- Location — In Hunan Province
- How large — About 480 square kilometres
- What's it like — A magic land of mountains, forests and rivers
- Be famous for — The strange shape of its tall rocks

批 故事背景及事件：

- When — last night
- Where — by a small lake
- What
  - They camped by a small lake.
  - ↓
  - They heard a noise.
  - ↓
  - The noise woke everybody up.
  - ↓
  - They came out and found a hungry monkey.

SUBJECT:Wonderful time in Zhangjiajie 主题：在张家界美好的时光

Dear Mum and Dad, 亲爱的妈妈、爸爸：

I promised ① to write, so ... 我答应写信的，所以……

We're staying with Lingling's uncle in Hunan Province, and I'm having a wonderful time here in Zhangjiajie.It's a magic land of mountains, forests and rivers.It's very large, about 480 square/skweə/ kilometres/ˈkɪləˌmiːtəz/.It's famous for the strange shape/ʃeɪp/ of its tall rocks.Some of them look like humans/ˈhjuːmənz/ ② while ③ others look like wild animals.

我们正和玲玲的叔叔呆在湖南省，而且我在张家界这儿正过得非常愉快。它是一片拥有山脉、森林和河流的神奇的土地。它很辽阔，大约 480 平方公里。它因高大岩石的奇怪形状而出名。它们中有些看起来像人，而另一些像野生动物。

Last night we camped by a small lake.During the night, we heard a noise! It woke/wəʊk/ everybody up ④.We thought somebody /ˈsʌmbədi/ ⑤ was moving about/əˈbaʊt/.Lingling's uncle said it was an animal.We came out without making any noise, and found it was just a hungry monkey looking for food.

昨晚我们在一个小湖边野营。在晚上，我们听到一个响声！它把每个人都吵醒了。我们认为有人在周围移动。玲玲的叔叔说它是一只动物。我们悄无声息地出来，发现只是一只饥饿的猴子在觅食。

This morning, we climbed Mount Tianzi! From the top we hoped to see the lakes and forests.But it was a pity that it was cloudy.We could only see the mountain tops above ⑥ the clouds.Then we walked down the path/pɑːθ/ ⑦, along a river, past trees and other plants and back to the camp. I pulled/pʊld/ ⑧ a leaf off a plant, but Lingling's uncle said that it was wrong to pull leaves off plants and that we should protect everything here. I was very sorry.

今天早晨，我们爬了天子山！从山顶，我们希望看到湖泊和森林。但是很可惜，天是阴的。我们只能看到云上的山顶。然后我们顺着小道，沿着河流，路过树林和其他的植物回到野营地。我从一棵植物上采摘下一片叶子，但玲玲的叔叔说从植物上采摘叶子是不对的，而且我们应该保护这儿的一切。我很抱歉。

Tomorrow we're going to Dongting Lake, the second-largest freshwater/ˈfreʃˌwɔːtə/ lake in China.We'll be back home next week! Wish you were here!

明天我们将去洞庭湖，中国的第二大淡水湖。下个星期我们将回家！真希望你们在这里！

Love, 爱你们的，

Betty 贝蒂

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Post-reading（读后）

写作小练笔

☞（答案见204页）

Learning to learn 学会学习

Read and find out how Betty starts and finishes her email to her mum and dad.Next time when you write your email, you can start and finish the email in the same way.

阅读，并找出贝蒂写给她妈妈、爸爸的电子邮件是怎样开始和结束的。下一次当你写电子邮件时，你就能以同样的方式开始和结束邮件了。

4 Number the sentences in the correct order. 按正确的顺序标出这些句子。

a) Betty pulled a leaf off a plant. ☐

贝蒂从一棵植物上采摘了一片叶子。

b) The noise woke everybody up. ☐

响声把每个人都吵醒了。

c) They climbed Mount Tianzi. ☐

他们爬天子山。

d) A monkey made some noise. ☐

一只猴子发出一些响声。

e) They camped by a small lake. ☐

他们在一个小湖边野营。

f) Lingling's uncle said that people should protect everything in Zhangjiajie. ☐

玲玲的叔叔说人们应该保护张家界的每一样东西。

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in the box.

用方框中单词的正确形式完成句子。

human 人	kilometre 公里	path 小路
shape 形状	wish 希望	

1. Are there rocks in _____ or animal _____ in your home town?

在你家乡有_____或动物_____的岩石吗?

2. How many _____ is Zhangjiajie from your home town? 张家界离你的家乡多少_____?

3. Is it safer to walk along a _____ or climb over rocks?

沿着一个_____走更安全还是爬过岩石更安全?

4. Where do you _____ you were right now? 你_____你此刻在哪儿?

6 Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions in Activity 5.

结对练习。问和答活动5中的问题。

Writing 写作

7 Read the information about Zhangjiajie. 读关于张家界的信息。

How large is it? 它多大？	about 480 square kilometres 大约 480 平方公里
Where is it? 它在哪儿？	about 400 kilometres from Changsha 离长沙大约 400 公里

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

What can you see? 你能看到什么？	mountains, rivers, forests, many kinds of plants and animals 山脉，河流，森林，很多种类的植物和动物
What is special? 什么是特别的？	strange shape of tall rocks, beautiful sights 高大岩石的奇怪形状，美丽的风景
Where can you sleep? 你能在哪儿睡觉？	hotels or camps 旅馆或营地

Now decide which is more personal, Betty's email or the information in this table.

现在决定哪个更个人化，贝蒂的电子邮件还是这个表格中的信息。

8 Choose the most important or interesting facts about Zhangjiajie and write a passage about it. 选择关于张家界最重要的或最有趣的事实，并且写一篇有关它的文章。

Zhangjiajie is about 480 square kilometres.It is about 400 kilometres from...

张家界大约 480 平方公里。它离……大约 400 公里。

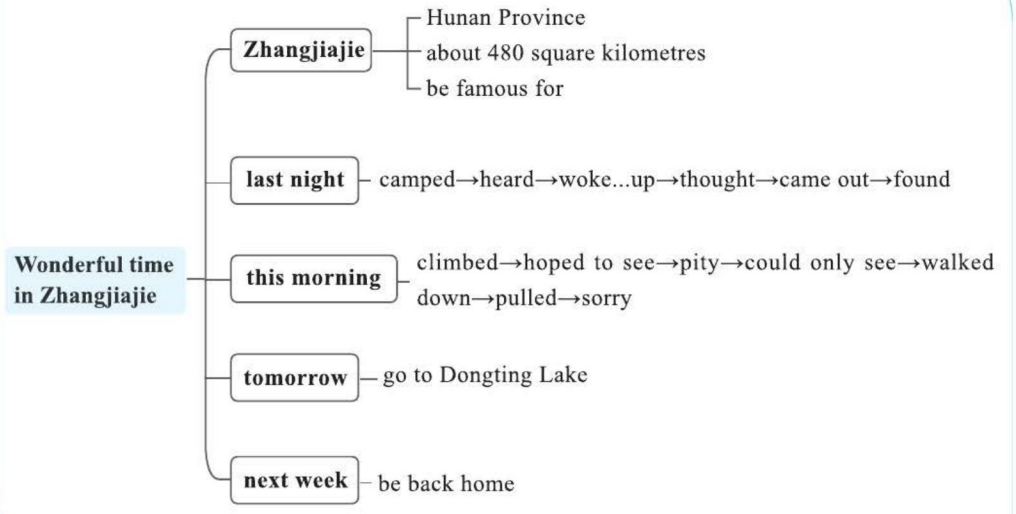
核心素养之文化意识

探索奇观（wonders）之美

世界各地有大量像张家界、黄山（*the Yellow Mountain*）、大峡谷（*Colorado Grand Canyon*）这样的自然奇观和金字塔（*the Pyramids*）、长城（*the Great Wall*）这样的人工奇观。我们可以感受奇观带给我们的震撼，体会它们的壮观。

我们要多出去走走进行探索，增强我们的认识，深化对这些奇观的体验。我们要爱护和保护这些奇观，让它们永远成为人类的宝贵资源。

课文背诵指南



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读60分

(答案见269页)

阅读策略

先题后文法（做阅读理解时，如果文章太长或是不易理解，可以先把文章后面的问题看一遍，然后带着问题去看文章。这样可以做到有的放矢，提高做题速度和准确性。）

拓展阅读

阅读过程

一、速读文章，回答下列问题

1. What's the main sentence of this passage?

（主旨大意题）

_____

二、细读文章，完成下列题目

2.Zhangjiajie is very large, about _____.

（细节理解题）

A. 48 square kilometres

B. 48 kilometres

C. 480 square kilometres

D. 480 kilometres

3.Zhangjiajie is famous for _____.

（细节理解题）

A.the strange shape of its tall rocks

B.its beautiful mountains

C.its forests

D.its rivers

4. ⊙ We heard a noise of _____.

（归纳推断题）

A. a bear　　B. somebody

C. a wolf　　D. a hungry monkey

5.It was _____ when we climbed Mount Tianzi this morning.（细节理解题）

A. sunny　　B. cloudy

C. raining　　D. windy

Ⅲ. 考点精讲点拨 稳拿中考基础20分

•考点应用　　•考点批注

★I promised to write, so…

① **promise** /ˈprɒmɪs/ *v.* 允诺，许诺

e.g. Can you promise to finish the job in time?

你能保证及时完成这项工作吗?

My father promised us a journey abroad. 我父亲许诺我们去海外旅行。

I promise that I'll pay you back soon. 我发誓会尽快还你钱。

考题在线1 根据汉语提示完成句子。

当爸爸承诺给我买一个iPad的时候，我多么激动啊!

When my father _____ to buy me an iPad, _____ excited I was!　[眉山]

- promise (not) to do sth. 许诺(不)做某事
- promise sb. sth. 许诺某人某物
- promise +that 答应……

★ promise 可数名词，意为"允许，诺言"。相关短语：

- keep a promise 遵守诺言
- make a promise 许诺
- break a promise 违背诺言
- carry out a promise 履行诺言

★Some of them look like humans while others look like wild animals.

② **human** /ˈhjuːmən/ *n.* 人

human 与 human being 同义，其复数形式为 humans。

e.g. Dogs can hear much better than humans.

狗的听觉比人灵敏得多。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Humans can think and talk. 人能思考和说话。

考题在线 2 根据句意及汉语提示写出单词。

Wolves will not usually attack _____（人，人类）.

③ **while** /waɪl/ *conj.* **而；却**

e.g.There's plenty of rain in the southeast, while there's little in the northeast. 东南部雨量充足，而东北部则很少下雨。

While he was reading, I was writing. 当他在读书时，我在写字。

考题在线 3 Tony was drawing a picture _____ I was doing my homework. [天津]

A. if　　B. because　　C. while　　D. until

点拨：考查连词用法。由 was drawing 和 was doing 可发现是两个过去进行时的动作，因此可以选用 while 连接，构成含时间状语从句的复合句。

while 此处用作连词，意为"而；却"，表示前后对照。

while 用作从属连词，意为"当……的时候"，引导时间状语从句，从句中谓语动词一般是延续性的，所以常引导进行时。

★It woke everybody up.

敲黑板 wake 的过去式为 woke，过去分词为 woken。

④ **wake up 唤醒；叫醒**

e.g.The dog woke up the children. 那条狗把孩子们吵醒了。

Don't wake him up. 不要叫醒他。

I wake up at 6 o'clock almost every morning. 我几乎每天早上 6 点醒来。

知识微课

考题在线 4 _____, Bill! It's time to go to school. [巴中]

A. Wake up　　B. Look up　　C. Make up

点拨：考查动词短语辨析。wake up 醒来；look up 查阅，抬头看；make up 组成，编造。由下句"该上学了"可知是叫 Bill"醒醒"。

wake up 是"动词＋副词"型短语，名词作宾语时，放在 up 之前或之后均可；人称代词作其宾语时，要放在 wake 和 up 中间。

wake up 还意为"醒来"，为不及物动词短语，不接宾语。

★We thought somebody was moving about.

⑤ **somebody** /ˈsʌmbədi/*pron.* **某人；有人**

e.g.There's somebody in the room. 房间里有人。

Somebody wants to see you. 有人想见你。

考题在线 5 —Our classroom is so clean. Who's cleaned it, Li Fei?

—Sorry, I don't know. I think _____ did it before class.

A. somebody　　B. nobody　　C. everybody　　D.anyone

点拨：考查不定代词。somebody 某人，有人；nobody 没有人；everybody 每个人，大家；anyone 任何人。由上句推断用 somebody。

somebody 不定代词，相当于 someone。

somebody 作主语时，谓语动词用单数形式。

somebody=someone 某人

anybody=anyone 任何人

everybody=everyone 每个人

nobody 没有人

★We could only see the mountain tops above the clouds.

⑥ **above** /əˈbʌv/ *prep.* **在……上面，反义词为 below。**

【重点】辨析：above, over 与 on

above	表示一物在另一物的上方，不一定是正上方，两者不接触，反义词是 below。
over	表示一物在另一物的正上方，两者不接触，反义词是 under。

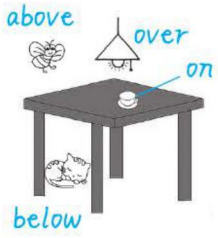
关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

on	表示一物在另一物的表面上，强调两者接触。

e.g.The plane was flying above the clouds. 飞机在云层上方飞行。

There is a bridge over the river. 河上有座桥。

There is a cup on the table. 桌上有个杯子。



考题在线 6 根据汉语提示完成句子。

它带你到离泰晤士河河面 135 米的高空。

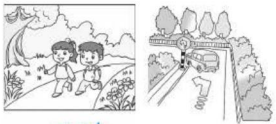
It takes you 135 metres _____ River Thames.

★Then we walked down the path, along a river, past trees and other plants and back to the camp.

⑦ **path** /pɑːθ/ *n.* 小路；路径

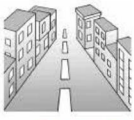
e.g.Mr Brown went through the garden path to knock on the door.

布朗先生穿过花园小径去敲门。



辨析：path, road 与 street

path	指未经开凿，通过踩踏而自然形成的小路。
road	指城市间的大路或乡村小路。
street	指城市或村镇中两旁有建筑的路。



考题在线 7 选词填空（road/streets/path）。

(1)We follow the _____ through the woods.

(2)An old man is walking along the country _____ with his grandson happily.

(3)There are many _____ in the city,so the strangers are often lost.

★I pulled a leaf off a plant...

⑧ **pull** /pʊl/ *v.* （用手）拉，牵，扯，其反义词是 **push**（推）。



e.g.Pull the door open for the old man,please. 请替老人把门拉开。

You push and I'll pull. 你推，我拉。

考题在线 8 根据汉语意思完成句子。

如果我们齐心协力，我们的中国梦一定可以实现。（pull） [黄冈]

If we all _____ _____, our China Dream is sure to come true.

- pull down 摧毁；拆毁
- pull out 使离开；拔出
- pull about 把……拖来拖去
- pull together 齐心协力

考题在线答案 1. promised; how 2. humans 3. C 4. A 5. A 6. above 7. (1)path (2)road (3)streets 8. pull together

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

☞(答案见269页)

一、根据汉语提示完成句子

1.The clouds in the sky have many _____(形状).

2.There're several _____(小路)from the river to the small house.

3._____(人)and animals should be good friends.

4.I _____(答应) never to lie to you from now on.

5.The fire destroyed 4,000 square _____(公里) of the forest.

二、单项选择

6.—What are you doing?

—I'm _____ the key to the door.

A. looking out B. looking after

C. looking for D. finding

7.Fish can't live _____ water.

A. with B. in

C. without D. of

8.—Come home before dinner time,Peter!

—I _____, Mom. [武汉]

A. promise B. guess

C. wish D. admire

9.Water is important to _____,so there are many water festivals around the world.

A. everybody B. nobody

C. somebody D. something

10.Mum,can you _____ at 8:00 tomorrow morning?

A. wake up I B. wake I up

C. wake up me D. wake me up

三、根据汉语意思完成句子

11. 当你在森林里迷路的时候不要到处走来走去。

Don't _____ _____ when you are lost in the forest.

12. 我们不应该从树上拽叶子。

We shouldn't _____ the leaves _____ the trees.

13. 大家都说(这对)双胞胎看上去像他们的爸爸。

Everyone says that the twins _____ _____ their father.

14. 你不付房租就不能住在这里。

You cannot live here _____ _____ the rent.

15. 黄河是中国第二长河。

The Yellow River is _____ _____ river in China.

四、用所给单词的适当形式填空

16. She says that she _____(be) in this school for five years.

17. I asked him if he _____(come) tomorrow.

18. The boy promises _____(study) hard at English from now on.

19. Betty left without _____(say) a word.

20. I was doing my homework while my mother _____(clean) the room.



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 3 Language in use

I. 课文原文、译文

Language practice 语言练习

I can hardly believe we're in the city centre. 我简直不能相信我们在市中心。
I don't think they allow people to swim in the lake. 我认为他们不允许人们在湖里游泳。
We thought somebody was moving about. 我们认为有人在周围移动。
Lingling's uncle said that it was wrong to pull leaves off plants and that we should protect everything here. 玲玲的叔叔说从植物上采摘叶子是不对的，而且我们应该保护这儿的一切。

1 Match the two parts of the sentences.There may be more than one possibility.

把句子的两部分配对。可能有不止一种可能。

1. I think (that) ... 我认为……	a)... we can go out alone at night. ……我们晚上能够单独出去。
2. He says (that) ... 他说……	b)... he almost① got lost② in the forest. ……他差点儿在森林里迷了路。
3. She is sure (that) ... 她确信……	c) ... we should stay together. ……我们应该呆在一起。
4. They do not believe (that) ... 他们不相信……	d) ... the park is over 500 years old. ……这个公园有 500 多年的历史。
5. We know (that) ... 我们知道……	e) ... we will see better from up there. ……从上面那儿我们将看得更好。

2 Complete the passage with the correct form of the words and expression in brackets.

用括号中单词和词组的正确形式完成这篇文章。

I want to go on a trip with my family in the summer holiday, but I do not think we (1)_____(agree) on where to go.I think that we should (2)_____ (go) to the beach but Mum and Dad say they (3)_____ (want) to go to the countryside.Danny/ˈdæni/ is sure that the beach and the countryside (4)_____(be) boring.He wants to go to a big city and do sightseeing.Milly /ˈmɪli/ doesn't think that sightseeing (5)_____ (be) interesting.She wants to stay at home and watch TV or go swimming.I tell my family that we (6)_____(have to) decide soon because the holiday starts next week!

我想在暑假和我的家人去旅行，但我认为我们在去什么地方上意见不（1）_____（同意）。我认为我们应该（2）_____（去）海滩，但妈妈和爸爸说他们（3）_____（想要）去乡村。丹尼确信海滩和乡村（4）_____（是）无聊的。他想去大城市观光。米莉认为观光不（5）_____（是）有趣的。她想呆在家里，看电视或去游泳。我告诉我的家人我们（6）_____（不得不）很快决定因为下个星期假期就要开始了！

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the expressions in the box.

用方框里词组的正确形式完成句子。

famous for 因……著名　not... any more③不再
point out 指出　wake up 醒来

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

1. My uncle _____ the monkey in the tree next to us. 我叔叔_____我们旁边树上的猴子。

2. We ate some cakes and I was _____ hungry _____.

我们吃了一些蛋糕，我_____饿_____。

3. I _____ in the middle of the night and could not fall asleep again.

我在午夜_____，再也睡不着了。

4. The town is _____ its cheese. 这个城镇_____它的奶酪。

4 Complete the passage with the correct form of the words in the box.

用方框中单词的正确形式完成这篇文章。

air 空气　along 沿着　bird 鸟　clear 纯净的　climb 爬
cross 横过　quiet 安静的　shout 叫喊

It was early in the morning.The park was very (1)_____ and the only sound was the (2)_____ singing.There was no one (3)_____ nor[4] were any dogs barking.The sun was very bright and the (4)_____ was very (5)_____ and fresh.We walked (6)_____ the lake, (7)_____ the small bridge and (8)_____ up the hill.We felt very happy at the top.

一大清早，公园很 (1)_____，唯一的声音是 (2)_____歌唱。没有人 (3)_____，也没有狗叫。阳光灿烂，并且 (4)_____是非常 (5)_____和新鲜的。我们 (6)_____湖散步，(7)_____小桥并 (8)_____上了山。在顶上我们感到很愉快。

5 Listen and complete the notes. 听并且完成笔记。

课文听力5

Holiday plan:_____ 假期计划：_____

Number of people:_____ 人数：_____

Things to take:_____ 要带的东西：_____

Where to sleep:_____ 在哪里睡觉：_____

What to eat:_____ 吃什么：_____

6 Read and match the people with the best clubs for them.

阅读并把人和最适合他们的俱乐部配对。

课文朗读6

1. Welcome to our photo club! 欢迎到我们的摄影俱乐部!

Do you like taking photos? Would you like to learn more about how to take good photos? Or how to make them better? Come to our photo club on Thursday evening and find out.

你喜欢拍照吗？你想学到更多关于怎样拍出好照片的知识吗？或怎样使它们更好？周四晚上到我们的摄影俱乐部来吧，(你就会) 找出答案。

2. Dance to the music of the world! 随着世界的音乐起舞!

Have you ever listened to music from Africa or South America? Do you like American pop or rock? And do you like to dance? If you love listening to music from countries all around the world, come along every Wednesday evening — listen to new songs and learn how to dance.

你曾听过来自非洲或南美洲的音乐吗？你喜欢美国的流行音乐或摇滚乐吗？你喜欢跳舞吗？假如你喜欢听来自世界各国的音乐，每周三晚上来吧——听新歌，并学怎样跳舞。

3. Film night 电影之夜

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Tuesday night is film night! Come and watch the latest films,enjoy them with your friends, talk about them ... all without going to a cinema in the city centre.

周二晚上是电影之夜！来看最新的电影，和你的朋友们欣赏它们，谈论它们……所有这些事都不需要去市中心的电影院。

A Jack plays the guitar really well, but he would like to play with some other people.He also likes dancing, but has no one to dance with.

杰克弹吉他弹得真好，但他想和其他的一些人一块儿弹。他也喜欢跳舞，但没有舞伴。

B Annie/ˈæni/ has just received a new camera for her birthday, but she does not know how to use it, and would like to learn more.

安妮刚因为她的生日收到一台新的照相机，但她不知道怎么用它，并愿意学更多。

C Dan/dæn/ usually spends his evening watching films on television and DVDs.He lives a long way from the city centre, and his parents would like him to make some new friends.

丹通常通过电视和数字影碟看电影来度过晚上，他住得离市中心很远，他的父母想要他交些新朋友。

Around the world 世界各地

Lake District National Park 湖区国家公园

Lake District National Park is in the north of England.It is England's biggest national park.It is very beautiful, with hills, lakes and forests.Most visitors enjoy walking around the lakes or climbing up the mountains.The highest mountain in England is in Lake District National Park.On a clear day, you can see a long way from the top of the mountain.Walkers have to be careful because the weather can change suddenly, especially in the mountains.The Lake District is popular with artists who like to paint the beautiful countryside.Many English poets have written poems about the beautiful landscape, and these poems have made the Lake District even more famous.

湖区国家公园在英格兰北部。它是英格兰最大的国家公园。它有山峦、湖泊和森林，非常美丽。大多数游客喜欢在湖边散步或爬山。英格兰最高的山峰在湖区国家公园。在晴朗的日子里，你可以从山顶看得很远。步行者必须小心，因为天气会突然变化，尤其是在群山中。湖区很受那些喜欢画美丽乡村的艺术家喜爱。许多英国诗人写了有关它美丽的风景的诗，这些诗甚至使湖区更有名。

Module task:Writing a leaflet for a trip 模块任务：为旅行写一个小册子

7 Work in pairs.Think about a holiday trip to a place of interest and answer the following questions. 结对练习。思考一下去一个名胜古迹的一次假期旅行，并回答下列问题。

· Where is it? 它在哪儿?

· What can you do there? 你们在那里能做什么?

· When can you go? 你们什么时候可以去?

· How many people are there in each group? 每组有多少人?

· How long will you stay? 你们将呆多长时间?

· What have people said about their trip to the place? 人们对于到此地的旅行说了些什么?

8 Write a leaflet for the trip.Use your answers to the questions in Activity 7 and the language

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

points below to help you. 为这次旅行写个小册子。运用你在活动 7 中的问题的回答及下面的语言点来帮助你。

Come to...for your holiday. 来……度假。

You can... 你可以……

You will be in a group of... people. 你将在一个……人的组。

You will stay for... days. 你将呆……天。

Many people have said that the trip is very enjoyable.
很多人说这次旅行是非常令人愉快的。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注　　•考点应用

★... he almost got lost in the forest.

almost 修饰动词，通常放在实义动词之前，系动词、助动词或情态动词后，还修饰形容词、副词等。

① **almost** /ɔ:lməʊst/ *adv.* 几乎，差不多

e.g. I almost dropped the plate. 我差点儿把盘子掉了。

Dinner is almost ready. 饭差不多做好了。

考题在线 1 Millie _____ missed the train this afternoon. It started to leave right after she got on it. [南京]

A. almost　　B. already　　C. really　　D. seldom

点拨：考查副词辨析。almost 几乎，差一点；already 已经；really 真的，确实；seldom 很少。根据下句可知，米莉事实上是赶上火车了，只是差一点没有赶上。

② **get lost** 迷路

get lost 相当于 lose one's way。get 作连系动词，与过去分词连用，构成系表结构，表示状态的变化。

e.g. I seem to get lost. I don't know where to go.

我似乎迷路了。我不知道往哪儿走。

考题在线 2 警方说昨天傍晚在山里迷路的那位登山者今天早上被找到了。(get)

The police say _____ this morning. [襄阳改编]

★not...any more

③ **not...any more** 不再……

- not...any more=no more 侧重于做事的次数或事物在数量、程度上不再增加。
- not... any longer=no longer 侧重于动作在时间方面不再延续。

e.g. You won't see him any more.=You will see him no more.

你再也不会看见他了。

We are not children any longer.=We are no longer children.

我们不再是孩子了。

考题在线 3 根据汉语意思完成句子。

请不要再嘲笑你的同学了。你应该与他们和睦相处。 [淮安]

Please don't _____ _____ your classmates _____ _____. You should get along well with them.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★There was no one shouting nor were any dogs barking.

④ **nor** /nɔ:(r)/ *conj.* 也不，意思同 **neither**。

nor/neither 位于句首时引起句子倒装，注意句子的主语无论是名词还是代词，都要用倒装语序，其中的助动词要和前文保持一致。

e.g. I can't speak Japanese, nor/neither can she. 我不会说日语，她也不会。

I don't like to go shopping, nor/neither does my father.

我不喜欢购物，我父亲也不喜欢。

考题在线 4 —I'd love to go hiking with you, but I have much homework to do.

—If you don't go, _____.

A. so do I　　B. nor will I

C. so will I　　D. neither am I

点拨：空格承接前文的否定意义，用 neither 或 nor 引起倒装，表示“也不”；If 引导的条件状语从句中用了一般现在时，主句应用表示将来时态的助动词 will。

考题在线答案　1. A　2. the climber who got lost in the mountain yesterday evening was found　3. laugh at; any more　4. B

Ⅲ. 模块语法沙龙　夺取中考语法满分

that 引导的宾语从句

宾语从句是指在句子中充当宾语的从句，在主句与从句之间有一个引导词。这里我们首先注意 that 引导的宾语从句。



速记小筏：that 引导的宾语从句记忆歌诀 宾语从句三注意，时态、语序、引导词，主句若是过去时，主从时态要一致。宾从表达是真理，只用一般现在时。还有一点要说明，陈述语序要记清。

考点 1 that 引导的宾语从句的来源

考向：that 引导的宾语从句由陈述句转化而来。

e.g. He says.He is listening to the weather report.→He says (that) he is listening to the weather report. 他说他正在听天气预报。

(1) 主句的谓语动词是 think，hear，hope，wish，know，say 等时，常接 that 引导的宾语从句。

e.g. I hope (that) he will be fine soon.

我希望他很快好起来。

(2) 主句由“系动词 + 形容词”构成的“系表”结构，常接 that 引导的宾语从句。这类形容词有 happy，glad，pleased，sad，afraid 等。

e.g. I'm afraid (that) he can't come.

恐怕他不能来了。

考题在线 1 I know _____ I promised to take you to dinner, but I won't finish working until ten o'clock.

A. that　　B. if　　C. whether　　D. how

点拨：此题用语法分析法。宾语从句不缺少句子成分，也不含疑问意义，故用 that 引导。

考点 2 that 引导的宾语从句的运用

考向 1：that 引导的宾语从句要用陈述语序，即“主语 + 谓语 + 其他”。

e.g. The radio is too noisy.Do you think so?

（合并成主从复合句）

→Do you think(that)the radio is too noisy?

你认为收音机太吵吗?

考题在线 2 We are all pleased _____ you can come.

A. what　　B. which

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

C. that　　D. whether

点拨：从句为陈述事实，故引导词应用 that。

考向 2：that 引导的宾语从句时态应注意

主句用一般现在时，从句可以用符合句意要求的任一时态。	He says （that） they have returned already. 他说他们已经回来了。
如果主句用一般过去时，从句要用过去的某种时态。	He said （that） he bought a new dictionary. 他说他买了本新词典。
如果从句表达的是客观事实或真理，尽管主句用一般过去时，从句也要用一般现在时。	Our teacher told us that the earth is round. 我们老师告诉我们，地球是圆的。

考题在线 3 We all know that light _____ faster than sound.　[天水]

A. travels　　B. to travel

C. travelling　　D. travelled

点拨：考查宾语从句的时态。句意为“我们都知道光比声音传播得快”。“光比声音传播得快”是一个客观事实。故宾语从句要用一般现在时。

考向 3：that 引导的宾语从句的否定转移

当主句的主语是第一人称（I, we），而且谓语动词是 think, guess, believe, suppose 等时，如果宾语从句要表达否定意思，一般会否定主句，而不否定从句，即“否定前移”。

e.g. I don't think that the girl can do the work alone. 我认为这个女孩自己做不了这份工作。

I don't believe that he is right. 我认为他不对。

考题在线 4 按要求完成句子。

He won't come. I think.（改为宾语从句）

I _____ think he _____ come.

考题在线答案　1. A　2. C　3. A　4. don't; will

Ⅳ. 写作一课一法　夺取中考写作 20 分

写作小练笔　介绍张家界

I'm having a wonderful time in Zhangjiajie. It's famous for the strange shape of its tall rocks.

Last night we camped by a small lake. During the night, a noise woke everybody up. We thought somebody was moving about. At last, we found it was just a hungry monkey looking for food.

介绍“a special experience at night”

介绍天子山之旅

This morning we climbed Mount Tianzi. It was a pity that we could only see the mountain tops above the clouds. But I got the idea that we should protect everything there on the way to the camp. And tomorrow we're going to Dongting Lake — the second-largest freshwater lake in China.

模块话题［茂名］　介绍明天游览计划

暑假期间，越来越多的外国人到中国旅游。请你用英语写一篇短文，向外国游客简单介绍一下中国的情况，内容包括：

1. 对外国游客表示热烈欢迎；
2. 中国地域辽阔，南北气候差别大；
3. 旅游景点众多，高山大河，美丽如画；
4. 人口众多，国家日益强大；
5. 人民勤劳、善良，热爱和平。

写作要求：

1. 信息完整，内容合理。
2. 句子结构正确，篇章结构连贯，词数不少于 80。
3. 文中不能出现真实姓名和学校名称。

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

1. 注意时态根据具体情况而定。

2. 在介绍中国的基本情况时，要注意句式的多样化，正确运用描述形态、表达情感的形容词。

写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

“四维描述法”写特定环境介绍类作文

四维描述法（一印象二景物三人文四情感）

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）

“四维描述法”写特定环境介绍类作文	
一印象	① It is the most famous… ② It is well known for… ③ The symbol of the country is…
二景物	① You can see many trees and flowers covering the… ② A path leads to the top of… ③ It seems as if we were in the heaven…
三人文	① People here are friendly and kind-hearted… ② It has a very long history… ③ Thousands of years ago… ④ There is a moving story about the mountain and the lake…
四情感	① Welcome to my hometown… ② We are doing our best to make it better and better… ③ I love the city and its kind people… ④ I can never forget the days spent in the…

经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	famous, pleasant, beautiful, hard-working, wild, story, fantastic, wonderful...
短语	lead to, on both sides of the river..., friendly and kind-hearted, have a long history, thousands of years ago, a moving story about...
句子	① It is well known as/for... ② It is popular with... ③ It has a population of... ④ The symbol of the country is...

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

Ladies and gentlemen, you're warmly welcomed to China. Now let me tell you something about the country.

China is so large that its climates are quite different from the north to the south. There are many wonderful scenic spots.The high mountains and long rivers are as beautiful as delightful pictures.China has the largest population in the world and she is becoming stronger and stronger.Chinese people love peace and they are kind and hard-working.

I'm sure you will have a good trip in the country.

名师点评：本文运用了“四维描述法”介绍了中国的基本情况。

一、印象：China is so large that its climates are quite different from the north to the south.

二、景物：The high mountains and long rivers are as beautiful as delightful pictures.

三、人文：Chinese people love peace and they are kind and hard-working.

四、情感：I'm sure you will have a good trip in the country.

添彩点：1. 使用 so...that，many 描述中国之大、之美，增添了文章的感情色彩。2.as...as，largest 和 stronger and stronger 的灵活运用，充分显示出作者娴熟的语言运用能力。

及测听试力卷



世界对于我没有不可能

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅴ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础20分

(答案见269页)

一、针对性训练

1.They all agreed _____ Laura about building a museum here.

A. on　　B. with

C. to　　D. in

2.Mr White _____ work in our school _____.

A. not; any more　　B. doesn't; no longer

C. doesn't; any longer　　D. doesn't; no more

3. —Would you like tea or coffee?

—_____. I'd like some hot water.

A. Either　　B. Neither

C. Both　　D. Another

4.It's easy to _____ in a big city if you don't have any maps or smartphones!

A. lose　　B. get lost

C. lost　　D. get lose

5.I _____ beautiful flowers from Mike just now,but I don't want to _____ them.

A. receive;accept　　B. accept;receive

C. received;accept　　D. accepted;receive

二、语法专练

6.Which of the following sentences has an object clause? [南京]

A. His mother called him Robbie when he was a baby.

B. On Mars you might see people who wear special boots.

C. Mr Green tells us that we'd better use the Internet properly.

D. Our life has improved because the environment is getting better.

7.Our teacher told us the sun _____ in the east.

A. rise　　B. rises

C. rose　　D. would rise

8.He said that he _____ back soon.

A. will come　　B. came

C. has come　　D. would come

9.Daming's mother says _____ it's polite to say hello to the old.

A. where　　B. that

C. /　　D. Both B and C.

10.I hope _____ I can help him with his Chinese.

A. what　　B.if

C. how　　D.that

三、模块知识浓缩

thirsty, kilometre, wake, look, walk, hardly, bright, scenery, point

One Sunday morning my mother _____[11] us up and made me take my little brother to a trip to the country.It is five _____[12] from my home.I could _____[13] believe my ears because he was only two years old.And she asked me _____[14] after him well.It was too hard for me to protect him.

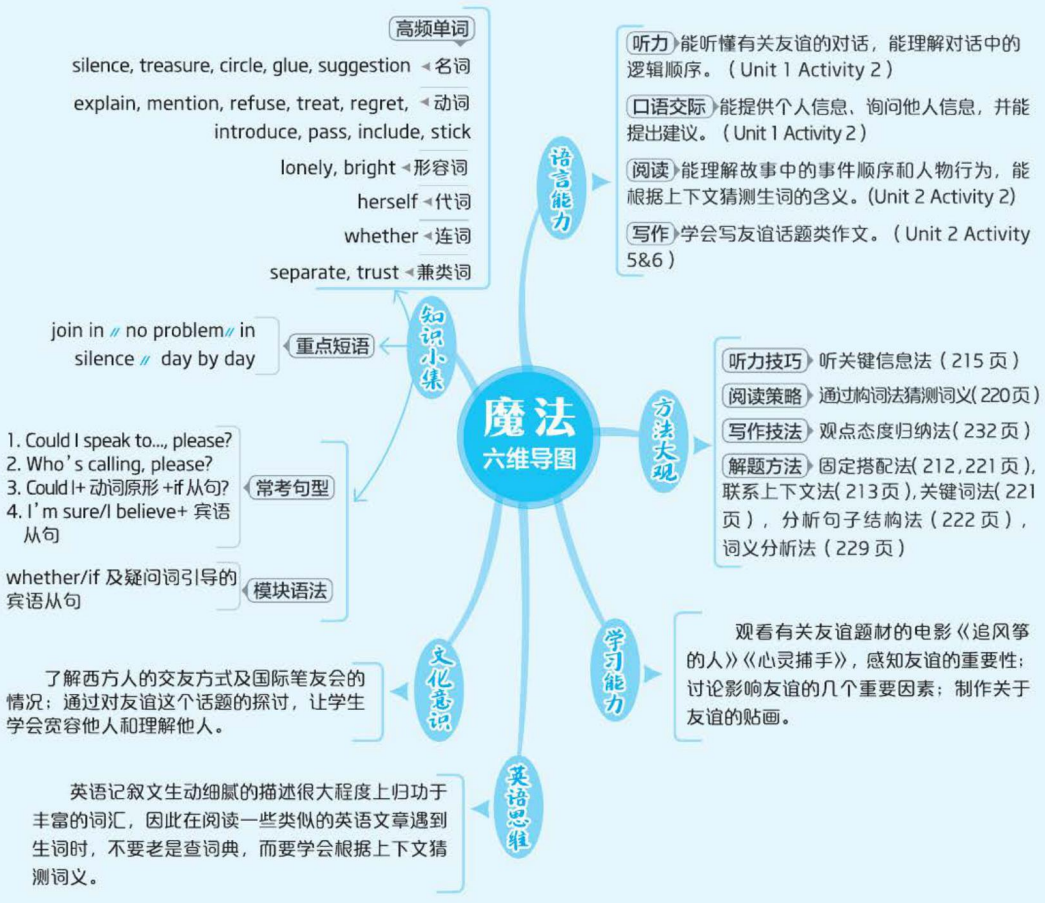
While we _____[15] along the road, the sun shone _____[16] and the breeze blew gently. I _____[17] at the beautiful flowers and they smiled at us.Then we heard the birds singing in the trees.The _____[18] was indeed very beautiful.

When we felt _____[19] and hungry, we returned home.We saw our mother waiting for us at the door.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Module 9 Friendship

词汇表听写



记忆大师

Unit 1 Could I ask if you've mentioned this to her?

必背单词

1. **separate** *v.* 使分开；分隔 →**divide**（同义词）
2. **explain** *v.* 解释；说明 →**explanation** *n.* 解释
3. **mention** *v.* 提及；谈到 →**Don't mention it.** 不客气。
4. **refuse** *v.* 拒绝 →**refuse to do sth.** 拒绝干某事
5. **treat** *v.* 对待；看待 →**treatment** *n.* 对待
6. **herself** *pron.* 她自己 →**her**（宾格 / 形容词性物主代词）她 / 她的
7. **whether** *conj.* 是否 →**if**（同义词）
8. **lonely** *adj.* 孤独的；寂寞的 →**alone**（同义词）
9. **regret** *v.* 懊悔；遗憾 →**regretted**（过去式）→**regretted**（过去分词）
10. **patient** *adj.* 有耐心的；能忍耐的 →**patience** *n.*

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

耐心

11.introduce *v.* 介绍；引见 →**introduction** *n.* 介绍

12.helpline *n.* 服务热线

‖必背短语

13.take a message 捎个口信

14.get separated 分隔；分开

15.be patient with sb. 对某人有耐心

16.explain sth. to sb. 向某人解释某事

17.introduce sb. to sb. 把某人介绍给某人认识

18.join in 参加

19.no problem 没什么，没关系

‖必背句子

20. Who's **calling**, please? 请问你是哪位?

21.This is Lingling speaking. 我是玲玲。

22.I **have a problem with** my best friend.
我和我最好的朋友之间出了点问题。

23. Could I ask if you**'ve mentioned** this to her?
我能问问你是否和她说过这件事?

24. Maybe she doesn't **feel very sure of herself** in her new school.
或许她在新学校感觉不自信吧。

Unit 2 I believe that the world is what you think it is.

‖必背单词

1.silence *n.* 寂静；无声 →**silent** *adj.* 寂静的

2.pass *v.* 经过；通过 →**past** *prep.* 经过

3.bright *adj.* 欢快的；明亮的 →**brightly** *adv.* 明亮地；欢快地

4.include *v.* 包括；把……列为一部分 →**including** *prep.* 包括……在内

5.stick *v.* 粘；粘贴 →**stuck**（过去式）→**stuck**（过去分词）

6.suggestion *n.* 提议；建议 →**suggest** *v.* 建议

7.treasure *n.* 珍宝，珍贵之物

8.trust *v.* 信任；信赖 *n.* 信任；信赖

9.circle *n.*（熟悉的、相关的人形成的）圈子

10.glue *n.* 胶水

‖必背短语

11.be afraid to do sth. 害怕做某事

12.worry about sb. 担心某人

13.take place 发生

14.in the past 在过去

‖必背句子

15.Every time I heard the other students **talking and laughing**, I felt even more lonely.
每次我听到其他同学有说有笑时，我感到更加孤独。

16. It **made me feel** happy,lively and warm.
它让我感到开心、有活力和温暖。

17.Day by day, I learnt to trust people,and they included me in their **circle of friends**.
一天一天地，我学会了信任别人，他们也把我融进了他们的朋友圈中。

18. My **suggestion** is:**smile at** the world and it will smile back.
我的建议是：对世界微笑，它也会向你微笑的。

Unit 3 Language in use

‖必背短语

1.hold the line 稍等一会儿，别挂断电话

2.every piece of advice 每条建议

3.be full of 充满

4.come to an end 结束；终止

5.invite sb. to do sth. 邀请某人做某事

‖必背句子

6.She **stayed in touch with** them **until** her last days. 直到去世前，她还同他们保持着联系。

7.Some people **write to find out about** life in another country.Others **want to practise** their foreign languages **or share** their hobbies.
有些人写信是为了了解另一个国家的生活。还有些人想练习他们的外语或分享他们的爱好。

‖必背语法

8.Could you explain **what** happened then?
你能解释那时发生什么了吗?

9.Do you know **why** she treats you like that?
你知道她为什么那样对待你吗?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 1 Could I ask if you've mentioned this to her?



I. 课文原文、译文

Listening and vocabulary 听力和词汇

1 Listen and choose the correct answer. 听并选择正确的答案。

1. Lingling wants to speak to Betty/Mrs King. 玲玲想和贝蒂 / 金夫人说话。
2. Betty is in/out. 贝蒂在家 / 出去了。
3. Betty's friend/Mrs King's friend works on the Friendship Helpline.
   贝蒂的朋友 / 金夫人的朋友在友谊服务热线工作。



2 Number the sentences in the order you hear them. 以你听到这些句子的顺序给它们编号。

a) I'm sorry, she's not in at the moment. ☐ 抱歉，她现在不在。☐

b) Is that Mrs King? ☐ 是金夫人吗？☐

c) Could I speak to Betty, please?① ☐ 请问，我可以跟贝蒂说话吗？☐

d) May I have the number? ☐ 可以给我号码吗？☐

e) Can I take a message? ☐ 要我给你传个话吗？☐

f) Thanks so much. ☐ 多谢。☐

Now listen again and check. 现在再听一遍，并检查。

3 Listen and read. 听并读。



Helpline: Hello, Friendship Helpline/'helpˌlaɪn/. Who's calling, please?
你好，这里是友谊服务热线。请问你是哪位？

Lingling: Hello. This is Lingling speaking. 你好。我是玲玲。

Helpline: Hi, Lingling! How can I help you? 你好，玲玲！有什么可以帮你的？

Lingling: I have a problem with② my best friend. She's called...
我和我最好的朋友之间出了点问题。她叫……

Helpline: No, don't tell me who she is. Tell me when the problem started.
不，不要告诉我她是谁。告诉我什么时候开始出问题的。

Lingling: Yes. Well, we've been friends for five years. We got separated/'sepəˌreɪtɪd/③ when we went to different schools last term, but we stayed in touch.
嗯。哦，我们做朋友已经五年了。上学期，我们上了不同的学校后分开了，但我们保持着联系。

Helpline: So could you explain/ɪk'spleɪn/④ what happened then?
那么你能解释一下接下来发生了什么吗？

Lingling: This term, she came to study at my school. I was so happy at first. But she's so different.
这学期，她来我的学校上学。起初我很高兴。但她却很不同。

Helpline: Can you tell me how she's different? 你能告诉我她是怎么不同的吗？

Lingling: She doesn't like me to see my other friends. 她不喜欢我见我其他的朋友。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Helpline: Could I ask if you've mentioned/ˈmenʃnd/[5] this to her? 我能问问你是否和她提过此事?

Lingling: Yes, but she refused/rɪˈfju:zd/[6] to listen. 是的，但她拒绝听。

Helpline:OK. Do you know why she treats/tri:ts/[7] you like that?

好的。你知道她为什么那样对你吗?

Lingling: No.I don't know. 不。我不知道。

Helpline: Maybe she doesn't feel very sure of herself/həˈself/[8] in her new school.

也许在新学校里，她还不太自信。

Lingling: Maybe. 也许吧。

Helpline: Try to find out whether/ˈweðə/ she feels lonely/ˈləʊnli/ without you. I'm sure she regrets[9] /rɪˈgrets/ hurting you.So be patient/ˈpeɪʃnt/[10] with her and explain to her that she can make friends with your other friends too.Try to introduce/ˌɪntrəˈdju:s/[11] her to them.

试着去发现没有你，她是否会感到孤独。我确信她后悔伤害了你。所以对她要有耐心，并向她解释她也能和你的其他朋友交朋友。试着把她介绍给他们。

Lingling:I see. I'll encourage/ɪnˈkʌrɪdʒ/ her to join in[12] more.Thanks.

我明白了。我会鼓励她多加入活动。谢谢。

Helpline: No problem, Lingling.You're welcome! 没什么，玲玲。不客气!

Everyday English 日常英语

Who's calling, please? 请问你是哪位?

This is... speaking. 我是……

Now check (√) the true sentences. 现在给正确的句子打(√)。

1. Lingling called to ask for advice about her schoolwork. ☐

玲玲打电话为她的作业征求意见。

2. Lingling and her best friend are now in the same school. ☐

玲玲和她最好的朋友现在在同一所学校。

3. Lingling is happy to see her best friend at the same school. ☐

玲玲很开心在同一所学校见到她最好的朋友。

4. Lingling is having a hard time in the new school. ☐ 玲玲在新学校过得不好。

5. Lingling gets help from the helpline. ☐ 玲玲从服务热线获得帮助。

4 Complete the passage with the correct form of the words in the box.

用方框中单词的正确形式完成文章。

encourage 鼓励　herself 她自己　introduce 介绍　lonely 孤独的　patient 有耐心的
regret 懊悔　separate 使分开　treat 对待

When you get (1)_____ from a friend, it may create problems for your friendship.She may not want you to see your other friends. If this is the case, she probably (2)_____ you like that because she does not feel sure of (3)_____.Try to find out whether she feels (4)_____ without you. It is natural to feel like that. She probably (5)_____ hurting

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

you.Be (6)_____ with her, (7)_____ her to your other friends and (8)_____ her to join in more.

当你和一个朋友 (1)_____的时候，可能你们的友谊会出问题。她可能不想你去见你的其他朋友。如果事实确实如此，她可能像那样 (2)_____你是因为她 (3)_____不自信。尽量去发现没有你，她是否感到 (4)_____。有那样的感受是很正常的。她可能 (5)_____伤害你。对她 (6)_____，(7)_____她给你的其他朋友并 (8)_____她多参加活动。

Pronunciation and speaking 发音和会话

5 Listen and underline the words the speaker stresses. 听并在重读的单词下画线。

1. Don't tell me who she is. 不要告诉我她是谁。
2. Tell me when the problem started. 告诉我问题什么时候开始的。
3. Can you tell me how she's different? 你能告诉我她是怎么不同的吗?
4. Maybe she doesn't feel very sure of herself in her new school. 也许在新学校里，她不太自信。
5. I'll encourage her to join in more. 我将鼓励她多参加活动。

Now listen again and repeat. 现在再听一遍，并重复。

6 Work in pairs.Talk about your problems with friendship. 结对练习。 谈论你在友谊方面的问题。

Student A: You call the helpline to ask for advice on your problems:

学生 A：你打电话给服务热线征求有关你的问题的建议：

·I'm shy and I haven't had many friends. 我害羞，没有许多朋友。

·I had a big fight with my best friend and we don't talk to each other now.

我和我最好的朋友打了一架，现在我们彼此不说话。

·I have to go to a new school, but I don't want to leave my friends.

我不得不去一所新学校，但我不想离开我的朋友们。

Student B: You work on the helpline. Listen to Student A's problems and try to help.

学生 B：你在服务热线工作。听一听学生 A 的问题，尽力给予帮助。

—*This is ... on the helpline.How can I help you?* ——这里是服务热线，我是……有什么可以帮你的?

—*This is ...speaking.I have a problem...* ——我是……我有个问题……

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用 •考点批注

★Could I speak to Betty, please?

① Could I speak to..., please? 的用法

e.g.—Hello, could I speak to Mary, please? 你好，请问我能和玛丽通话吗?

—This is Mary speaking. 我就是玛丽。

考题在线 1 —Hello, may I speak to Daisy?

—_____

A. This is Daisy speaking. B. She is Daisy.

"Could I speak to..., please?"意为"请问我能和……通话吗?"是打电话的常用语，相当于"May I speak to..., please?"

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

C. What is Daisy? D. That is Daisy.

★I have a problem with my best friend.

② **have a problem with...** 在……方面有问题 / 麻烦；与……之间产生矛盾

e.g. It's easy for some teenagers to have some problems with their parents. 青少年和他们的父母之间很容易产生问题。

Do you have a problem/trouble/difficulty (in) finishing the work? 你完成这项工作有困难吗?

have a problem (in) doing sth. =have trouble/difficulty (in) doing sth. 做某事有困难

考题在线 2 Sorry to bother you. I have _____ my car.

A. a problem that B. a problem with

C. problem that D. problem on

考题在线 3 —I'm Daisy, not Jessie.

—Sorry, I have difficulty _____ people's names. [苏州]

A. remembering B.remember

C. to remember D.remembered

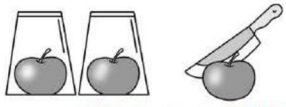
点拨: 用固定搭配法解题。have difficulty (in) doing sth. 意为"做某事有困难"，是固定搭配。

★We got separated when we went to different schools last term, but we stayed in touch.

③ 【高频】**separate** /'sepəreɪt/ *v.* 使分开 & /'sepərət/*adj.* 分开的；单独的

e.g. How did you and Tom get separated? 你和汤姆是怎么分开的？

图解巧辨:separate 与 divide



separate 分隔开 divide 分割开

【重点】辨析: separate 与 divide

separate	指把原来连在一起或靠近的分隔开来，常与 from 连用。可构成短语 get separated from sb. 意为"与某人分离"。	Let's get separated from them! 咱们和他们分开吧!
divide	指将整体分成若干部分，常与 into 搭配。	The apple has been divided into two parts. 苹果被分成了两部分。

考题在线 4 根据汉语意思完成句子

和朋友们分离我感到很难过。 [本溪]

I feel very sad to _____ _____ friends.

- explain sth. 解释 / 说明某事
- explain sth. to sb. 向某人解释某事
- explain (to sb.)+that 从句 (向某人)解释.....

★So could you explain what happened then?

敲黑板 "向某人解释某事"用 explain sth. to sb.，不可以说 explain sb. sth.。

④ **explain** /ɪk'spleɪn/ *v.* 解释；说明

e.g. First, I'll explain the rules of the game. 首先我要说明一下游戏规则。

Let me explain it to you. 让我给你解释一下这件事。

He explained (to us) that he was too busy. 他(向我们)解释说他太忙了。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

考题在线 5 根据汉语提示完成句子

Mr. Li is _____（解释）to us how to organize our ideas according to the type of writing. [盐城]

explain v. 解释,说明
→ explanation n. 解释,说明

★Could I ask if you've mentioned this to her?

⑤ **mention** /'menʃn/ *v.* **提及；谈到**

e.g. I hope you won't mention my name.

我希望你不会提及我的名字。

I mentioned this idea to Joan, and she liked it.

我向琼提及这个想法，她很喜欢。

Did he mention where he was going for holiday?

他说起过要去哪儿度假吗?

- mention sb./sth. 提及某人/某事
- mention sth. to sb. 向某人提及某事
- mention+从句 提及/说起

考题在线 6 —Thank you very much for giving me some advice on how to deal with stress.

—_____.

A. That's true　　B. Don't mention it

C. OK, I'll try　　D. I don't think so

点拨: 用联系上下文法解题。由上句句意“非常感谢你给我提供了一些有关怎样处理压力的建议。”可知，答语是对感谢的应答。

"Don't mention it." 意为"别客气。"用于回答他人的感谢,与"You're welcome."同义。

★Yes, but she refused to listen.

refuse 的反义词为 accept；其固定搭配为:refuse to do sth. 拒绝做某事。

⑥ **refuse** /rɪ'fju:z/ *v.* **拒绝**

e.g. He often refuses to help others. 他经常拒绝帮助别人。

考题在线 7 — I offered Sandy a helping hand. However, she _____ it.

— Maybe she can manage herself. [扬州]

A. received　　B. returned

C. refused　　D. rewarded

点拨: 考查动词词义辨析。receive 收到；return 归还，返还；refuse 拒绝；reward 奖励，奖赏。根据 However“然而”表转折，提示用动词 refuse 表示“拒绝”。

★常见接动词不定式作宾语的单词

想要 拒绝 莫 忘记
want, refuse, forget
需要 努力 就 学习
need, try, learn
喜欢 同意 加 帮助
like, agree, help
希望 决定 后 开始
hope, decide, begin/start

★Do you know why she treats you like that?

⑦ **treat** /tri:t/ *v.* **对待；看待，其名词形式为 treatment。**

e.g. You shouldn't treat him like that. 你不应该那样对待他。

He treated money as a tool. 他把钱看作工具。

treat ... as 意为“把……看作”，同义词组为 look on ... as, think of ... as 和 regard ... as。

考题在线 8 根据汉语提示完成句子

Scrooge is mean and only thinks about himself. And he doesn't _____（对待）others nicely.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★sure 的常见用法：

- be sure to do sth. 务必/一定要做某事
- be sure of (doing) sth. 对(做)某事有把握
- be sure+(that) 从句 确信……

★Maybe she doesn't feel very sure of herself in her new school.

⑧ **feel sure of oneself** 自信，有信心，其同义短语为 **be sure of oneself**。

e.g. He doesn't feel/is not so sure of himself these days.

他这些天不太自信。

I am sure of success.= I am sure of succeeding.=I am sure that I will succeed. 我确信我会成功。

考题在线 9 Jim is afraid to make friends with others because he is not sure _____ himself.

A. for　　B. at　　C. of　　D. to

★I'm sure she regrets hurting you.

敲黑板 regret 的过去式和过去分词均为 regretted，现在分词是 regretting。

- regret doing sth."后悔做某事"，指对做过的事情表示遗憾、后悔。
- regret to do sth."遗憾地做某事"，指对要做的事情表示遗憾，强调事情未做。

⑨ **regret** /rɪˈgret/ *v.* 懊悔；遗憾

e.g. I don't regret telling her what I thought. 我不后悔告诉她我的想法。

I regret to tell you that you failed the test.

我很遗憾地告诉你，你考试没有及格。

考题在线 10 根据汉语提示完成句子

The driver _____（后悔）his carelessness in driving and went to the hospital to say sorry to his passengers. [泰州]

★So be patient with her and explain to her that she can make friends with your other friends too.

⑩ **patient** /ˈpeɪʃnt/ *adj.* 有耐心的；能忍耐的

patient
- be patient with sb. 对某人有耐心
- be patient of sth. 忍耐某事
- 其反义词为 impatient"不耐烦的，没有耐心的"
- patient 还可作名词，意为"病人"。

e.g. My math teacher is patient with every student.

我的数学老师对每位学生都有耐心。

He isn't patient of the noise any more. 他不能再忍受这种噪音了。

Don't be too impatient with her! 别对她太没耐心了！

The patient is seriously ill. 这位病人病得很重。

考题在线 11 请根据括号中所给的汉语写出单词，使句子意思完整正确

Helen treats her students in a _____（耐心的）and understanding way. [南京]

★Try to introduce her to them.

⑪ **introduce** /ˌɪntrəˈdjuːs/ *v.* 介绍

adj. 耐心的



n. 病人

e.g. Could you please introduce me to your parents?

请你把我介绍给你的父母好吗？

Let me introduce myself first. 首先让我自我介绍一下。

He gave me an introduction about his company.

他向我介绍了一下他的公司。

考题在线 12 根据汉语提示完成句子

Last weekend, at the welcome party, the host _____（介绍）the

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

history and culture of Taizhou to the guests. [泰州]

introduce... to...
把……介绍给……
introduce oneself
介绍某人自己
introduction 名词，意为"介绍"。

核心素养之文化意识

培养"交际能力"素养

在人际交往活动中，经常需要在他人之间架起人际关系的桥梁(bridge)。相互介绍时，要注意以下情况：

(1) 先介绍下级，后介绍上级。

(2) 先介绍晚辈，后介绍长辈。

(3) 先介绍年幼者，后介绍年长者。

(4) 先介绍男士，后介绍女士。

(5) 先介绍家人，后介绍同事、朋友。

(6) 先介绍主人，后介绍来宾。

★I'll encourage her to join in more.

⑫ join in 参加

【易错点】辨析：join, join in 与 take part in

join	参加某一种团体、组织，成为其中一员（如：入党、入团、入会、参军等）。
join in	参加某一种具体活动。
take part in	参加会议或群众性活动，并起一定作用。

一语辨异：

I will join you and join in all kinds of games. You know, I always take part in all kinds of activities. 我会加入你们并参加各种比赛。你知道的，我总是参加各种活动。

考题在线 13 Around the world, more and more people are _____ dangerous sports activities, because life in modern society has become safe and boring.

A. joining B. join

C. taking part in D. take part in

考题在线答案 1. A 2. B 3. A 4. separate from 5. explaining 6. B 7. C 8. treat 9. C 10. regretted 11. patient 12. introduced 13. C

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

☞(答案见270页)

听力技巧

听关键信息法(在听的过程中，参考所给的问题，对关键的信息进行侧重记忆，从而把握句子或文章的重要信息。)

听力过程

听教材 Activity 1，选择最佳答案

课文听力1

1.Who's Mrs King?

A. Lingling's mother. B. Betty's mother.

C. Jane's mother.

2._____ needs some help.

A. Betty B. Lingling C. Mrs King

3.What is Betty doing?

A. She's visiting her grandmother.

B. She's calling.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

C. She's doing her homework.

4.Betty won't be back until _____.

A. this evening

B. this night

C. tomorrow

5.What's Jane's telephone number?

A. 58590808. B. 59580808.

C. 55980808.

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

☞(答案见270页)

一、根据所给汉语提示补全句子

1.The police moved in to _____(分隔) the two groups.

2.She has already made a birthday cake by _____(她自己).

3.Don't _____(提及)it to her,or she will be angry.

4.How will the fans _____(对待) Wang Fei?

5.Mrs Smith asked us to _____(介绍)ourselves.

二、单项选择

6.Peter doesn't feel sure of _____ in his new school. [潍坊]

A. he B. him

C. his D. himself

7. —Hello, is that Betty speaking?

—_____

A. You're welcome. B. Speaking, please.

C. This way, please. D. Glad to hear that.

8.—Mr. Ling, I have some difficulty _____ the article.

—Remember _____ it three or four times at least. [泰州]

A. to understand; reading

B. understanding; reading

C. understanding; to read

D. to understand; to read

9.Will you please _____ why you are late?

A. explain B. offer

C. know D. talk

10. You'd better not regret _____ his offer.

A. refused B. refusing

C. refuses D. refuse

三、完成句子

11. 我可以参加这个讨论吗?

May I _____ _____ the discussion?

12. 我弟弟拒绝去搬那个重盒子,但我没有放弃。

My brother _____ _____ _____ the heavy box,but I didn't give up.

13. 他把他的朋友们介绍给我认识。

He _____ his friends _____me.

14. 老师把学生看作他们的孩子。

The teachers _____ the students _____ their children.

15. 大地震后汤姆和杰克分开了。

Tom and Jack _____ _____ after the big earthquake.



我以前肯定是假学习

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 I believe that the world is what you think it is.

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文及导读

原文译文 · 导读　　导读批注

Reading and vocabulary 阅读与词汇

Pre-reading（读前）

1. Who did you tell when you were sad?
2. What did you do to feel better?
3. How can you make other people feel happy?

1 Work in pairs and answer the questions. 结对练习，回答问题。

1. When was the last time you felt sad?
   你上一次感到伤心是什么时候?
2. Who did you tell that you were sad? 你告诉谁你伤心了?
3. What did you do to feel better? 你做了些什么来感到好一些?
4. How can you make other people feel happy?
   你如何让其他人感到开心?

请开始你的表演



Learning to learn 学会学习

When you read a story, focus on the five *wh*-questions:
当你读一个故事时，要注意五个特殊疑问句：
Who is the main character? 主人公是谁?
What happens? 发生什么了?
When does the main event or story take place?
主要事件或故事是什么时候发生的?
Where does it take place? 它在哪儿发生的?
Why? 为什么?

批 体裁：记叙文

2 Read the passage and answer the questions.
阅读文章，回答问题。

课文朗读2

While-reading（读中）

1. How did the writer feel in the past?
2. How does the writer feel now?
3. Why is it called A beautiful smile?

批 标题：由"A beautiful smile 美丽的微笑"可知，本文主要围绕"微笑"展开，启发读者想要了解"微笑"到底给作者带来什么改变。

A beautiful smile 美丽的微笑

By Zhang Bei 张北

① When I was thirteen years old, a girl gave me an important

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

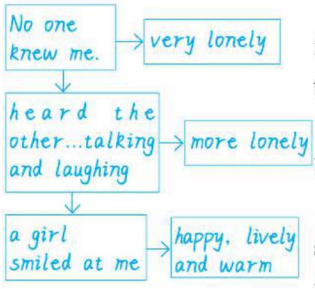
批 文章结构： 层进结构

- Part 1 Before the smile (Para 1–3)
- Part 2 Seeing the smile (Para 4–5)
- Part 3 After the smile (Para 6–8)

批 背景：

Who: Zhang Bei
When: the early autumn
Where: at a new school
How: lonely and afraid to make friends with others
What: a girl gave me a smile

批 情感：



批 词语赏析：

第4段使用了连串动作的细节描写：entered the classroom → passed me → turned back → looked at me → smiled。将女孩的"进""过""转""看""笑"的动作描绘得惟妙惟肖，生动形象。

gift. It was a smile.

在我13岁的时候，一个女孩给了我一份重要的礼物。它就是微笑。

② It was the early autumn of my first year at a new school.No one knew me.I was very lonely, and afraid to make friends with anyone.

那是我在新学校第一年的初秋。没人认识我。我非常孤独，不敢与任何人交朋友。

③ Every time I heard the other students talking and laughing, I felt even ① more lonely.I could not talk to anyone about my problem, and I did not want my parents to worry about me.

每次我听到其他学生有说有笑时，我感到更孤独。我不能向任何人说自己的问题，我不想父母担心我。

④ One day, my classmates were talking with their friends, but I sat in silence/'saɪləns/ ②. At that moment, a girl entered the classroom. I did not know who she was.She passed/pɑ:st/ ③ me and then turned back.She looked at me and, without a word, smiled.

一天，我的同班同学们在和他们的朋友们聊天，但我默默地坐着。就在那时，一个女孩进了教室。我不知道她是谁。她从我身边经过，然后转过身来。她看着我，没说一句话，微笑着。

⑤ Suddenly, I felt the touch ④ of something bright/braɪt/ and friendly.It made me feel happy, lively and warm.It was like a hidden ⑤ treasure/'treʒə/.

突然，我感到一种明朗而又友好的东西在触动。它让我感到幸福，有活力而且温暖。它就像隐藏的珍宝。

⑥ That smile changed my life. I started to talk with the other students.Day by day ⑥, I learnt to trust/trʌst/ ⑦ people, and they included ⑧ /ɪn'klu:dɪd/ me in their circle/'sɜ:kl/ of friends.The girl with the bright smile has become my best friend now, and we stick/stɪk/ together like glue/glu:/.

那个微笑改变了我的生活。我开始同其他学生说话。一天天地，我学会了信任大家，他们把我纳入了他们的朋友圈里。那个带着明媚的笑容的女孩现在已成了我最好的朋友，我们形影不离。

⑦ One day, I asked her why she smiled at me that day.She said she could not remember!

有一天，我问她那天为什么对我笑。她却说不记得了！

⑧ Now I believe that the world is what you think it is.If you think you are lonely, you might always be alone.My suggestion/sə'dʒestʃən/ ⑨ is: smile at the world and it will smile back.

现在我认为，你认为世界是怎样的，它就是怎样的。如果你认为你是孤独的，

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

你可能总是孤独的。我的建议是：笑对世界，它将会向你微笑。

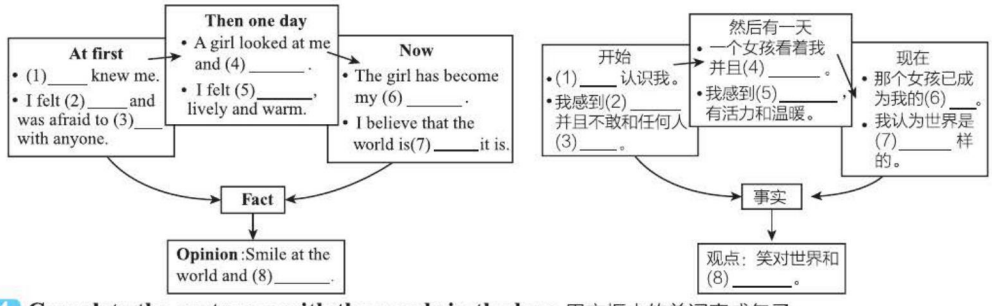
1. Does the beginning of the passage surprise you? Why?
   文章开头使你感到惊讶吗？为什么？
2. How did the writer feel in the past? 作者过去有何感受？
3. How does the writer feel now? 作者现在感受如何？
4. What advice does she give? 她给出什么建议？

Post-reading（读后）

写作小练笔

☞（答案见231页）

3 Complete the sentences. 完成句子。



4 Complete the sentences with the words in the box. 用方框中的单词完成句子。

circle 圈子	glue 胶水	silence 寂静	stick 粘贴
suggestion 建议	treasure 珍宝	trust 信任	

1. My father made the _____ that I should find a hobby. 我父亲给出_____我应该找一个爱好。
2. Even today, some people search for _____ under the sea.
   即便今天，有些人在海底搜寻_____。
3. You can _____ them to look after the house. 你可以_____他们去照看房子。
4. You must make the stamp wet before you _____ it to the letter.
   在你把它_____信上之前你必须把邮票弄湿。
5. Have you got any _____? I want to stick these pieces of paper together.
   你有_____吗？我想把这些纸粘在一起。
6. John's _____ of friends includes some students from the UK.
   约翰的朋友_____包括一些来自英国的学生。
7. I like the _____ in the countryside.The city is too noisy for me!
   我喜欢乡下的_____。对我来说城市太吵了！

Writing 写作

5 Read the passage again.Find the paragraphs that describe the following stages.

再读文章。找到描述如下场景的段落。

What happened and when. 何时发生了什么事情。

Where she was and how she felt. 她在哪儿，感觉如何。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Why she felt that way. 她为什么有那种感觉。

What happened one day. 有一天发生了什么了。

What happened suddenly. 突然发生了什么事情。

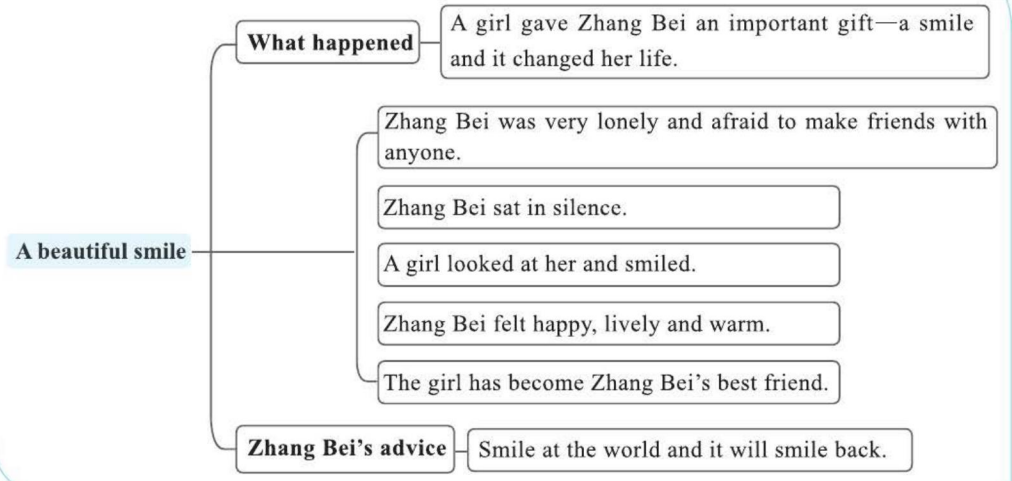
What happened after this. 这之后发生了什么。

What happened later. 后来发生了什么。

What she thinks now. 现在她想什么。

6 Write a passage about someone or something that changed your life.Use the stages in Activity 5 to help you. 写篇文章，关于改变了你生活的某人或某事。使用活动 5 中的场景帮助你。

课文背诵指南



Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 60分

(答案见270页)

阅读策略

通过构词法猜测词义（英语阅读中，经常会遇到一些由熟悉的单词派生、转化或合成的新词，学生可以根据构词法方面的知识来猜测词义。）

阅读过程

一、速读文章，回答下列问题

1. What advice does the writer give in the passage? （归纳概括题）

二、细读文章，完成下列题目

2. What was the important gift from the girl? （细节理解题）

3. One day,the writer's classmates were talking with their friends,but the writer _____. （细节理解题）

拓展阅读

A. sat in silence　　B. laughed

C. did homework　　D. read books

4. The girl has become my _____.

A. sister　　B. best friend

C. teacher　　D. student

5. ⊙ What's the Chinese meaning of "suggestion"? （词义猜测题）

A. 观点　　B. 决定

C. 建议　　D. 结论

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

•考点应用 •考点批注

★Every time I heard the other students talking and laughing, I felt even more lonely.

① **even** /ˈiːvn/ *adv.* 甚至；连

e.g. Today it is even colder than it was yesterday. 今天甚至比昨天更冷。

My father walked even faster than my mother.

我父亲比我母亲走得更快。

Even a child can understand the words. 即使小孩也能听懂这些话。

She can even speak French well. 她甚至法语都能说得很好。

even 用于比较级前，加强语气。在英语中常用于修饰比较级的还有 far, much, a little, a lot 等。

even 还可修饰名词、动词、介词(短语)等，用来加强语气，意为“甚至；即使；连……”。

考题在线 1 Someone says, “Time is money.” But I think time is _____ important than money. [黔东南]

A. less B. much C. even more D. much least

点拨：用关键词法解题。由关键词 than 可知空格处为比较级，用 even 修饰比较级表达程度。

★One day, my classmates were talking with their friends, but I sat in silence.

② **silence** /ˈsaɪləns/ *n.* 寂静，其形容词为 silent，意为“安静的，寂静的”。

- in silence 安静地；沉默地
- keep silent 保持安静

e.g. A scream broke the silence of the night.

一声尖叫划破了夜晚的寂静。

They stood in silence. 他们默不作声地站着。

It was quite silent there. And we could even hear the birds singing.

那儿很安静，我们甚至能听到鸟叫。

★以 -ce 结尾的抽象名词变 -ce 为 -t 构成同根形容词：

importance(重要性)→important(重要的)

confidence(信心)→confident(有信心的)

silence(寂静)→silent(寂静的)

考题在线 2 He did all this _____ silence,and very rapidly. [十堰]

A. at B. in C. with D. of

点拨：用固定搭配法解题。in silence 为固定搭配，意为“安静地；沉默地”。

★She passed me and then turned back.

③ **pass** /pɑːs/ *v.* 通过；经过

【易错点】辨析：pass 与 past

pass	动词	相当于 walk/go past，常作谓语。
past	介词	意为“到另一侧”，常与 walk/go 连用。

e.g. Pass the store.=Go/Walk past the store. 经过这家商店。

Pass the ball to Tom. 把球传给汤姆。

pass 也可意为“递，给，传球”。pass sb. sth.=pass sth. to sb. 递给某人某物

考题在线 3 —Would you please tell me the way to the Pacific Hotel?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

—Sure. Go _____ the post office, and you'll find it on the left.

A. passes　　B. past　　C. to passing　　D. passed

点拨：本题用分析句子结构法解题。由动词 Go，以及空后地点名词可知空处应为介词 past。go past 相当于 pass，意为“走过”。

★常用短语

- lose touch with/ out of touch with 与……失去联系
- stay/keep in touch with 与……保持联系

★Suddenly, I felt the touch of something bright and friendly.

④ **touch** /tʌtʃ/ *n.* 触；碰；触觉；触摸 *v.* 碰；触摸

e.g.The blind have a keen sense of touch. 盲人有敏锐的触觉。

Don't touch those papers on the shelf. 不要碰书架上的那些文件。

考题在线 4 How does Jane _____ with her mother? _____ making phone calls or chatting online? [黔西南]

A. keep in touch; With　　B. keeping touch; By

C. keep in touch; By　　D. keeping touch; With

点拨：考查动词短语和介词辨析。keep in touch with sb. 表示“与某人保持联系”，为固定词组；by doing sth. 表示“以……方式做某事”。

★It was like a hidden treasure.

⑤ **hidden** /ˈhɪdn/ *adj.* 隐藏的；神秘的

hidden 的动词形式为 hide，意为“藏；隐瞒”。过去式为 hid，过去分词为 hidden/ hid。

e.g.As teachers, we should notice the hidden dangers around children. 作为老师，我们应当注意到孩子们身边潜伏的危险。

It is difficult to sail on the sea because of the hidden rocks. 因为暗礁，所以在这片海上航行很困难。

I hid the broken plate behind the table. 我把打碎的盘子藏在餐桌后面了。

考题在线 5 He took off his expensive watch _____ the fact that he was rich. [重庆A卷]

A. to hide　　B. hid　　C. hide　　D. hidden

★Day by day, I learnt to trust people, and they included me in their circle of friends.

⑥ **day by day** 一天天地

e.g.His condition improved day by day. 他的（健康）状况一天天好转。

It's getting warmer day by day. 天气一天天暖和起来。

考题在线 6 The price of the vegetables is going up _____.

A. day or day　　B. day by day

C. day after day　　D. day to day

点拨：句意为“菜价在一天天地上涨”。day by day 一天天地。

⑦ **trust** /trʌst/ *v.*& *n.* 信任；信赖

e.g.A child has trust in his mother. 孩子信赖他的母亲。

I don't trust his judgement. 我不相信他的判断。

★类似的短语：

- year by year 年复一年
- day after day 日复一日
- step by step 一步一步地

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 7 完成句子

他是一位诚实的男孩。你可以信赖他。

He is an honest boy. You can _____ _____ him.

trust
- 名词 → 为不可数名词，常与 have 或 put 等词搭配
- 动词
  - trust sb./sth. 相信某人/某事
  - trust in 信赖……

⑧ **include** /ɪnˈkluːd/ *v.* 包括

e.g. My job doesn't include making dinner for the boss.

我的工作并不包括为老板做晚饭。

Please include me in the list. 请把我列入名单。

Three people were killed in the accident, including a child.

事故中有 3 人死亡，包括一名儿童。

- include 后可接名词或动词的 -ing 形式作宾语，不接不定式。
- including 介词，意为"包括；包含"，用于列举所包含的事物

考题在线 8 根据句意及首字母提示补全单词

The tour i_____ a visit to the Disneyland, so you needn't pay for the tickets. [成都]

★My suggestion is: smile at the world and it will smile back.

⑨ **suggestion** /səˈdʒestʃən/ *n.* 提议；建议

e.g. Someone came up with a very useful suggestion.

有人提出了一个非常有用的建议。

I made a suggestion about how to save water.

我提了一条关于如何节约用水的建议。

- suggestion 为可数名词，其动词形式为 suggest"建议；提议"。
- make a suggestion 提建议

【易错点】辨析：suggestion 与 advice

suggestion	可数名词，指为了改进或解决某一问题而提出的建议、办法等。
advice	不可数名词，侧重于根据个人经验或丰富的知识而给别人提出的劝告、建议等。表示"一条建议"用 a piece of advice。

e.g. Good advice is harsh to the ear. 忠言逆耳。

考题在线 9 —Could you give me a few _____ on how to spend the coming summer holiday?

—OK, let me see. [咸宁]

A. hobbies　　B. suggestions

C. knowledge　　D. information

点拨：考查名词词义辨析。句意为"——你能给我一些关于如何度过即将到来的暑假的建议吗？——好的，让我想想"。根据 a few 修饰可数名词复数，可排除 C、D。根据句意可知应该是寻求建议。

考题在线答案 1. C　2. B　3. B　4. C　5. A　6. B　7. trust in　8. includes　9. B

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础20分

☞(答案见270页)

一、根据所给汉语提示补全句子

1.They looked at each other in _____(寂静) without saying a word.

2.The apple of one's eye means you are the _____(珍宝) of someone's.

3.This copy of the newspaper _____(包括) fifteen pieces.

4.I lent her money because I _____(信任) her.

5.The sky is blue and the sun is _____(明亮的).I feel very comfortable.

二、用方框中所给词的适当形式填空

day by day, believe in,smile at, hide, circle of friends

6.—I'm afraid I won't pass the exam.
—Come on, Bill.You should _____ yourself. That's the secret of success.

7.His _____ is small,because he doesn't like making friends.

8.His words had a _____ meaning.

9.The lovely baby always _____ everyone.

10.The leaves on the tree are getting yellow _____.

三、单项选择

11.Please pass this knife _____ him.
A. on B. to
C. in D. at

12.—The weather is too bad!
—So it is. It's reported that it will be even _____ later on.
A. bad B. badly
C. worse D. worst

13.She has been to many countries, _____ China.
A. include B. includes
C. to include D. including

14.—Could you tell me _____?
—Talking about festivals.
A. what are they doing
B. what they are doing
C. where they are going
D. where are they going

15.—Why not buy a second-hand flat first if you don't have enough money?
—That's a good _____. [扬州]
A. saying B. question
C. suggestion D. decision

四、完成句子

16. 每当我让你做事情，你总是拒绝。
_____ _____ I ask you to do something, you always refuse.

17. 记得毕业后要与你的老师和同学们保持联系。
Remember to _____ _____ _____ _____ your teachers and classmates after leaving school.

18. 她从我身边经过，然后转过身。
She _____ me and then _____ _____.

19. 我毕业时，他给了我一些找工作方面的意见。
He gave _____ _____ _____ on finding a job when I graduated.

20. 杰克用一点胶水粘贴海报。
Jack used a bit of _____ to _____ posters.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 3 Language in use

I. 课文原文、译文

Language practice 语言练习

Could you explain what happened then? 你能解释那时发生什么了吗?

Do you know why she treats you like that? 你知道她为什么那样对待你吗?

Can you tell me how she's different? 你能告诉我她怎么不同的吗?

I did not know who she was. 我不知道她是谁。

Could I ask if you've mentioned this to her? 我能问问你是否和她提过这事吗?

I asked her why she smiled at me that day. 我问她那天为什么朝我笑。

1 Match the two parts of the sentences.There may be more than one possibility.

把句子的两部分匹配起来。可能有不止一种答案。

1. I asked her... 我问她……

2. I do not remember... 我不记得……

3. I cannot find out... 我弄不清……

4. I do not understand... 我不理解……

5. I could not decide... 我不能决定……

a) ...when I should call her. ……我什么时候应该打电话给她。

b) ...why he looks worried. ……他为什么看起来担心。

c) ...if she would like to go with me. ……她是否想和我一起去。

d) ...how long he would be away. ……他将离开多久。

e) ...where I met her for the first time. ……我第一次在哪儿见到她。

2 Complete the conversation with *if*, *what*, *when*, *whether*, or *why*.

用 *if*, *what*, *when*, *whether* 或 *why* 完成对话。

Jo: Hi, Anna.Did you get the invitation to the end-of-term concert?

你好，安娜。你收到期末音乐会的邀请了吗?

Anna: Yes, I did. 是的，我收到了。

Jo: Could you tell me (1)_____ you're going to come? 你能告诉我你 (1)_____会来吗?

Anna: Yes, I'd love to. 嗯，我想去。

Jo: That's great.What about Tony? Do you know (2)_____ he's coming?

太好了。托尼呢? 你知道他 (2)_____会来吗?

Anna: Yes, he's coming. Don't forget, he's in the school band. 是的，他会来。别忘了，他是学校乐队的。

Jo: So do you know (3)_____ the band will play at the concert?

那么你知道乐队在音乐会上会演奏 (3)_____吗?

Anna: Of course! But I don't know (4)_____ they will play.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

当然！但我不知道他们将 (4)_____演奏。

Jo:I think they'll play first. 我认为他们将先演奏。

Anna: Do you know (5)_____ Tony has written a new song for the concert?

你知道托尼 (5)_____为音乐会写了首新歌吗?

Jo: Yes, he told me that he had, but I think it's a surprise①.

是的，他告诉我他已经写了，但我认为那是个惊喜。

Anna:I've heard that Arthur/ˈɑːθər/ isn't going to play the piano at the concert.Do you know (6)_____? 我听说阿瑟将不在音乐会上弹钢琴。你知道 (6)_____?

Jo: Yes.He's broken his arm. 嗯。他摔断了胳膊。

Anna: Oh dear, that's terrible! 噢，天哪，那太糟糕了!

3 Complete the sentences so that they are true for you. 完成句子，以便它们符合你的情况。

1. I do not remember who _____. 我不记得谁_____。
2. I do not understand why _____. 我不明白为什么_____。
3. I cannot decide where _____. 我无法决定哪儿_____。
4. I want to know when _____. 我想知道什么时候_____。
5. I asked him whether _____. 我问他是否_____。

4 Complete the conversations with the sentences in the box. 用方框中的句子完成对话。

a) I'm afraid you have the wrong number. 恐怕你拨的号码有错。
b) Can I help you? 我能帮你吗?
c) I'll call back later. 稍后我再打来。
d) Jack isn't here right now. 杰克现在不在这儿。
e) Who's calling, please? 请问你是谁?

A:Good morning.This is 23456789.(1)_____ 早上好。这儿是 23456789。(1)_____

B:Hello.May I speak to Jack? 你好。我可以和杰克说话吗?

A:Jack? (2)_____ 杰克? (2)_____

B:Oh, sorry. 哦，抱歉。

A:That's OK. 没关系。

... ……

B:Hello.May I speak to Jack, please? 你好。请问我可以和杰克说话吗?

C: (3)_____ (3)_____

B:It's Sally. 我是萨莉。

C:Just hold the line,please. 请稍等。

(*A moment later.*) (过了一会儿。)

Sorry, (4)_____Can I take a message? 对不起，(4)_____要我捎个口信吗?

B:No, thanks.(5)_____ 不，谢谢。(5)_____

Now work in pairs.Act out the conversations. 现在结对练习，表演对话。

5 Complete the conversation with the words in the box. 用方框中的单词完成对话。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

include 包括　lonely 孤独的　suggestion 建议
trust 信任　worried 担忧的

A:Why are you so (1)_____? 你为什么如此 (1)_____?

B:I'm new here and the students in my class don't (2)_____ me.I feel so (3)_____.Can you help me?

我是新来的，我们班的学生不 (2)_____我。我感到如此 (3)_____。你能帮我吗?

A:I see.It takes some time before they (4)_____ new students in their circle of friends.My (5)_____ is: keep trying to make friends.

我明白了。他们把新学生 (4)_____他们的朋友圈前要花费一些时间。我的 (5)_____是：一直努力交朋友。

B:OK. I'll try. 好的。我会试试。

6 Complete the passage with the correct form of the words and expressions in the box.
用方框中的单词和短语的正确形式完成文章。

circle of friends 朋友圈　follow 跟随　treasure 珍宝
stay in touch 保持联系

When my grandmother died, I felt my heart break.Many dark days (1)_____, and I missed her so much.She was full of love for everyone in the family and every piece of advice she gave me was a (2)_____. She had a wide (3)_____ and they often came to see her.She (4)_____ with them until ② her last days.

当我奶奶去世时，我感到心都碎了。许多黑暗的日子 (1)_____，我非常想念她。她对家里的每一名成员都满是爱，她给我的每一条建议都是 (2)_____。她有个很广泛的 (3)_____，他们经常来看望她。她和他们 (4)_____直到她最后的日子。

7 Listen and choose the problem the speaker describes. 听并选择说话人所描述的问题。

课文听力 7

a) My best friend has found a new best friend. ☐
我最好的朋友已找了个新的最好的朋友。

b) My long-lasting friendship with someone is coming to an end. ☐
我和某人的长久友谊即将结束。

c) I have moved to a new school and I'm lonely. ☐
我已经转到一所新学校了，我很孤独。

d) My best friend's parents don't like me. ☐
我最好的朋友的父母不喜欢我。

8 Work in pairs.Choose the best piece of advice in your opinion for the problem in Activity 7.
结对练习。为活动 7 中的问题选择你认为最好的建议。

a) Talk about your feelings. ☐
谈论你的感受。

b) Try to spend some time with your friend.Do something that is special to both of you. ☐

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

尽力花一些时间和你的朋友在一起。做件对你们都很特殊的事情。

c) Forget about your friend.Nothing stays the same all the time. ☐

忘记你的朋友。没有什么是一成不变的。

Now listen and number the pieces of advice in the order you hear them.

现在听，并按照你听到这些建议的顺序给它们编号。

9 Write about a friend. 写一个朋友。

1. Describe your friend. How did your friendship start?
   描述你的朋友。你们的友谊是如何开始的?
2. What makes your friend so special? 什么使你的朋友如此特别?
3. What do you do together to have fun[3]? 你们一起做什么很开心?
4. Do you think your friendship will stay the same in the future? Why or why not?
   你认为你们的友谊在未来会保持不变吗? 为什么会或为什么不会?

Around the world 世界各地

Pen friends 笔友

Many people make friends by writing letters.One way to find a pen friend is to join a club. International Pen Friends started in 1967 and has over 300,000 members in different countries. Their youngest member is eight years old, and their oldest member is over eighty.Some people write to find out about life in another country. Others want to practise their foreign languages or share[4] their hobbies. Stamp collectors, for example, write to people in different countries so that they can collect the stamps on the letters they receive.Most people just enjoy making friends, and they invite their pen friends to visit them.

许多人通过写信交朋友。找笔友的一种方式就是加入一个俱乐部。国际笔友（俱乐部）成立于 1967 年，有来自不同国家的 300，000 多名成员。他们最小的成员 8 岁，最大的 80 多岁。一些人写信来弄清楚在另一个国家的生活情况，另一些人想练习他们的外语或分享他们的爱好。比如说，集邮者给不同国家的人写信，那么他们就能从收到的信上收集到邮票。大多数人只是喜欢交朋友，并且他们邀请他们的笔友来拜访他们。

Module task:Making a poster about friendship 模块任务：制作一张关于友谊的海报

10 Work in groups.Read the list.Discuss what is important about friendship. Make choices and give reasons why you choose them. 小组活动。阅读列表。讨论关于友谊什么是重要的。做选择并给出你选择它们的理由。

·always help each other 总是互相帮助
·be honest[5] to each other 相互坦诚
·be kind to each other 相互友好
·go to school together 一起上学
·share things with each other 互相分享东西

11 Make your poster with your group members.Write about your own experience and draw some pictures. 和你的组员们制作海报。写关于你自己的经历并画一些图画。

12 Present your poster to the rest of the class. 把你的海报展示给班里其他学生看。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

•考点应用 •考点批注

★Yes, he told me that he had, but I think it's a surprise.

① **surprise** /səˈpraɪz/ *n.* 令人惊讶的事（作可数名词）

e.g. It was a great surprise to learn of her marriage. 她结婚是一件令人意外的事。

What a surprise! 真是让人惊喜！

He looked up in surprise. 他惊讶地抬头看。

To my surprise, Jim didn't pass the Chinese exam.
使我惊讶的是，吉姆语文考试没有及格。

★surprise 作不可数名词，意为"惊奇；惊讶"。

- in surprise 惊奇地
- to one's surprise 使某人惊讶的是

考题在线 1 根据句意及所给中文提示，用单词的正确形式完成句子

Harris started to plan secretly to give the poor boy a big _____（惊奇；惊喜）. [温州]

★She stayed in touch with them until her last days.

② **until** /ənˈtɪl/ *conj.* & *prep.* 直到……时（为止）

e.g. He ran until he was breathless. 他一直跑到气喘吁吁才停下。（连词）

He will be working until 5 o'clock. 他将一直工作到五点钟。（介词）

You mustn't eat anything until you see the doctor.
直到看过医生之后，你才能吃东西。 → not...until... 直到……才……



考题在线 2 Tom watched the World Cup _____11:30 last night. [兰州]

A. when B. unless C. until D. as soon as

点拨：用词义分析法解题。when"当……时"；unless"如果不"；until"直到……为止"；as soon as "一……就……"。句意为"昨天晚上汤姆看世界杯直到 11:30"。

★What do you do together to have fun?

③ **have fun(=have a good time/enjoy oneself) 玩得高兴，过得愉快**

e.g. I had fun in the park last Saturday. 上个星期六我在公园里玩得很高兴。

We are having fun boating on the lake. 我们开心地在湖里划船。

have fun (in) doing sth. 做某事有乐趣

考题在线 3 用所给词的适当形式填空。

Children had fun _____ (play)in Disneyland on Children's Day.

★Others want to practise their foreign languages or share their hobbies.

④ **share** /ʃeə/ *v.* 分享

e.g. Share this bag of sweets with your friends.
和你的朋友们分着吃这袋糖果吧。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

share
- 动词：share in 分享；分担；share sth. with sb. 与某人分享某物
- 名词：意为“（某人应得或应负担的）一份”

They try to get the kids to share in the housework.
他们努力让孩子分担家务。
You have to do your share of the housework.
你必须做你该分担的那一份家务。

考题在线 4 Tom and Peter are good friends. They can talk about and _____(分享) everything. [南充]

★**be honest to each other**

⑤ **honest** /ˈɒnɪst/ *adj.* 诚实的；实在的

e.g. I think he is an honest man. 我认为他是一个诚实的人。
To be honest, I have to improve my English, because my English is not good enough.
老实说，我得提高一下我的英语了，因为我的英语还不够好。

- honest 的反义词为 dishonest 不诚实的
- to be honest 老实说；说实话

考题在线 5 —Do you watch *Peppa Pig* on TV? It's so funny!
—Well, no, to be _____, I think it's quite silly. [无锡]
A. curious B. brave C. gentle D. honest
点拨：考查形容词辨析。curious 好奇的；brave 勇敢的；gentle 绅士的；honest 诚实的。此处用固定短语 to be honest，表示“说实话”。

考题在线答案 1. surprise 2. C 3. playing 4. share 5. D

Ⅲ. 模块语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

whether/if 及疑问词引导的宾语从句

考点 1 宾语从句的引导词 whether, if 及疑问词的用法

考向 1：宾语从句中引导词 whether,if 的用法：
由 whether/if 引导的宾语从句，实际上是由一般疑问句演变而来的。常用来表达不确定的概念。宾语从句要用陈述语序。一般来说，在宾语从句中 whether 与 if 可以互换使用。

e.g. —I wonder if I may have a word with you.
我想知道我是否可以和你谈谈。
—Yes, of course. 是的，当然。

但在特殊情况下 if 与 whether 是不能互换的。只用 whether，不能用 if 引导的情况有：
(1) 在介词的后面

e.g. I'm thinking of whether we should go to see the film. 我正在想我们是否该去看这部电影。

(2) 与 or not 连用时

e.g. I can't say whether or not they can come on time. 我无法说他们是否能按时来。

(3) 后面接不定式时

e.g. She can't decide whether to stay.
她无法决定是否留下来。

考题在线 1 —Could you tell me _____ you'd like me to pay you?
—You'd better use mobile payment. I don't care _____ it is Ali Pay or WeChat Pay. [广东]
A. how; whether B. how; why
C. what; whether D. what; why
点拨：第一空意为“如何”，用连接词 how；第二空 whether...or... 意为“是……还是……”。

考向 2：疑问词引导的宾语从句

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

疑问词引导的宾语从句实际上是由特殊疑问句演变而来的，宾语从句要用陈述语序。常用于这种结构的动词（短语）有：say, tell, ask, know, decide, show, find out, imagine, suggest, doubt, wonder, discover, understand, advise 等。

疑问代词有：who, whom, whose, which, what。

e.g. Can you tell me whom you are waiting for? 你能告诉我你在等谁吗?

疑问副词有：when, where, why, how，在句中作状语。

e.g. None of us knows where he bought this car. 我们没有人知道他在哪儿买的这辆车。

考题在线 2 —Do you know _____ the school library closes, Susan?

—Ten o'clock at night. [贵阳]

A. when B. why C. who

速记小筏：巧记宾语从句的引导词：陈述句子用 that；一般疑问是否（if/whether）替；特殊问句更好办，引导还用疑问词。

考点 2 宾语从句的语序

考向：宾语从句的语序是陈述语序，即：疑问词 + 主语 + 谓语 + 其他成分。



e.g. I don't know what they are looking for.

我不知道他们正在找什么。

Could you tell me when the train will leave?

你能告诉我火车什么时候离开吗?

速记小筏：巧记宾语从句的语序，从句永保陈述语序。

考题在线 3 —Could you tell me _____ tomorrow?

—It will be sunny.

A. what will the weather be like

B. what the weather will be like

C. when will the weather be sunny

D. when the weather will be sunny

点拨：由答语“明天阳光明媚”。可知，宾语从句询问天气怎么样，排除 C、D 项。宾语从句要用陈述语序，故选 B。

考题在线答案 1. A 2. A 3. B

Ⅳ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20 分

写作小练笔

介绍“before the smile”

It was the early autumn of my first year at a new school. I felt lonely and afraid to make friends. When I heard the other students talking and laughing, I felt even more lonely.

One day, many students were talking happily with their friends, but I sat in silence. At that moment, a girl passed me . She looked at me without a word but smiled at me.Suddenly, I felt a touch of something bright and friendly. It made me feel happy, lively and warm.

介绍“seeing the smile”

The smile changed my life. Day by day, I learnt to trust people and made friends with them. Now,I believe that the world is what you think it is. My suggestion is:smile at the world and it will smile back.

介绍“after the smile”

模块话题

某班召开了主题为“What is real friendship?”的班会，请你对他们讨论出的观点进行总结，写一篇英语短文。

1. 真正的朋友应该互相帮助，互相信任（trust each other）；
2. 真正的朋友应该共同分担困难与悲伤，分享幸福与喜悦；
3. 真正的朋友是不会嘲笑对方的，朋友之间的相处需要耐心和理解。

要求：1. 可适当增加细节，以使行文连贯；2.80 词左右。

_____

_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

1. 本文要求表达观点，属于议论文。
2. 时态以一般现在时为主。
3. 陈列观点时要逐条描述。

写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

“观点态度归纳法”写友谊话题类作文

“观点态度归纳法”写作步骤：第一步引入主题；第二步归纳、陈列别人的观点；第三步表明自己的态度和观点。

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）



经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	discussion, real, trust, share, difficulty, happiness
短语	at the class meeting, each other, as well as, laugh at, in my opinion
句子	① I understand what real friendship is. ② Instead, we should be patient and try to understand each other.

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

After the discussion at the class meeting, I understand what real friendship is.

Firstly, real friends should help each other and trust each other. Secondly, real friends should learn to share each other's difficulty and sorrow as well as happiness and joy. Thirdly, as real friends, we shouldn't laugh at each other. Instead, we should be patient and try to understand each other.

In my opinion, friendship is very important and we should treasure it in our life.

名师点评：本文用“观点态度归纳法”谈论友谊话题，条理清楚，内容完整，观点鲜明。第一步：使用宾语从句 what real friendship is 引出话题；第二步：用 Firstly, Secondly, Thirdly 归纳讨论观点，使文章衔接更紧密，更具逻辑性；第三步：使用“In my opinion...”表达自己的观点，呼应全文，使文章结构更完整。



V. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见270页）

一、针对性训练

1. —May I speak to Mary?

—_____. I'll call her at once.

A. Hold the line, please

B. She isn't in

C. This is Mary

D. I can take a message

2. When he heard the news, he was very _____ and he looked at me _____.

A. surprising; with surprise

B. surprise; with surprise

C. surprised; in surprise

D. surprising; in surprise

3. Please write _____ me and tell me _____ yourself.

A. to; to　　B. to; about

C. about; to　　D. about; about

4. Never put off _____ tomorrow what you

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

can do today.

A. until　　B. before

C. when　　D. as

5. —How much do you know about Taiwan,Li Fen?

—Taiwan and the mainland have a lot in common.They _____ a lot of history and culture.

A. support　　B. explain

C. share　　D. belong

二、语法专练

6. You do not win respect by showing _____ you are,but what you're able to do. [无锡]

A. where　　B. who

C. how　　D. when

7.—Could you tell me _____?

—Sure. Go down the street, and you can find it at the second crossing ! [滨州]

A. where is the supermarket

B. where the supermarket is

C. when does the supermarket open

D. when the supermarket opens

8.—You are not supposed to enter the teachers' office _____.

—Thanks, Mom. I got it.

【导学号：9465610】[成都]

A. unless you are allowed to

B. if you want to ask questions

C. when you are asked to come in

9.—Could you tell me _____ for the fruit?

—By paying over the Internet. [天津]

A. how much will I pay

B. how much I will pay

C. how will I pay

D. how I will pay

10.I'm planning a trip to the beach tomorrow,but still can't decide _____. [河北]

A. where I'm going

B. how I'm going

C. why I'm planning

D. when I'm planning

三、模块知识浓缩

In my first year at a new school, no one knew me.I was _____[11] to make friends with anyone.I couldn't talk to my parents about my _____[12].I was very _____[13].Then one day, when I sat in _____[14], a girl came to me and smiled at me.I felt happy, lively and warm.It was like a hidden _____[15] and changed my life. _____[16], I learnt to _____[17] other students and they _____[18] me in their _____[19] of friends.The girl with the _____[20] smile has become my best friend now, and we _____[21] together like glue.Now I believe that the world is what you think it is.So smile at the world and it will smile back.

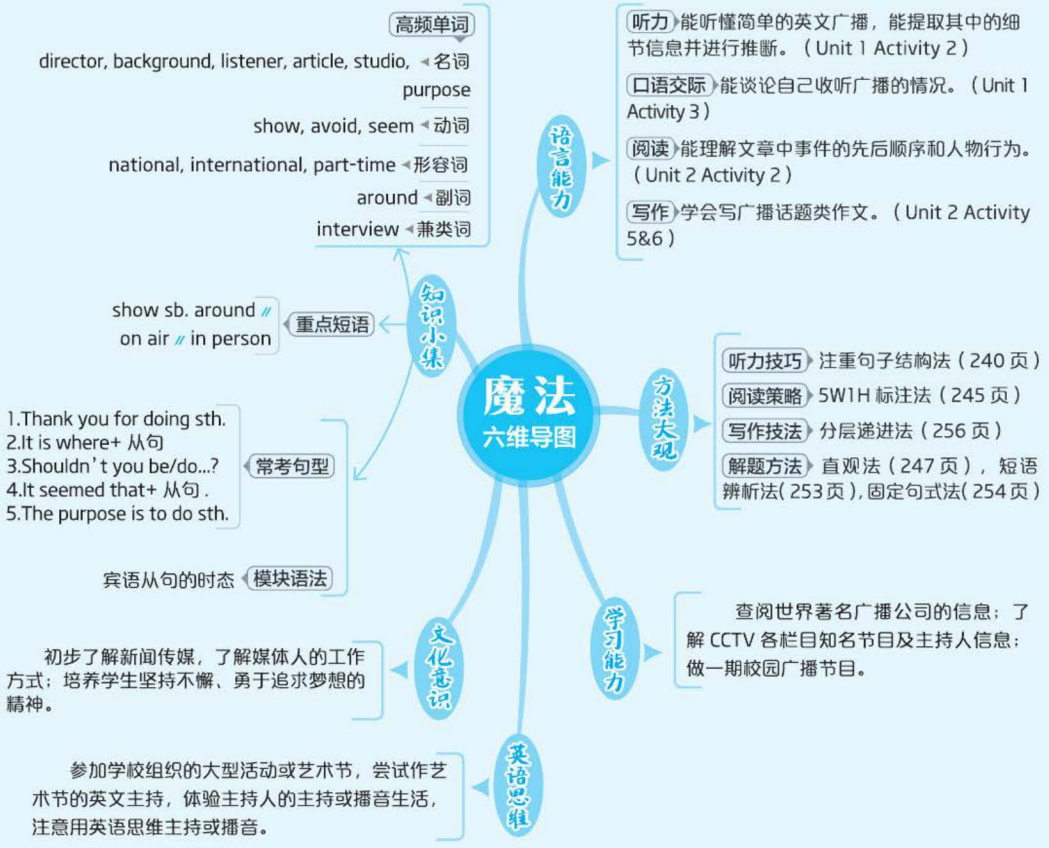
I think success has no rules, but you can learn a lot from failure.

我认为成功没有定律，但你可从失败中学到很多东西。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Module 10 On the radio

词汇表听写



记忆大师

Unit 1 I hope that you can join us one day.

必背单词

1.show *v.* 引领；带领 →**showed**（过去式）→**shown**（过去分词）

2.avoid *v.* 避免；防止 →**avoid doing sth.** 避免干某事

3.national *adj.* 国家的；国内的 →**nation** *n.* 国家；民族

4.international *adj.* 国际的；世界的 →**internation** *n.* 国际

5.interview *n.* 采访；访谈；*v.* 采访，访问 →**interviewer** *n.* 采访者

6.director *n.* 导演；主管；经理

7.around *adv.* 到处；向各处

8.background *n.* 背景；后景

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

9.presenter *n.* 主持人

‖ 必背短语

10.show sb. around 带某人参观

11.on air（广播或电视）播出

12.do interviews with sb. 采访某人

13.keep quiet 保持安静

14.win the match 赢得比赛

15.turn on 打开

‖ 必背句子

16. Now, **come this way**. 现在这边走。

17. It **gets crazy** in here just **before** the programme begins.

在节目开播之前这里变得很疯狂。

18. So **keep studying**, and I **hope** that you can **join** us one day.

所以坚持学习，而且我希望有一天你能加入到我们中来。

19.That's great **news**! 那是很棒的消息啊！

Unit 2 It seemed that they were speaking to me in person.

‖ 必背单词

1.seem *v.* 看来；似乎 →**It seemed/seems that**... 好像……

2.listener *n.* 听众；听者 →**listen** *v.* 听

3.part-time *adj.* 兼职的 →**full-time** 全职的

4.article *n.* 文章；报道

5.studio *n.* 录制室；录音室

6.purpose *n.* 意图；目的

‖ 必背短语

7.look down at sb. 低头看某人

8.do a sound check 做声音测试

9.in person 亲自

10.look out of the window 向窗外看

11.learn about 了解

12.be happy with 对……满意

13.close down 关上；关闭

‖ 必背句子

14.Shouldn't you be at school?

难道你不是应该在上学吗?

15.It seemed that they were speaking **not to** lots of listeners **but to** me in person.

感觉他们好像不是在和广大听众说话，而是在亲自和我说话。

16.At the age of nine, I asked for part-time jobs in small radio stations.

九岁时，我在一些小电台找了兼职工作。

17.As I grew older, my interest in radio **grew**.

随着年龄的增长，我对广播的兴趣与日俱增。

Unit 3 Language in use

‖ 必背短语

1.win the first prize 获得一等奖

2.as well 也；并且

3.go to university 上大学

4.keep on doing sth. 坚持一直做某事

‖ 必背句子

5.We **want to know how you've become** so successful.

我们想要知道你是怎样变得这么成功的。

6.If you're very interested in something,you usually **want to** be good at it.

如果你对某件事非常感兴趣，你通常想精通它。

‖ 必背语法

7.I hope **that you can join us one day**.

我希望有一天你能加入我们。

8.When it's on, it means **we're** on air.

当它（红灯）亮时，意味着我们正在广播。

9.It seemed **that they were speaking** to me in person.

感觉他们好像是在亲自和我说话。

10. Just tell me **what you had** for breakfast.

就告诉我你早餐吃了什么。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 1 I hope that you can join us one day.

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

Listening and vocabulary 听力与词汇

1 Listen and check(√)the types of news you hear. 听并对你听到的新闻的种类打（√）。

culture □ 文化□ government □ 政府□ sports □ 体育运动□ weather □ 天气□

2 Listen again and complete the sentences. 再听一遍并完成句子。

课文听力1

1. Zhang Li reads _____ on Radio Beijing. 张丽在北京广播电台读_____。
2. The president of Russia will stay in China for _____.
   俄罗斯总统将在中国停留_____。
3. The match is between _____ and _____. 比赛在_____和_____之间进行。

3 Listen and read. 听与读。

课文朗读3

Chen Huan: Hi, everybody.I'm the news director/dəˈrektə;daɪˈrektə/ ① at Radio Beijing. 嗨，大家好。我是北京广播电台的新闻导播。

Lingling: Thank you for showing/ʃəʊɪŋ/ us around ②/əˈraʊnd/. 谢谢你带我们参观。

Chen Huan: No problem! Now, come this way.Look at the red light.When it's on,it means ③ we're on air ④.And we should avoid/əˈvɔɪd/ ⑤ making any noise in the background/ˈbækˌgraʊnd/!
不客气！现在走这边。看这个红灯。当它亮时，意味着我们正在广播。我们应该避免背景噪音！

Tony:OK. 好的。

Chen Huan: This is the newsroom.We collect the latest national/ˈnæʃnəl/ ⑥ and international/ˌɪntəˈnæʃnəl/ news and write reports here.It gets crazy in here just before the programme begins.
这是新闻编辑部。我们收集最新的国内和国际新闻，并在这里写报道。节目开始前，这里会变得很疯狂。

Lingling: How can I become a presenter/prɪˈzentə/? 我怎么能成为一名主持人呢?

Chen Huan:I think you need to speak English really well.So keep studying, and I hope that you can join us one day.
我认为你英语需要说得非常好。所以，坚持学习，我希望有一天你能加入到我们中来。

Tony: What about the sports news? 体育新闻怎么样?

Chen Huan: That's over there.And it is where we do interviews/ˈɪntəˌvjuːz/ ⑦ with the big sports stars.Let's watch the presenter.Remember what I said:we need to keep quiet if the red light is on.
在那边。那是我们采访一些著名的体育明星的地方。让我们看看主持人。记住我说的话：如果红灯亮时，我们需要保持安静。

Presenter: Finally, we've just heard that Germany has won the football match, 2-1 against England. 最后，我们刚刚收到的消息，在足球比赛中德国以 2 比 1 战胜了英格兰。

Lingling: Hey! That's great news! 嘿！那真是好消息！

Tony: No, it's awful news! 不，这是糟糕的消息！

All: Ssh! 嘘!

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Presenter:...And that's the end of the six o'clock news. ……六点钟的新闻在这里就结束了。

Everyday English 日常英语

·Come this way. 这边走。

·It gets crazy in here... 这里变得疯狂……

·That's great news! 那真是好消息!

Now complete the notes. 现在完成下列记录。

1. When the red light is on, it means _____.
   当红灯亮时，意味着_____。
2. We collect _____ and write reports in the newsroom.
   我们在新闻编辑部收集_____和写报道。
3. You should _____ if you want to be a presenter.
   你应该_____如果你想成为一名主持人。
4. This is also where we _____ with the big sports stars.
   这里也是我们_____著名体育明星的地方。

4 Complete the sentences with the words in the box. 用方框中的单词完成句子。

avoid 避免　background 背景　international 国际的
interviews 采访　national 国内的

1. Newspapers and television programmes often have _____ with famous people.
   报纸和电视节目经常有对名人的_____。
2. More and more _____ students are coming to China to learn Chinese.
   越来越多的_____学生来到中国学习中文。
3. Every country has its own _____ hero—a person who did something very important for the country and its people.
   每个国家都有自己的_____英雄——一个为国家和人民做了非常重要的事情的人。
4. Try to _____ drinking too much tea or coffee, or you will not be able to sleep well.
   尽量_____喝太多的茶或咖啡，否则你将睡不好。
5. Could you speak a little bit louder, please? It is very noisy in the _____.
   请你说大声一点儿，好吗？在_____里非常吵。

Pronunciation and speaking 发音与会话

5 Read and predict how the speaker is likely to pronounce *the*.

读并且预测说话者可能如何念“*the*”。

1. the red light 红灯
2. the interview 采访
3. the programme 节目
4. the football match 足球比赛
5. the end 结尾
6. the reports 报道
7. the sports news 体育新闻

Now listen and check. 现在听并检查。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

6 **Say the expressions in Activity 5 aloud.** 大声说活动 5 中的短语。

7 **Work in pairs.Ask and answer questions about the radio.** 结对练习。提问并回答关于广播的问题。

1. What do you like listening to? 你喜欢听什么?
2. What do you not like listening to? 你不喜欢听什么?
3. What programme did you listen to the last time you turned on the radio?
   你上一次打开收音机听的节目是什么?
4. What do you need to do if you want to be a presenter? 如果你想成为一名主持人，你需要做什么?

Now work with other pairs.Find out who has the same answers.

现在和其他小组结对练习，找出谁有相同的答案。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注　　•考点应用

★director 是由“direct(v. 指挥；导演；管理)+-or(名词后缀)”构成的。

★动词加后缀-or 或-er 构成的名词：

- -or:
  invent(发明) → inventor(发明家)
  visit(参观) → visitor(游客)
- -er:
  sing(唱歌) → singer(歌唱家)
  teach(教) → teacher(教师)

★I'm the news director at Radio Beijing.

① **director** /dəˈrektə/ *n.* **导演；主管；经理**

e.g. Zhang Yimou is a famous director in China. He has directed many popular films. 张艺谋是中国著名的导演，他执导过很多受欢迎的电影。

考题在线 1 根据汉语提示完成句子

The _____（导演）told the actress to have a rest.

★Thank you for showing us around.

② **show sb. around** 带某人参观　show sb. around/round=take sb. around/round 带某人参观

e.g. Let me show you around. 让我带你四处看看吧。

考题在线 2 根据汉语意思完成句子。

你带领我们全家在城镇里参观真是太好了。

It's very kind of you _____ _____ my family _____ the town.

★When it's on, it means we're on air.

③ **mean** /miːn/ *v.* **意思是；意味着；打算**

敲黑板 mean 的过去式及过去分词均为 meant。

e.g. I mean to go to the park this afternoon.
今天下午我打算去公园。

Missing the bus means waiting for another hour.
错过这班公交车意味着要再等一小时。

What's the meaning of the word? 这个单词是什么意思? n. 意义；意思 meaningful adj. 有意义的

考题在线 3 Loving your children doesn't mean _____ them whatever they want.

A. give　　B. giving　　C. to give　　D. gives

点拨:mean doing sth.“意味着干某事”。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

④ **on air**（广播或电视）播出

e.g. The programme *Face to Face* is on air.《面对面》节目正在播出。

考题在线 4 We will be back _____ tomorrow morning at half past six.Please turn on your radio in time and don't miss it.

A. in the air　　B. by air　　C. in the open air　　D. on air

拓展：常见的类似结构

on the phone 通电话

on TV 在电视上

on the radio 通过收音机

on air 在句中常作表语。其中 on 为介词，意为"通过；借助于"，表示方式或手段。其反义短语为 off（the）air 停止播送（电视、广播）。

mean to do sth. 打算或企图做某事，主语通常是表示人的名词或代词

mean doing sth. 意味着做某事，主语通常是指事物的词

★And we should avoid making any noise in the background!

avoid 后接动词的 -ing 形式，敲黑板 不接动词不定式。

⑤ **avoid** /əˈvɔɪd/ *v.* 避免；防止

e.g. The government and its people should do something to avoid the air pollution. 政府和它的人民应该采取一些措施来避免空气污染。

In the exam we all try to avoid making mistakes.

在考试中，我们都尽力避免犯错。

考题在线 5 We should _____ making a noise in the library. [天津]

A. avoid　　B. prefer　　C. practise　　D. enjoy

- avoid+ 名词 / 代词 避免……
- avoid doing sth. 避免做某事

★We collect the latest national and international news and write reports here.

nation *n.* 国家；民族 ↓ national *adj.* 国家的；国内的 ↓ international *adj.* 国际的；世界的

⑥ **national** /ˈnæʃnəl/ *adj.* 国家的；国内的

e.g. I suggest you see their national park—Yellowstone National Park.

我建议你参观一下他们的国家公园——黄石国家公园。

You have every reason to be proud of your country and nation.

你们有理由为你们的国家和民族感到骄傲。

考题在线 6 根据汉语意思完成句子。

成千上万的人们每天早上去天安门广场看升旗。 [达州]

Thousands of people go to Tian'anmen Square and watch the _____ _____ go up every morning.

- national culture 民族文化
- National Day 国庆节
- national flag 国旗
- national spirit 民族精神

★And it is where we do interviews with the big sports stars.

⑦ **interview** /ˈɪntəˌvjuː/ *v.* 采访，访谈 *n.* 采访，访问

e.g. A reporter from *China Daily* interviewed the president about the accident.

一位来自《中国日报》的记者就这起事故采访了总统。

We did an interview with the hero yesterday.

昨天我们采访了这位英雄。

I gave an interview to a TV station last weekend.

上周末我接受了一家电视台的采访。

- interview sb. about sth. 就某事采访某人
- do an interview with sb. 采访某人
- give an interview（to）接受（……的）采访

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

考题在线 7 We are going to _____（采访）the famous writer next week. [北部湾经济区]

考题在线答案 1. director 2. to show/take; around/round 3. B 4. D 5. A 6. national flag 7. interview

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

（答案见271页）

听力技巧

注重句子结构法（在听广播时，我们应该把注意力集中在句子的基本结构上，设法抓住整个句子所表达的意思。）

听力过程

课文听力1

听教材 Activity 1，完成下面的句子

1.It's _____ o'clock in the afternoon.

2.The president of Russia will stay in China for _____ days.

3.The match is between China and _____.

4. China is _____, but there is still half an hour to go.

5.We're looking forward to the _____.

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见271页）

一、根据句意及首字母提示完成句子

1.Feng Xiaogang is one of the most famous d_____ in China.

2.October 1st is our N_____ Day.

3.As a reporter, I often i_____ some famous people.

4.The poor countries in Africa need more i_____ help.

5.Could you speak louder,please? There is lots of b_____ noise. I can't hear you clearly.

二、用所给单词的适当形式填空

6.Thanks for _____(give) me some advice.

7.—What does your sister do?
—She is a city radio _____(present).

8.To be healthy, you should keep _____(take) exercise every day.

9.You must avoid _____(be) late for school again.

10.—What's the _____ of the word "smart"?
—It _____"clever". (mean)

三、单项选择

11.Peter will _____ you _____ the building and you can meet everyone. [天津]

A. lend; to　　B. show; around
C. compare; with　　D. brush; off

12.Could you speak _____ louder,please?

A. a bit of　　B. a little of
C. a little bit　　D. a few

13.In some parts of London, missing a bus means _____ for another hour. 【导学号：9465610】

A. waiting　　B. to wait
C. wait　　D. to be waiting

14.I am so excited, because I will have an interview _____ Robert Downey Jr.

A. with　　B. after
C. in　　D. at

15.—Why did he get up so early to work?
—In order to _____ the heavy traffic in the city. [鄂州]

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

A. avoid　　B. stop

C. cancel　　D. solve

四、根据汉语完成句子

16. 我们将在十分钟后播出。

We will be _____ _____ in ten minutes.

17. 李叔叔昨天带我们参观了他的办公室。

Uncle Li _____ us _____ his office yesterday.

18. 我打算明天去。你呢?

I _____ _____ _____ tomorrow. What about you?

19. 请这边走。

Please _____ _____ _____.

20. 明天会下雨。请记得带上你的雨伞。

It will rain tomorrow.Please _____ _____ bring your umbrella.

Unit 2 It seemed that they were speaking to me in person.



I. 课文原文、译文及导读

原文译文 · 导读　　导读批注

Reading and vocabulary 阅读与词汇

Pre-reading（读前）

1. Is there a radio station at your school?
2. When does the radio station start working?
3. What kind of programme do you like best?
4. What do you think of the radio station at school?

1 Look at the photo and say what it shows.

看图片，并说出它展示的是什么。



2 Read the passage and decide where you are likely to see the photo.



阅读短文，判断你可能在哪儿看到这个图片。

a) In a book about the history of radio.

在一本关于广播历史的书里。

b) In the life story of a famous radio presenter.

在一个著名广播主持人的生平事迹里。

c) In a book on how radio works.

在一本关于广播是如何运作的书里。

批 体裁：记叙文

While-reading（读中）

1. When did the writer start listening to his favorite programme?
2. When did he ask for part-time jobs in small radio stations?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

批标题：点明中心式

由"Radio times 广播时代"可知本文是一篇回忆类文章，由此推测：追忆电台主持人的生活故事是本文主旨。

批文章结构：层进结构

Part 1(Para 1–3): The interview

↓

Part 2(Para 4–6): The life story of the presenter

↓

Part 3(Para 7–12): The interview

批事件：(Events)

- At 4: sat close to the radio, listening to...
- At 9: asked for part-time jobs
- As he grew older, learnt about Internet radio
- Soon, did weekly programmes
- At 15: got the job

3. Did he get the job, full-time or part-time?

4. Where is the passage from ?

Radio times 广播时代

"How old are you?" The radio manager looked down at① me.

"你多大了？"广播电台经理低头看着我。

"Fifteen," I said. "十五岁。"我说。

"And you want a job in radio? Shouldn't you be at school?" he asked. "你想找一份广播方面的工作吗？你不是应该在上学吗？"他问道。

How could I explain? I've always loved the radio. I still remember, when I was four years old, I sat close to② the radio in the living room, listening to my favourite programmes and to the voices of my favourite presenters. It seemed/siːmd/③ that they were speaking not to lots of listeners/ˈlɪsnəz/ but④ to me in person⑤. At the age of nine, I asked for part-time/pɑːtˈtaɪm/ jobs in small radio stations.

我怎么解释呢？我一直喜欢广播。我还记得，当我四岁的时候，我坐在客厅的收音机旁，听我最喜欢的节目和我最喜欢的主持人的声音。感觉他们好像不是在和广大听众说话，而是在亲自和我说话。在九岁的时候，我在小广播电台找兼职工作。

As I grew older, my interest in radio grew. One day I learnt about Internet radio.Once a week⑥, I played my favourite music from my father's computer, talked about life at school, and hoped someone might be listening.

随着年龄的增长，我对广播的兴趣也在增长。一天，我了解了网络电台。每周一次，我用我爸爸的电脑播放我最喜欢的音乐，谈论在学校的生活，并希望有人可能在收听。

Soon my friends at school started to listen, and then they wanted to help.We prepared a programme once a week, doing research by reading articles/ˈɑːtɪklz/ about music and sports news. We also did research for jokes and the weather report (I did this by looking out of the window).

很快，我学校的朋友开始收听，然后他们想要帮忙。每周我们准备一个节目，通过阅读有关音乐和体育新闻的文章做研究。我们也对笑话和天气预报（我通过看窗外来做这个）做研究。

"OK, come with me," the manager said. I sat down in the studio /ˈstjuːdiəʊ/. He was in another room, behind a glass wall.

"好的，跟我来。"经理说。我坐在广播室里。他在另一个房间里，在玻璃墙后面。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

"OK, let's do a sound check.Just tell me what you had for breakfast."

"好的，咱们来做一个声音测试吧。就告诉我你早餐吃了什么。"

All radio presenters need to answer the same question before they begin work. The purpose/pɜ:pəs/⑦ is to check the sound level.

所有的广播主持人在他们开始工作前都需要回答同样的问题。目的是为了测试声音的水平。

"I had eggs, fruit and some milk." "我吃了鸡蛋、水果，喝了一些牛奶。"

"OK, that's great!" the man behind the glass said. "好的，太棒了！"玻璃后面的男人说。

This was how my first real job in radio began.

这就是我的第一份真正的在广播电台的工作是如何开始的。

批 句子赏析：

文中第1部分(1,2,3段)和第3部分中(7,8,10,11段)分别用了对话的表达方式，很形象地把电台经理对作者面试的场景展现了出来，鲜明地展示了人物的性格，使读者有"如闻其声，如见其人"之感。

批 词语赏析：

第4段中"always loved; sat close to; in person"及第5段中"interest...grew"均体现出作者对广播的热爱之深。

After-reading（读后）

写作小练笔

（答案见255页）

Learning to learn 学会学习

When you read a story, it is important to understand the order in which different events happen.

当你阅读一个故事时，理解不同事件发生的顺序是很重要的。

You may find it useful to draw a timeline and write notes about each event.

你可能会发现给每个事件都画个时间轴并记下笔记是有用的。

3 Complete the sentences. 完成句子。

1. The writer met _____ in a radio station. 作者在广播电台遇见_____。
2. The manager asked why he wanted a job _____.
   经理问为什么他想要一份_____工作。
3. At the age of four, the writer _____,listening to his favourite programmes.
   在四岁时，作者_____，听他最喜爱的节目。
4. At the age of nine, he asked for part-time jobs in _____.
   在九岁时，他在_____找兼职工作。
5. As he grew older, he learnt about _____. 随着年龄的增长，他了解_____。
6. This was how the writer's _____ began. 这就是作者如何开始_____。

4 Complete the passage with the correct form of the words and expressions in the box.
用方框中的单词和短语的正确形式完成短文。

article 文章	at the age of 在……岁时	listener 听众
purpose 目的	seem 似乎	studio 录音室

Peter(1)_____ to be very happy with his new job.He works in the (2)_____ of a local radio station.He is lucky that(3)_____ only twenty he is doing something he loves and has a

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

real (4)_____.Every morning when he starts work, he does a sound check and then he looks for interesting newspaper (5)_____ to talk about on the show. The (6)_____ can phone in to talk to Peter or they can send emails to ask him to play their favourite songs.At the end of the show, he closes down all the equipment and goes home.

彼得对他的新工作 (1)_____非常满意。他在当地的一家广播电台的 (2)_____工作。他是幸运的 (3)_____仅 20 岁，他做着他喜爱的事情并有一个真正的 (4)_____。每天早晨，当他开始工作时，他要做一个声音测试，然后寻找有趣的报纸 (5)_____以便在节目中谈论。(6)_____能够打热线电话与彼得交谈或者他们能够发送电子邮件要求他播放他们最喜爱的歌曲。在节目结束时，他关闭所有的设备并且回家。

Writing 写作

5 Look at the sentences from the passage. 看来自文章中的句子。

"How old are you?" The radio manager looked down at me.

"你多大了？"广播电台经理低头看着我。

"Fifteen," I said. "十五岁。"我说。

"And you want a job in radio? Shouldn't you be at school?" he asked.

"你想在广播电台工作吗？你不是应该在学校吗？"他问。

I've always loved the radio.I still remember, when I was four years old,I sat close to the radio in the living room,listening to my favourite programmes and to the voices of my favourite presenters.

我一直喜欢广播。我仍记得当我四岁的时候，我坐在客厅的收音机旁，听我最喜欢的节目和我最喜欢的主持人的声音。

·describing an important event in the past 描述过去一个重要的事件

·giving background information 给出背景信息

Now find sentences in the passage in Activity 2 which show:

现在找出活动 2 的文章中表达下列内容的句子：

·important events in the past 过去重要的事件

·background information 背景信息

6 Write a passage describing an important event in the past and giving background information.

写一篇文章描述过去的一个重要的事件，并给出背景信息。

I first appeared on TV at the age of thirteen. A television presenter stopped me in the street, and started to interview me...

我第一次出现在电视上是在 13 岁的时候。一个电视主持人在街上叫住我，开始对我进行采访……

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

核心素养之文化意识

世界著名广播公司

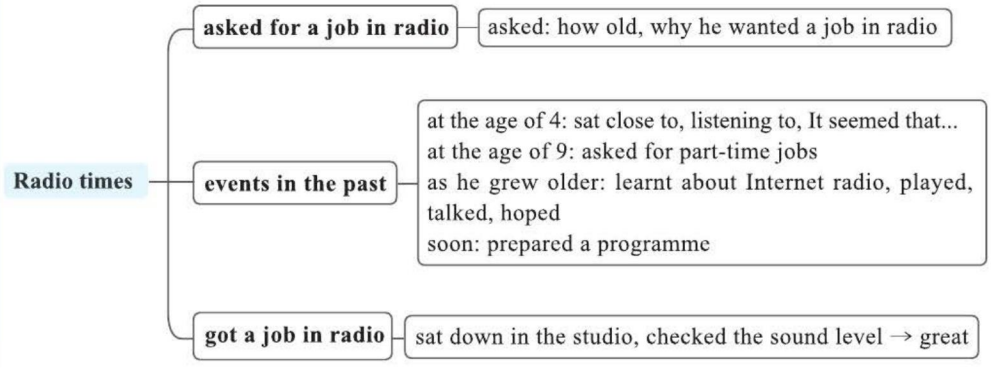
美国之音（Voice of America）

美国之音（VOA）是美国新闻署的对外广播系统，也是美国对外宣传的主要工具之一。VOA每天用43种语言向世界各地播放新闻、音乐和其他节目。VOA节目中有“标准英语（Standard English）”和“特别英语(Special English)”。“标准英语”广播语速快、句子长、词汇量大，适合中级以上英语水平的人；“特别英语”广播语音清晰、语速慢，适合初级英语水平的人。

英国广播公司（British Broadcasting Corporation）

英国广播公司（BBC）是提供广播、电视服务的非商业性公立组织。BBC于1922年成立，1936年成为世界上第一个正式播送电视节目的电视广播公司。

课文背诵指南



Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读60分

☞（答案见271页）

阅读策略

5W1H标注法（一些文章需要细读，因为有的题目是考查细节的。可以边读边用铅笔做一些标注，把有关的人物、事件、时间、地点、原因、方式，即5个W和1个H：Who, What, When, Where, Why和How标出来，使其一目了然。）

阅读过程

一、速读文章，回答下列问题

1.Did the writer get his first real job in radio?

（归纳概括题）

_____

二、细读文章，完成下列题目

拓展阅读

2.⊙When did the writer start listening to his favorite programmes?

（细节理解题）

_____

3. ⊙ When did the writer ask for part-time jobs in small radio stations?

_____

4.The writer met _____ in a radio station.

5.As the writer grew older,he learnt about _____.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注　　•考点应用

look down at 结构为：动词＋表示方向的副词＋介词，其中表示方向的副词表示动词的指向。

★The radio manager looked down at me.

① look down at 低头看

e.g. My father looked down at me. 我爸爸低头看着我。

拓展：look 相关短语

look down on sb. 看不起 / 轻视某人

look up to sb. 尊敬 / 敬仰某人

look up and down 上下打量

考题在线 1 Yuan Longping is very creative. We all look up to _____. [岳阳]

A. it　　B. him　　C. her

考题在线 2 —Why do you _____ Liu Hulan?

—Because she is a great heroine. [潍坊]

A. look like　　B. look down

C. look over　　D. look up to

点拨：由答语“因为她是一位伟大的女英雄。”可知问句句意为“你为什么敬仰刘胡兰？”。故此处应用 look up to“尊敬；敬仰”。

一语辨异：

You may look down at him but you shouldn't look down on him. In fact, many people look up to him in the field.
你可以低头看他，但你不应该看不起他。事实上，在这个领域很多人尊敬他。

close 为副词，意为“接近”。

★I still remember, when I was four years old, I sat close to the radio in the living room...

② close to 离……近

e.g. Don't stand too close to me. 站得不要离我太近。

The picture looks very different when you see it close.
这幅画贴近看时就很不一样。

考题在线 3 根据所给汉语完成句子

当你参观动物园时，站得不要离动物太近。

Don't stand too _____ _____ the animals when you visit the zoo.

- It seems/seemed that 似乎 / 好像……
- 主语+seem(s)(to be)+形容词 / 名词 / 介词短语
- 主语+seem(s)+to do sth.……似乎要做某事
- It seems as if... 看起来好像……

★It seemed that they were speaking not to lots of listeners but to me in person.

③ seem /si:m/ *v.* **看来；似乎**

e.g. It seems that he is quite happy. 他似乎很高兴。

He seems (to be) very sad. 他似乎很伤心。

Our team seems to win. 我们队好像要赢。

It seems as if it is going to rain. 天看起来要下雨。

知识微课

考题在线 4 —You seem _____. What's wrong?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

—My son hurt his leg this morning.

A. worry　　B. worried　　C. to worried　　D. be worried

点拨：固定用法“seem+*adj.* 或 seem+to be+*adj.*”。

④ **not... but... 不是……而是……**

e.g.My uncle is not a writer but a teacher.

我叔叔不是一名作家，而是一名老师。

Not the twins but Jack has gone to America.

不是那对双胞胎，而是杰克去了美国。

not... but... 用来连接两个并列成分，强调后者，在意思上表示转折。当 not... but... 连接两个主语时，谓语动词的数要与邻近它的主语保持一致。

考题在线 5 The thing that matters is not whether you fail or not, _____ whether you try or not.

A. and　　B. or　　C. so　　D. but

点拨：此题用直观法解题。从句子结构我们一眼可以看出本题考查的是固定结构 not... but...“不是……而是……”。

⑤ **in person 亲自；本人，在句中作状语，可以与 oneself 或 by oneself 互换。**



我再讲两分钟

e.g.Her mother will come in person. 她母亲会亲自来。

You can ask my mother in person. 你可以亲自问我母亲。

考题在线 6 从方框中选择合适的词汇完成句子

Asian, empty, in person, paint, nearly

If you can't be there _____, the next best thing is watching the match on TV.　　[嘉兴、舟山]

★**Once a week, I played my favourite music from my father's computer...**

⑥ **once a week 每周一次**

e.g.I go to see my grandparents once a week. 我每周去看望祖父母一次。

—How often does he go to Beijing? 他多长时间去一次北京?

—Once a year. 每年一次。

once a week 属于“once/twice/three times...+a day/week/month/year...”结构，表示某动作发生的频率，对该结构提问需用 how often。

考题在线 7 —I wonder _____ the students have a physical examination.

—Once a year.　　[安徽]

A. how far　　B. how soon　　C. how long　　D. how often

点拨：考查固定搭配。how far, 对距离提问，多远；how soon，多久以后；how long, 对时间提问，多长时间；how often 对频率提问，多久一次。由 Once a year. 可知应提问频率，用 how often。

★**The purpose is to check the sound level.**

⑦ **purpose** /pɜ:pəs/ *n.* **意图，目的**

e.g.The purpose of this meeting is to elect a new chairman. 这次会议的目

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

- on purpose 故意，有意地
- for the purpose of 为了……

的是选举一位新主席。

He did it on purpose, knowing it would annoy her.

他明知会激怒她，却故意做这件事。

He studied hard for the purpose of getting a better job.

他努力学习是为了得到更好的工作。

考题在线 8 The _____ of this activity is to raise money for a new hospital. [天津]

A. silence B. purpose C. culture D. language

考题在线答案 1. B 2. D 3. close to 4. B 5. D 6. in person 7. D 8. B

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见271页)

一、根据首字母提示完成句子

1. If you are free, you can do some p_____ jobs.
2. It s_____ to rain, because there are dark clouds in the sky.
3. There are many interesting a_____ in today's newspaper.
4. Our p_____ is to solve all the problems.
5. The l_____ of the radio can phone in to ask Tina to play their favourite songs.

二、单项选择

6. He left school and began work _____ twelve. [南宁]

A. at the age of
B. at the beginning of
C. at the top of
D. at the bottom of

7. It _____ that she has been ill for a long time. She looks very weak.

A. looks B. seems
C. sounds D. says

8. —Who looked after your sick grandmother in the hospital?
—My father did that _____. He didn't want anybody else's help. [鄂州]

A. in fact B. in person
C. in total D. in disagreement

9. I was very angry because he wasn't polite at all. He knocked the old man down _____ purpose.

A. in B. on
C. at D. with

10. _____ I grew older, my interest in collecting stamps grew.

A. When B. While
C. Since D. As

三、根据汉语完成句子

11. 安妮五岁时就会弹钢琴。
Annie could play the piano _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____.

12. 在教室里坐得不要离黑板太近。
Don't sit too _____ _____ the blackboard in the classroom.

13. 她说她将为她的旅行做准备。
She said she was going to _____ _____ her trip.

14. 我的经理正俯视着我。
My manager is _____ _____ _____ me.

15. 不是你而是他已经完成了作业。
_____ you _____ he _____ finished the homework.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

四、用方框内短语的适当形式填空

learn about, close down, once a week, grow up, look down on

16. I don't think it's right to _____ the poor.

17. When does the shop _____ every night?
—At about 12 o'clock.

18. Tom would like to be a doctor when he _____.

19. Many people go online to _____ news all over the world.

20. My favourite programme is on air _____.

Unit 3 Language in use

I. 课文原文、译文

Language practice 语言练习

I hope that you can join us one day. 我希望有一天你能加入我们。
When it's on, it means we're on air. 当它(红灯)亮时，意味着我们正在广播。
It seemed that they were speaking to me in person. 感觉他们好像是在亲自和我说话。
Just tell me what you had for breakfast. 就告诉我你早餐吃了什么。

1 Match the two parts of the sentences. There may be more than one possibility.
把句子的两部分搭配起来。也许有不止一种可能。

1. The listeners tell us... 听众告诉我们……
2. They were happy to know... 他们很高兴知道……
3. He asked... 他问……
4. Did they know... 他们知道……
5. Have you heard... 你已听说……

a) ...when she came into this room. ……当她进入这个房间的时候。
b) ...what they want to hear. ……他们想听到什么。
c) ...that they won the first prize last week. ……他们上个星期赢得了一等奖。
d) ...that he will come? ……他将要来吗?
e) ...what he was doing at that time? ……他那个时候正在做什么?

2 Complete the conversation with the words in the box. 用方框中的单词完成对话。

how 怎么样　if 如果　that 引导词 that　when 当……时候 who 谁　why 为什么

Tony: Hello, everyone! Thanks for waiting—now I can tell you (1)_____ has won the English Writing Competition. It's Lingling! Lingling, tell us, (2)_____ do you feel?
大家好！谢谢你们的等候——现在我可以告诉你们(1)_____赢得了英语写作比赛。是玲玲！玲玲，告诉我们，你感觉(2)_____?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lingling: Well, I feel great.I was quite surprised (3)_____ I heard (4)_____ I was the winner.

嗯，我感觉棒极了。(3)_____我听到 (4)_____我是获胜者时我感到很惊讶。

Tony:I don't know (5)_____ you were surprised.You've always been the best at writing in the school. 我不知道你 (5)_____惊讶。在学校里你的写作一直是最好的。

Lingling:I don't know about that! A lot of other students are good at writing as well.

我不知道！许多其他的学生也擅长写作。

Tony: But there's only one winner.Well done, Lingling! What's the prize?

但是只有一位获胜者。好样的，玲玲！奖品是什么?

Lingling: It's an electronic dictionary. 是一本电子词典。

Tony: Fantastic! And(6)_____ you want to read Lingling's article, you can find it in the school magazine. 太棒了！ (6)_____你们想阅读玲玲的文章，你们可以在学校的杂志上找到。

3 Read the conversation in Activity 2 again and complete Daming's diary.

再读一遍活动 2 中的对话并完成大明的日记。

18th May 5 月 18 日　　Saturday 星期六

I have heard that Lingling (1)_____.Tony said (2)_____ at the news in the beginning.I know (3)_____ an electronic dictionary, and I think (4)_____ fantastic. I have decided (5)_____. Then maybe next time I will write an article for the competition.

我已听说玲玲 (1)_____。托尼说起初对这个消息 (2)_____。我知道 (3)_____一本电子词典，并且我认为 (4)_____棒极了。我已经决定 (5)_____。那么也许下一次我将为比赛写一篇文章。

4 Complete the passage with the correct form of the expressions in the box.

用方框中短语的正确形式完成文章。

be on air 正在广播　in person 亲自　make noise 发出噪音 show you around 领你们参观　the end of…… 的末端

I am going to (1)_____ the radio station.When the red light is on,it means we (2)_____.You have to avoid (3)_____.I know some of you would like to work in radio. I will introduce you to the presenters.They will talk to you (4)_____.This screen shows us what is happening in the world.The first programme of the day starts at 5 am, and the station closes down① at 12 pm.OK, that is (5)_____ the tour.Has anyone got any questions?

我将 (1)_____广播电台。当红灯亮时，它意味着我们 (2)_____。你们不得不避免 (3)_____。我知道你们中的一些人想在广播电台工作。我将把你们介绍给主持人。他们将 (4)_____和你们交流。这个屏幕展示给我们世界上发生的事情。一天中的第一个节目在早上五点开始，并且电台在晚上 12 点停止播音。好的，那就是这次旅行 (5)_____。有谁有问题吗?

5 Listen and say what Kate's job is. 听并说出凯特的工作是什么。

a) A newspaper reporter. 报社记者。

b) A radio presenter. 广播主持人。

c) A newsreader. 新闻播音员。



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

6 Listen again and complete Kate's timetable. 再听一遍，并完成凯特的时间表。

10 am 上午 10 点	Kate _____ in a park. 凯特在公园_____。
11 am 上午 11 点	_____. _____。
4 pm 下午 4 点	The programme _____. 节目_____。 ·In the first part of the show, Kate _____ her guests. 在节目的第一部分，凯特_____她的客人。 ·Then the _____ comes in.This takes about _____ minutes. 然后_____进来。这花费大约_____分钟。 ·After that is the _____. 之后是_____。 ·Finally listeners _____ the station and _____ Kate. 最后听众_____电台，_____凯特。
7:30 pm 晚上 7：30	The programme _____. 节目_____。

7 Read the interview and complete the notes. 读采访，完成记录。

课文朗读 7

John, one of the school radio presenters, interviews Bernard/ˈbɜːnəd/.Bernard was once a student of the school, and he is now very successful in radio.

约翰，学校广播主持人中的一位，采访伯纳德。伯纳德曾经是这所学校的学生，他现在在广播方面非常成功。

John: It's really nice of you to agree to talk to us②, Bernard.I know you're very busy.

伯纳德，你同意和我们交流真是太好了。我知道你非常忙。

Bernard:I'm very happy to talk to you.I enjoyed my time at school—it was a good school.

我很高兴和你们交流。我很享受我在学校的时光——它是所好学校。

John: It still is. I'm very happy there. 现在依然是。我在那儿很开心。

Bernard: So you present programmes for the school radio station?

那么你为学校的广播站主持节目?

John: Yes, and we want you to tell us about your work as a presenter for a popular radio programme.We want to know how you've become so successful.

是的，并且我们想要你告诉我们关于你在一个受欢迎的电台作为一名主持人的工作。我们想知道你是怎么变得如此成功的。

Bernard: Well, to become successful, you need to work hard, you know.And I've always worked very hard.It's also important to love your job, and I've loved radio since I was quite young.

嗯，你知道，要想成功，你需要努力工作。我总是非常努力地工作。热爱你的工作也非常重要，我在很小的时候就热爱广播。

John: How old were you when you decided you wanted to work in radio?

当你决定要在电台工作的时候，你多大？

Bernard:I started presenting music shows for the school radio when I was fifteen.I became the youngest presenter of a popular national teenage radio show when I was seventeen.And then,when I went to university, I worked on the university radio station in my free time.After that,it was easy to get a job with a local radio station in a small town.And after about two years, a national radio station asked me to work for them.I've worked for them for four years now.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

我15岁时开始在学校广播站主持音乐节目。当17岁时，我成为一名受欢迎的青少年电台节目的最年轻的主持人。然后，当我上了大学，在空闲时间我在大学的广播站工作。从那之后，在一个小镇里的当地电台找到一份工作是很容易的。在大约两年后，一个国家电台邀请我去工作。现在我已经在那里工作了4年。

John: It sounds very easy when you talk about it. 当你谈起它时，听起来非常容易。

Bernard: It was quite easy, really.If you're very interested in something, you usually want to be good at it.You'll keep on practising and you'll be successful.

真的很容易。如果你对一件事情非常感兴趣，通常你会想精通它。你会继续练习，并且你会成功的。

John: Thanks.I'll remember that. 谢谢。我会记住的。

Experiences 经历

·At fifteen years old, Bernard started to (1)_____.

15岁时，伯纳德开始（1）_____。

·At seventeen years old, Bernard became the (2)_____ presenter of a teenage radio show.

17岁时，伯纳德成为一个青少年广播节目的（2）_____主持人。

·He has worked for a national radio station for (3)_____ years now.

他现在已经为一个国家电台工作了（3）_____年。

Opinions 意见

·To become successful, you need to (4)_____. 想要成功，你需要(4)_____。

·It is also important to (5)_____. (5)_____也非常重要。

Around the world 世界各地

The clockwork radio 发条式收音机

Trevor/'trevər/ Baylis/'beɪlis/, a British inventor, was listening to a radio programme about health problems in Africa one day.He then realised ③ how much a radio could help African people learn about health and health care.Electricity and batteries are expensive and hard to get in some parts of Africa, so he developed a clever radio that works without batteries or electricity.The clockwork or wind-up radio, first made in South Africa in the 1990s, changed the lives of many African people.Even in tiny villages which had no electricity or other forms of communication,people began to listen to the radio, not only for entertainment, but to educate themselves too.

英国发明家特雷弗·贝利斯一天正在收听一个关于非洲健康问题的电台节目。然后他意识到一台收音机能在很大程度上帮助非洲人民来了解健康以及健康护理。因为电力和电池在非洲的一些地区很昂贵且难以得到，所以他发明了一台不用电池也不用电力就能工作的精巧的收音机。这种带有发条装置的收音机，20世纪90年代始创于南非，改变了很多非洲人的生活。即使在没有电力或其他通讯方式的小村落里，人们开始收听收音机，不仅为了娱乐，而且为了得到教育。

Module task：**Making a school radio programme** 模块任务：制作一档学校广播节目

8 Work in groups.Decide what to include in your school radio programme.

分组练习。决定你的学校广播节目中应包括什么内容。

·News 新闻

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

·Music 音乐

·Stories 故事

·Interviews 采访

·Phone-ins 热线直播节目

·Weather reports 天气预报

9 Write each section of the programme. 写下节目的每个部分。

·Decide who will write each section. 决定每个部分的撰写人。

·Write the reports and show them in your group. 写报道并在你们组展示它们。

10 Do your school radio programme.Try to record it if possible.

做你们学校的广播节目。如果可能的话，尽量录制下来。

11 Present your radio programme to the rest of the class. 向班级的其他学生呈现你的广播节目。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

·考点应用　　·考点批注

★The first programme of the day starts at 5 am, and the station closes down at 12 pm.

① close down 停止播音

close down — 停止播音；（工厂等）关闭；停业

e.g. The station has closed down. 电台已经停止播音了。

Some factories have closed down because of pollution.

一些工厂因为污染已经关闭了。

考题在线 1 If the company can't make enough money, it will _____.

A. try on　　B. look down

C. turn on　　D. close down

点拨：用短语辨析法。try on "试穿"；look down "向下看"，turn on "打开"；close down "关闭，停止播音"。由句意"如果该公司不能赚足够的钱，它将关闭"。可知答案。

★It's really nice of you to agree to talk to us, Bernard.

② It is+*adj.*+of sb.+to do sth.

e.g. It is nice of you to give me a hand. 你帮我一把太好了。

It is important for us to learn English well.

对我们来说学好英语太重要了。

考题在线 2 It's very dangerous for us _____ the mobile phone while crossing the street. [益阳]

A. answering　　B. to answer　　C. answer

点拨：考查非谓语动词。句意为"对于我们来说，过马路时接电话非常危险"。本句考查固定句式"It is *adj.* for sb. to do sth."，it 作形式主语指代后面动词

● It is+adj.+of sb.+to do sth. 某人做……是……此句型中形容词表示人的性格与品质，如 kind，nice，foolish 等。

● It is+adj.+for sb.+to do sth. 做某事对某人来说是……此句型中的形容词主要有：easy，hard，difficult，important，interesting，necessary 等。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

不定式。

考题在线 3 —Is it necessary _____ us _____ some photos before saving the old man?

—Yes, it is. We can protect ourselves if we do so. [凉山]

A. of; taking　　B. for; taking

C. of; to take　　D. for; to take

点拨：用固定句式法解题。“It's + 形容词 +for sb.+ to do sth.”为固定句式，意为“对某人来说做某事是……”。其中 it 作形式主语，真正的主语是“to do... 结构”。

realise
- 意识到，认识到
  - 其后常接宾语从句。
- 实现，将……变成现实
  - 同义词组为 come true，但 come true 后不跟宾语。

★**He then realised how much a radio could help African people learn about health and health care.**

③ **realise** /ˈriːəlaɪz/ *v.* 意识到，认识到

e.g. I'm sorry I didn't realise who you were. 对不起，我没有认出你是谁。

My dreams have been realised. 我的梦想已经实现了。

考题在线 4 I'm very worried about that girl. She didn't _____ she was in danger when she went home alone at night.

A. understand　　B. see

C. show　　D. realise

考题在线答案 1. D　2. B　3. D　4. D

Ⅲ. 模块语法沙龙　夺取中考语法满分

宾语从句的时态

考点 含宾语从句的复合句，主、从句谓语动词的时态要呼应。

知识微课

速记小筏：巧记宾语从句的时态：

主句若为现在时，从句时态应看意；

主句若为过去时，从句时态向前移。

考向 1：如果主句是一般现在时，从句可根据需要，选用相应的时态。

e.g. —Li Ming, do you know when the Dragon Boat Festival is this year?

李明，你知道今年的端午节是什么时候吗？

—It's on June 20th. 六月二十日。

He tells me that his sister came back yesterday.

他告诉我他姐姐昨天回来了。

考题在线 1 —Dear friends, do you still remember _____ three years ago?

—To realize our dream! [重庆]

A. why you came here

B. why did you come here

C. how you came here

D. how did you came here

点拨：根据宾语从句用陈述语序，可排除选项 B、D；根据答语 To realize our dream.（为了实现我们的梦想。）可知宾语从句是问“为什么……”。

考向 2：如果主句是过去时，宾语从句只可根据需要，选用表示过去的某个具体时态，即一般过去时、过去进行时、过去将来时或过去完成时中的某一种形式。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

e.g. The children didn't know who he was.

孩子们不知道他是谁。

He asked his father how it happened.

他问他父亲这件事是如何发生的。

考题在线 2 —What did Mr. Wang ask you just now?

—He asked me _____ yesterday afternoon.

[宿迁]

A. why I am absent from school

B. why I was absent from school

C. why am I absent from school

D. why was I absent from school

点拨：答语中，根据主句是过去时，从句也应该是过去时，排除 A 和 C；根据宾语从句应用陈述语序，可排除 D。

考向 3：如果宾语从句所表示的是客观事实、普遍真理或自然现象等，不管主句用什么时态，从句时态都用一般现在时。

e.g. The teacher said that light travels faster than sound.

老师说光比声音传播速度要快。

考题在线 3 John told his little daughter that the earth _____ from the west to the east.

A. moved　　B. moving

C. moves　　D. move

点拨：宾语从句“地球自西往东转”表示客观真理，应用一般现在时，从句主语 the earth 是单数第三人称，故谓语动词用第三人称单数形式。

考题在线答案 1. A　2. B　3. C

Ⅳ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20 分

写作小练笔 介绍“The events in the past”

I've always loved the radio. When I was 4 years old, I sat close to the radio, listening to my favourite programmes and the voices of my favourite presenters. At the age of nine, I asked for part-time jobs in small radio stations. As I grew older, my interest in radio grew. I learnt about Internet radio.

Once a week, I played my favourite music from my father's computer and talked about life at school, and hoped someone might be listening. Soon my friends at school started to listen, and then they wanted to help.

介绍“The background information”

The manager let me do a sound check. He asked me what I had for breakfast. The purpose was to check the sound level. This was how my first real job in radio began. 介绍“The experience of asking for the first real job”

模块话题

假如你是李雷，请给“Heart-to-Heart Talk”节目的主持人写一封 80 词左右的信，告诉他你最喜欢他主持的谈心节目，而且从该节目中学到了很多有用的知识，长大后也想当一名像他一样的电视节目主持人（host），但你的普通话（Mandarin）说得不标准，在别人面前说话时很紧张，你很苦恼，请他帮助你。（开头和结尾已给出，不计入总词数）

Dear host,

_____

_____

_____

Please write to me soon.

Yours,

Li Lei

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

1. 该写作要求写一封信，文章应以第一人称为主。

2. 有条理地完整呈现题目中所给的信息和要点。

3. 注意句式的多样化，避免单一，适当运用过渡性词汇，使文章衔接自然。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

“分层递进法”写广播话题类作文

“分层递进法”写作步骤：针对提示信息，将内容设置成三层，层层推进，以达到写作目的。

第一层：欲扬先抑亮态度；第二层：倾诉苦恼摆困难；第三层：真实意图求帮助。

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）



经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	programme, watch, learn, famous, like, speak,nervous, sad
短语	a middle school student, like...best, grow up,in front of, write to sb.
句子	① I want to be a famous TV host like you when I grow up. ② Can you tell me how to improve my Mandarin?

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

Dear host,

I'm a middle school student now. I like your TV programme *Heart-to-Heart Talk* best. I have watched it for many years and I have learned a lot from it. I want to be a famous TV host like you when I grow up. However, I can't speak Mandarin very well. I feel very nervous when I speak in front of others. I am very sad now. Can you tell me how to improve my Mandarin?

Please write to me soon.

Yours,

Li Lei

名师点评：本文用“分层递进法”写作，层层推进，结构清晰，行文流畅，时态运用正确，要点齐全，紧扣主题，句式简单但不单调。

第一层，开门见山表明作者虚心学习的态度，使用 like...best 表达出对该节目的喜爱之情，使用“I want to be...when I grow up.”表达出自己的愿望。

第二层，倾诉作者普通话不标准的苦恼及摆出自己的困难。

第三层，使用“Can you tell me how to... ?”委婉寻求帮助。



Ⅴ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

☞（答案见271页）

一、针对性练习

用方框中所给词的适当形式填空

become, not only, improve, realise, close down

1. Li Lei is _____ clever but also hard-working.
2. The TV station in our town _____ after 11:30 pm every day.
3. I think it's necessary for us _____ the listening ability.
4. He was busy with his work all the time,so he didn't _____ how late it was.
5. Your parents wish you to grow up and _____ successful one day.

二、语法专练

6. —I really want to watch *Operation Red Sea* (《红海行动》). Could you tell me _____?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

—Sure. It'll be on show at Town Cinema.

【导学号：9465610】[黄冈]

A. when will it be on show

B. when it will be on show

C. where will it be on show

D. where it will be on show

7.We were all disappointed at _____.

[潍坊]

A. what does the boy say

B. what the boy says

C. what the boy said

D. what did the boy say

8.—Judy, could you tell me _____the schoolbag?

—Oh, yes. I bought it in a store on the Internet. [北京]

A. where did you buy

B. where will you buy

C. where you bought

D. where you will buy

9.—What did Max just say to you?

—He asked me _____. [连云港]

A. if I would like to go skating

B. when did I buy this CD

C. where I will spend the weekend

D. that I had a good time

10.—When will you fly to London?

—Pardon?

—I asked _____ fly to London. [威海]

A. whether you would

B. when you would

C. how you will

三、模块知识浓缩

根据括号内的汉语提示完成短文

Li Ming's uncle is a _____[11](主管) in radio.Last weekend he showed Li Ming and his friends around his _____[12](录音室).Li Ming knows that when the red light is on,it means they are _____[13](播出). And then all of them should _____[14](避免) making any noise.There are all kinds of news waiting to be broadcast.The _____[15](主持人) present not only _____[16](国内的) news but also _____[17](国际的) news.Sometimes they need to do an _____[18](采访) with famous people _____[19](亲自)._____[20](听众) of different ages all like their programmes.

Victory won't come to me unless I go to it.
胜利是不会向我们走来的，我必须自己走向胜利。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Revision module B

课文原文、译文

Grammar and speaking 语法和会话

1 Work in pairs. Ask for and give advice. 结对练习。寻求并给出建议。

what/do/if I want to develop new skills 什么 / 做 / 如果我想发展新的技能

—*Can you tell me what I should do if I want to develop new skills*?

你能告诉我假如我想发展新的技能，我该做什么吗?

—*You should get a hobby*. 你应该有一个爱好。

1. how/make friends 怎样 / 交朋友
2. why/not talk to me 为什么 / 不和我说话
3. who/talk to 谁 / 和……交谈

2 Choose the correct answer. 选择正确的答案。

1. —What did the teacher say just now? ——刚才老师说什么了?

   —He said that the earth _____ round the sun. ——他说地球绕太阳_____。

   a) go 走　　b) goes 走　　c) going 走　　d) will go 将走

2. The girl wanted to know _____. 这个女孩想知道_____。

   a) whose digital camera it was 它是谁的数码相机

   b) whose digital camera is it 它是谁的数码相机

   c) how much did the digital camera cost 数码相机花了多少钱

   d) where her father will buy her a digital camera 她的父亲将在哪儿为她买个数码相机

3. —What did your parrot say, Bill? ——你的鹦鹉说了什么，比尔?

   —It asked us _____ today. ——它问我们今天_____。

   a) what is the weather like 天气怎么样

   b) what the weather was like 天气怎么样

   c) what does the weather like 天气喜欢什么

   d) what did the weather like 天气喜欢什么

4. —Do you know _____? I'm going to visit him. ——你知道_____吗? 我将去拜访他。

   —Sorry, I don't know. ——对不起，我不知道。

   a) where does Mr Li live 李先生住在哪儿

   b) where Mr Li lives 李先生住在哪儿

   c) where did Mr Li live 李先生（过去）住在哪儿

   d) where Mr Li lived 李先生（过去）住在哪儿

5. —I don't know if he _____ to Kate's birthday party.

   ——我不知道他是否_____凯特的生日聚会。

   —He's sure to go because he _____ her very well. ——他一定去，因为他非常_____她。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

a) goes; knows 去；熟悉

b) will go; knows 将去；熟悉

c) goes; will know 去；将熟悉

d) will go;will know 将去；将熟悉

6. I'd like to know _____. 我想知道_____。

a) when will he give back the tape 他什么时候归还磁带

b) whether has he received higher education 他是否已经接受了更高等的教育

c) that he has been busy 他一直繁忙

d) whether she will join in our English Evening 她是否会加入我们的英语晚会

3 Complete the diary with the words and expressions in the box.

用方框中的单词和短语完成日记。

how long 多长时间　how old 多大　if 是否　that 引导词 that when 何时　where 在哪里　why 为什么

Last night I had a very strange dream. I dreamt I met an alien!I asked him (1)_____ he was from and (2)_____ he was here. He told me (3)_____ he was from Mars and he won a competition to visit the earth. I asked him (4)_____ he was and he told me he was 500 years old.Then I asked him (5)_____ he was going to stay on the earth and (6)_____ he was going back to Mars. He said he did not know. He asked me (7)_____ I would like to visit Mars one day. Then I heard my mum calling me, "Wake up, William. Time for school!" What a strange dream!

昨天晚上我做了一个非常奇怪的梦。我梦见我遇到一个外星人！我问他来自 (1)_____并且 (2)_____他在这儿。他告诉我 (3)_____他来自火星，他赢得了来参观地球的一次比赛。我问他 (4)_____，他告诉我他 500 岁了。然后我问他将呆在地球上 (5)_____和 (6)_____他将回到火星。他说他不知道。他问我 (7)_____有一天我想参观火星。然后我听到我妈妈在叫我："醒醒，威廉。到上学的时间了！"多么奇怪的一个梦呀！

4 Complete the passage with the correct form of the words and expressions in brackets.

用括号中单词和短语的正确形式完成短文。

I am really (1)_____(look forward)to going to China. I am sure that it (2)_____ (be) the trip of a lifetime. My plane (3)_____(take off)from London on Saturday evening and will arrive in Beijing on Sunday afternoon. I (4)_____(never be)on a long plane journey before, but I think that I (5)_____(enjoy)it. When I arrive, I am going to stay with my friend Lingling and her family. We are going to do lots of sightseeing and she(6)_____(tell) me that I could go to school with her for the day. I am learning Chinese, but I am not sure that I (7)_____(understand)what the teacher says. Lingling (8)_____(write)to me and explained a lot about Chinese life—and I can tell you there is a lot (9)_____(remember)! And do you want (10)_____(know)why I am going to China? Well, to eat all the delicious food, of course!

我真的 (1)_____（盼望）去中国。我确信它 (2)_____（是）终生的旅行。我的飞机在周六

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

晚上从伦敦(3)_____(起飞),并将在周日下午到达北京。我以前(4)_____(从没有)进行过长途的飞机旅行,但我认为我(5)_____(享受)它。在我到达后,我将和我的朋友玲玲及她的家人呆在一起。我们将进行大量的观光,并且她(6)_____(告诉)我白天我能和她去上学。我正在学汉语,但我不确信我(7)_____(懂得)老师说的。玲玲(8)_____(写信)给我并解释了很多关于中国的生活——而且我能告诉你有很多(9)_____(记住)!你想(10)_____(知道)我为什么将要到中国吗?好吧,当然是去吃所有美味的食物!

5 Complete the conversation with *and*, *but* and *or*. 用 *and*, *but* 和 *or* 完成对话。

Kate:I want to start a new hobby, (1)_____ I don't know what to choose.Do you have any ideas?

我想开始一个新的爱好,(1)_____我不知道该选什么。你有什么想法吗?

Mike: Well, my hobbies are playing football and table tennis.

嗯,我的爱好是踢足球和打乒乓球。

Kate: Thanks, Mike! Football and table tennis aren't my favourite sports.

谢谢,迈克!足球和乒乓球不是我最爱的运动。

Mike: Have you tried other sports? At school you can join the tennis club, the swimming club, (2)_____ you can try the basketball club, (3)_____ they are all on the same day.

你尝试过其他运动吗?在学校你可以参加网球俱乐部,游泳俱乐部,(2)_____你可以试试篮球俱乐部,(3)_____它们都在同一天。

Kate:I like tennis, (4)_____ it's very tiring. Perhaps swimming? I don't know...

我喜欢网球,(4)_____它太令人疲倦了。或者游泳?我不知道……

Mike: Wait a minute — you're good at art and music. The art teacher is going to start a new after-school club — you can learn to draw cartoons(5)_____write songs. You can join the club.

等一下——你擅长艺术和音乐。艺术老师将开始一个新的课后俱乐部——你可以学画卡通画(5)写歌曲。你可以参加这个俱乐部。

Kate: That sounds interesting... 那听起来有趣……

Vocabulary 词汇

6 Put the words and expressions in the box into the correct columns.

把方框中的单词和短语放在正确的栏中。

beach 沙滩　camp 野营　chess 国际象棋　classmate 同班同学　fan 扇子　get on well 处得好
magazine 杂志　make friends 交朋友　painting 绘画　programme 节目　relaxing 令人放松的
stamp 邮票　stay in touch 保持联系　the latest news 最新消息　travel 旅行

Hobby 爱好	Holiday 假期	Friendship 友谊	News 新闻

Now write at least five sentences with the words or expressions in the table.

现在用表格中的单词或短语写至少五个句子。

Let's take a walk along the beach. 咱们沿着沙滩散步吧。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

7 Choose five adjectives from the box. Write as many expressions as you can with them.

从方框中选五个形容词。用它们写出尽量多的词组。

bright 明亮的	busy 忙碌的	dangerous 危险的	interesting 有趣的	lonely 孤独的	loud 大声的
lucky 幸运的	magic 神奇的	main 主要的	successful 成功的	usual 通常的	wonderful 精彩的

a bright future/a bright colour/a bright boy 有希望的未来 / 一种艳丽的颜色 / 一个聪明的男孩

Now think of: 现在想想：

·someone you know 你认识的人

·something you do 你做的事

·somewhere you go 你去的地方

Write sentences about them. Use as many of the expressions you wrote as possible.

写关于它们的句子。尽量多地使用你写的词组。

8 Complete the sentences with the expressions in the box. 用方框中的词组完成句子。

ask for 寻求	know about 了解	pay for 为……付钱
think of 认为	wake up 把……弄醒	

1. I _____ my books with my pocket money. 我用我的零花钱_____我的书。
2. What do you _____ my new mobile phone? 你_____我的新手机怎么样?
3. Keep quiet, or you will _____ your parents. 保持安静，否则你会_____你的父母。
4. I will _____ the lives of many English writers after I finish reading this article next week.
   我下个星期读完这篇文章后我将_____很多英国作家的生活。
5. You have the right to _____ help from your teacher.
   你有权利从你的老师那儿_____帮助。

9 Complete the passage with the correct form of the words in the box.

用方框中单词的正确形式完成短文。

depend 依靠	encourage 鼓励	include 包括	introduce 介绍
mention 提到	provide 提供	separate 分开	

Last term, I (1)_____ to my classmate Li Wei that I was having trouble with English. Li Wei (2)_____ me to Karen/ˈkærən/, a British student in our school. Karen was very kind, and she (3)_____ me to work harder. She even (4)_____ me in her study group although we were in (5)_____ classes.

上个学期，我跟我的同班同学李伟 (1)_____我在英语方面有困难。李伟 (2)_____我给卡伦，我们学校的一名英国学生。卡伦很好，并且她 (3)_____我更加努力地学习。她甚至 (4)_____我在她的学习小组里，即使我们在 (5)_____班里。

Now Karen has become my close friend. When we are not studying, we talk about our troubles and hopes. Karen (6)_____ me with trust and support. I do the same for her. We (7)_____ on each other!

现在卡伦已变成我的亲密的朋友。当我们不学习时，我们谈论我们的困难和希望。卡伦用信任和支持

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

(6)_____我。我也一样对她。我们互相(7)_____!

Listening and speaking 听和说

10 Listen and complete the notes. 听并完成笔记。

Exciting things about being a TV news reporter 成为一个电视新闻记者的令人激动的事

·the first to know about (1)_____ 第一个知道关于(1)_____

·travelling around the world and talking to (2)_____
到世界各地旅游并和(2)_____谈话

Things you have to learn 你不得不学的东西

·how to use a(n)(3)_____ 怎样使用一个(3)_____

·how to write (4)_____ 怎样写(4)_____

·how to speak to the (5)_____ 怎样对(5)_____说话

A good place to learn to be a TV news reporter 学做一个电视新闻记者的一个好地方

·a(n)(6)_____ 一个(6)_____

11 Listen to the poem and read. 听诗歌并读。

At the seaside 在海边

By Robert Louis/ˈluːi/ Stevenson/ˈstiːvənsən/ 罗伯特·路易斯·史蒂文森

When I was down beside the sea, 当我到海边时,
A wooden spade they gave to me 他们给了我一把木铲
To dig the sandy shore. 去挖掘沙岸。
My holes were empty like a cup. 我的洞是杯状的空洞。
In every hole the sea came up, 在每个洞中海水涌现,
Till it could come no more. 直到它不能再涌现。

12 Make a list of the problems you have when you are learning English.
把你在学英语时遇到的问题列成清单。

Now work in pairs. Ask for and give advice about the problems on your lists.
现在结对练习。寻求和给出关于你清单上问题的建议。

Reading and writing 阅读和写作

13 Read the passage and answer the questions. 读文章,并回答问题。

An introduction to *Treasure Island* 《金银岛》的介绍

Treasure Island is a famous story. The hero, Jim/dʒɪm/ Hawkins/ˈhɔːkɪnz/, finds Captain Flint's/flɪnts/ map. Captain Flint was a pirate and had lots of gold. He hid his gold before he died, and there is a cross on the map to show where the gold is. It is on an island in the Caribbean /ˌkærəˈbiːən/ Sea. Jim and his friends buy a ship, get some men and go to the island to look for the gold.

《金银岛》是一个著名的故事。男主角,吉姆·霍金斯,发现弗林特船长的地图。弗林特船长是一个海盗,有很多金子。在他死前,他把他的金子藏了起来,在地图上有一个十字架,表明黄金在哪儿。它在加勒比海上的一个岛上。吉姆和他的朋友买了一艘船,雇了一些人去岛上寻找金子。

They set sail but then they discover that Long John Silver/ˈsɪlvə/, the cook, and the other

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

men on the ship are all pirates. The pirates are planning to kill them. As soon as they get to the island, Jim and his friends fight the pirates. The pirates do not kill them, but take the map.

他们起航，但后来他们发现厨师高个子约翰·斯尔维尔，和船上的其他人都是海盗。海盗们正打算杀了他们。当他们一到岛上，吉姆和他的朋友们就和海盗打了起来。海盗们没有杀他们，但把地图拿走了。

The pirates go to look for the gold, and Jim follows them. Although they find the place, the gold is not there. Later, Jim knows it is because of Ben/ben/ Gunn/gʌn/. Jim meets Ben Gunn on the island and he tells Jim and his friends his story. He tells them he was a pirate, a friend of Captain Flint. He has now decided not to be a pirate. Ben Gunn found the gold some time before. He agrees to share it with Jim and his friends because they will take him back to England.

海盗们去寻找黄金，吉姆跟着他们。虽然他们找到了那个地方，但黄金不在那儿了。后来，吉姆知道这是因为本·甘。吉姆在岛上见了本·甘，他给吉姆和他的朋友们讲了他的故事。他告诉他们他是一个海盗，是弗林特船长的一个朋友。现在他已决定不再当海盗。一段时间以前本·甘找到了黄金。他同意与吉姆和他的朋友们分享它，因为他们会带他回到英格兰。

When Jim and his friends leave the island,Ben goes with them. All of the pirates have to stay on the island except Long John Silver. Although he is also a pirate, he helps Jim and his friends.On their way home, they stop in America for one night. In the morning, they find that Long John Silver has gone, and he has taken some of the gold.When they get back to England, Jim decides never to go looking for gold again.

当吉姆和他的朋友们离开这个岛时，本和他们一起走。除了高个子约翰·斯尔维尔，所有的海盗都不得不呆在岛上。虽然他也是一个海盗，但是他帮助了吉姆和他的朋友们。在他们回家的路上，他们在美国停留一个晚上。在早上，他们发现高个子约翰·斯尔维尔跑了，并且带走了一些金子。当他们回到英格兰，吉姆决定再也不去寻找金子了。

1. What is *Treasure Island*? 《金银岛》是什么?
2. Why is it called *Treasure Island*? 为什么它被叫做《金银岛》?
3. Who is Jim Hawkins? 吉姆·霍金斯是谁?
4. What does he do? 他做了什么?

14 Number the events from the story in Activity 13 in the correct order.

把故事中的事件按活动 13 中的正确顺序标号。

a) Ben Gunn agrees to share the gold with Jim and his friends. ☐
本·甘同意与吉姆和他的朋友们分享金子。

b) Captain Flint hides his gold. ☐
弗林特船长藏了他的金子。

c) Jim and his friends buy a ship. ☐
吉姆和他的朋友们买了艘船。

d) Jim Hawkins finds a map. ☐
吉姆·霍金斯发现一张地图。

e) Long John Silver takes away some of the gold. ☐
高个子约翰·斯尔维尔带走了一些金子。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

f) The pirates plan to kill Jim and his friends. □

海盗们计划杀掉吉姆和他的朋友们。

15 Answer the questions. 回答问题。

1. Why do Jim Hawkins and his friends buy a ship? 为什么吉姆·霍金斯和他的朋友们买了一艘船?
2. Who are the people that work on the ship? 在船上工作的人是谁?
3. Why does Jim follow the pirates on the island? 在岛上吉姆为什么要跟着海盗们?
4. Why do the pirates not find the gold? 海盗们为什么没找到金子?
5. Why do Jim and his friends take Long John Silver with them when they leave the island?

当他们离开岛时，吉姆和他的朋友们为什么要带上高个子约翰·斯尔维尔?

16 Work in pairs. Answer the questions. 结对练习。回答问题。

1. What do you think of Long John Silver? 你认为高个子约翰·斯尔维尔怎么样?
2. Why do you think that Jim decides never to go looking for gold again?

你认为为什么吉姆决定再也不去寻找金子?

3. Would you like to read *Treasure Island*? Why or why not?

你想读《金银岛》吗? 为什么或为什么不呢?

4. Do you think *Treasure Island* would make a good film? Why or why not?

你认为《金银岛》能拍成一部好电影吗? 为什么能或为什么不能?

17 Write about a book you have read or a film you have seen.Use the following questions to help you. 写写你读过的一本书，或看过的一部电影。用下面的问题来帮助你。

1. What is the name of the book/film? 这本书 / 这部电影的名字是什么?
2. What kind of book/film is it? 它是什么种类的书 / 电影?
3. Who is the hero? 男主角是谁?
4. What is the story? 故事情节是什么?
5. Did you enjoy it? Why or why not? 你喜欢它吗? 为什么或为什么不?



你们要好好学习
颜值不能当饭吃

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

参考答案及点拨

Module 1 Feelings and impressions

Unit 1 It smells delicious.

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

1. C 2. A 3. B 4. C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. lovely 2. sure 3. try 4. sour 5. tastes

二、6. be afraid 7. How lucky 8. feels soft

9. have a try 10. has a sweet tooth

Unit 2 I feel nervous when I speak Chinese.

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1. her hobbies 二、2. A 3. B 4. D 5. B

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. glasses 2. message 3. hobbies 4. nervous

5. marks

二、6. strangers 7. to hear 8. giving 9. dancing

10. to solve

三、11. B

12. C

13. A 点拨:be proud of "为……自豪"; be careful with "小心"; be strict with "对……要求严格"; be worried about "担心"。由语境可知选A。

14. C

15. B 点拨:由You'd和communicating, 可知用spend。

四、16. How do you feel about/What do you think of

17. as well 18. how to get 19. heard from 20. to meet

Unit 3 Language in use

Ⅴ. 课时针对训练

一、1. B 2. B 3. B 4. B 5. C

二、6. D 点拨:由"我迫不及待地想吃它"可知,此处意为"这个奶酪蛋糕闻起来如此香",故用smell"闻起来"。

7. C 点拨:形容词salty"咸的"提示应用系动词taste,表示"尝起来"。

8. B 点拨:smell是系动词,后接形容词;根据下句"让我先吃一块"可知选B。

9. B 10. B

三、11. jeans 12. fair 13. stranger 14. nervous

15. lovely 16. was proud of 17. cookies

18. sour 19. smelt 20. to have a try

Module 2 Experiences

Unit 1 I've also entered lots of speaking competitions.

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

1. C 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. B

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. Prize 2. competitions 3. inviting

4. enter 5. dreams

二、6. Maybe 7. experience 8. wins

9. ever 10. dreams

三、11. C 点拨:can't afford to do sth. 意为"干某事负担不起"。

12. D 点拨:动词不定式短语作目的状语。

13. B 14. B

15. D 点拨:动词的过去分词作后置定语。

四、16. make up 17. To catch 18. kind of

19. thinking about 20. travel around the world

Unit 2 They have seen the Pyramids.

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1. D 二、2. B 3. A 4. C 5. A

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. ancient 2. Germany 3. move

4. mix 5. miss

二、6. France 7. at the moment

8. Germans 9. counting down 10. looking forward to

三、11. B 点拨:guess"猜测"; miss"错过;想念"; remember"记得"; allow"允许"。分析句意可知,只要能抓住机会就不要错过,要不然你会后悔。

12. D 13. B 14. B

15. C 点拨:根据答语可知提问的是时间长度。

四、16. sent; to 17. for example 18. So far

19. 65-year-old 20. The Smiths

Unit 3 Language in use

Ⅴ. 课时针对训练

一、1. B

2. A 点拨:so...that... 结构中,so后接形容词或副词,that后跟句子,符合本题用法。

3. C 4. D 5. B

二、6. A 7. C 8. B 9. D

10. A 点拨:考查句子时态。根据句意并结合实际可知"新

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

四大发明现在已经使我们的日常生活更加便利”，应用现在完成时态表达。

三、11. sent　12. moved　13. been　14. seen
15. kings　16. find　17. mix　18. asked　19. miss
20. counting

Module 3 Journey to space

Unit 1 Has it arrived yet?

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

1. radio　2. Mars　3. eight　4. messages　5. life

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. earth　2. project　3. discovered　4. astronaut
5. model

二、6. spaceship　7. just　8. reach　9. news
10. away

三、11. B

12. B 点拨:yet 常用于现在完成时态的疑问句和否定句中，表示“还，尚，已经”。just 刚才，刚刚，多用于完成时态中。

13. A 点拨:has gone to 去了某地，表示该人不在说话地点；has been to 去过某地，表示某人曾经去过某地，有这种经历；went 是 go 的过去式，去；will go 将要去。根据前面的否定猜测，可知怀特小姐去了北京，故选 A。

14. B

15. B 点拨:此题用词义辨析法。discover 强调发现客观存在但不为人知的事物，而 invent 则强调创造出以前从未存在过的新事物。

四、16. just now　17. search for　18. space travel
19. In order to　20. That's why

Unit 2 We have not found life on any other planets yet.

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

1. It is too large to imagine.
2. T
3. They have discovered many other galaxies.
4. Yes, they have.
5. No, they can't.

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. groups　2. none　3. universe　4. light
5. environment

二、6. to catch　7. impossible　8. flying
9. photos　10.walk

三、11. A 点拨:in space“在太空中”。
12. C　13. D

14. D 点拨:alone 只是陈述一个客观事实，意为“独自一人”；lonely 则有浓厚的感情色调，意为“孤独”、“寂寞”，作形容词。结合句意可知选 D。

15. C 点拨:enough 修饰形容词或副词时放在被修饰词后面，且副词 carefully 修饰动词 do。

四、16. can't imagine　17. how large　18. No one
19. communicates with　20. with; on

Unit 3 Language in use

Ⅴ. 课时针对训练

一、1. A 点拨:as...as 中间应用形容词或副词的原级。

2. D 点拨:由 soon 可知本句时态为一般将来时。

3. A

4. D 点拨:be named after...“以……命名”；in honour of...“为了纪念……”。

5. D 点拨:finish doing sth. 结束做某事

二、6. B　7. D

8. C 点拨:前句由时间状语 last week 可知应用一般过去时；后句由 already 可知应用现在完成时且主语不是第三人称单数，故选 C。

9. A　10. B

三、11. life　12. None　13. called　14. billions
15. discovered　16. impossible　17. spaceships
18. to reach　19. alone　20. communicated

Module 4 Seeing the doctor

Unit 1 I haven't done much exercise since I got my computer.

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

1. C　2. A　3. B　4. B　5. C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. fever　2. ill　3. headache　4. health　5. times

二、6. A　7. D

8. B 点拨:由句中的 than 可知应用 healthy 的比较级。

9. B

10. C 点拨:由句中的 for 可知第一句应用现在完成时态。现在完成时态的肯定句中，和一段时间状语连用，动词必须是延续性动词。

三、11. fast food　12. taken my temperature
13. caught a cold　14. head hurts
15. keep/stay healthy; take exercise

四、16. for six years　17. harmful to　18. since; ago
19. How long has　20. don't think; is

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 We have played football for a year now.

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

1. Thomas. 2. exercise 3. Wang Wei 4. week

5. 也许我身体太弱而不能做任何锻炼。

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. heart 2. weak 3. condition 4. daily

5. active

二、6. C 点拨:finish“完成”；enjoy“喜欢；享受”；suggest“建议”；practice“练习”。由前面的 talked about the problem 及语境可推知选 C。

7. C 点拨:用标志词法。由 for 20 years 可知本句时态为现在完成时。

8. A 点拨:take part in“参加”。

9. A 点拨:wear 表状态，其后常跟衣服、眼镜、头饰等。

10. B

三、11. in excellent condition 12. a member of

13. take part in 14. has had 15. sleepy; go to sleep

Unit 3 Language in use

Ⅴ. 课时针对训练

一、1. B 2. B 3. B 4. B 5. D

二、6. B 7. D

8. C 点拨:begin 是非延续性动词，不能与表示一段时间的状语 for 10 minutes 连用，此处 begin 要用 be on 表示。

9. C 10. A

三、11. heart 12. exercise 13. pet 14. member

15. fit 16. takes part in 17. sleepy 18. smile

19. illness 20. all over

Module 5 Cartoons

Unit 1 It's time to watch a cartoon.

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

1. A 2. C 3. C 4. B 5. A

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. handsome 2. fight 3. smart 4. laugh

5. lesson

二、6. heroes 7. to go 8. trying 9. crying

10. humorous

三、11. B 点拨:由于 never 是否定词，所以反意疑问部分应用肯定形式；陈述部分谓语动词为第三人称单数形式，故反意疑问部分所用助动词为 does。

12. A 点拨:考查时态。根据句意和标志词 ever，可断定问句是现在完成时态；根据时间状语 two days ago，可判断答语是一般过去时态。

13. B 点拨:此题用关键词法解答。through 表示穿过立体性的物体，由 window 一词可知要用 through。

14. A 点拨:nice 为形容词，必须由副词来修饰。true 形容词，意思是“真的”；truth 名词，意思是“真相”；real 形容词，意思是“真实的”； truly 副词，意思是“确实”。

15. C

四、16. learn from 17. fought with 18. each other

19. don't think;is 20. impolite; waiting

Unit 2 Tintin has been popular for over eighty years.

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1. A

二、2. C 3. A 4. C 5. B

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. mess 2. artist 3. create 4. invented

5. satisfy

二、6. to visit 7. called 8. is 9. satisfied

10. copies

三、11. C 点拨:考查连词辨析。if 意为“如果”时，引导条件状语从句；意为“是否”时，引导宾语从句；so 表示结果；as 作连词，意为“当……的时候”，引导时间状语从句；but 表转折。

12. B 点拨:of one's own“某人自己的”，符合语境“这个小男孩有他自己的卧室”。

13. C 点拨:现在完成时态和一段时间状语连用，动词必须是延续性动词。

14. A 15. C

四、16. ever since 17. won the hearts of

18. made a mess 19. lead to 20. in the 1980s

Unit 3 Language in use

Ⅴ. 课时针对训练

一、1. B

2. A 点拨:be popular with sb. 受某人的欢迎。

3. A 点拨:根据后文中 honest，可知考试应该是没有老师监考的。

4. B 点拨:mind 后跟动词的 -ing 形式。

5. C 点拨:由 in the future 可知本句时态为一般将来时。

二、6. B 点拨:主句为一般现在时，提示时间状语从句也用一般现在时。

7. B

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

8. A 点拨：答语时间状语“过去的两年”提示到现在为止的两年，故用现在完成时。

9. B 10. A

三、11. heroes 12. fish 13. ugly 14. hearts

15. leads 16. men 17. humorous 18. invented

19. over 20. exciting 21. private 22. real

Module 6 Hobbies

Unit 1 Do you collect anything?

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

1. cars 2. stamps 3. Tony's mum 4. postcards

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. just 2. valuable 3. shelves 4. stamps

5. pound

二、6. take up 7. so many 8. as; as

9. tidy up 10. collection

三、11. B

12. B 点拨：show sth. to sb.= show sb. sth. 给某人看某物，但是当某人和某物均为代词时，一般用“show sth. to sb.”。

13. C

14. B 点拨：用 must 表示肯定推测。

15. A 点拨：形容词修饰不定代词时，形容词需要后置。

四、16. must be 点拨：用逆推法。由后面的 aren't 可推知陈述句部分为肯定形式。

17. Most of 18. have a look 19. to save energy

20. of great value to

Unit 2 Hobbies can make you grow as a person.

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1. Writing and playing volleyball.

二、2. B 3. C 4. A 5. C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. pleasure 2. skill 3. person 4. sailing

5. interest

二、6. writing 7. others 8. activities

9. playing 10. successfully

三、11. B 点拨：put on “穿上”；look after “照看，照料”；give up “放弃”；turn off “关闭”，结合空后的 pet dogs 可知选 B。

12. D 点拨：make sb. do sth. 使某人做某事。

13. D 点拨：be interested in... 意为“对……感兴趣”；interested 表示人的情感，主语是人；interesting 表示物的属性，主语是物或者位于名词之前作定语。

14. A 点拨：come out “出版”；come over “短暂造访”；come in “进来”；come up “走近，发芽”，由“新小说”可推知是“出版”。

15. A

四、16. such as 17. as a result

18. encourages; to catch 19. makes; work

20. great success

Unit 3 Language in use

Ⅴ. 课时针对训练

一、1. B 2. C

3. C 点拨：notice sb. doing sth. “注意到某人正在干某事”；wear 表状态，符合语境；in 是介词“穿着”，表示状态，后常跟颜色。

4. D

5. A 点拨：not only...but also 连接并列主语时，其谓语动词的形式取决于就近的主语。

二、6. B 点拨：考查人称代词。teach sb. sth. 为双宾语结构；teach 为动词，故其后的人称代词应该为宾格。可以说 teach sb. English 或 teach English，但不能说 teach one's English。

7. D 点拨：advise sb. to do sth. 意为“建议某人做某事”。

8. C 9. A 10. D

三、11. such 12. after 13. grow 14. spent

15. experiences 16. as 17. result 18. but

19. playing 20. future

Module 7 Summer in Los Angeles

Unit 1 Please write to me and send me some photos!

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

1. C 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. B

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. crazy 2. sunglasses 3. total

4. weight 5. passport

二、6. stop 7. to take 8. is 9. playing 10. weight

三、11. A 点拨：主语 50 元看作一个整体，谓语动词要用单数形式。

12. A 13. B 14. A

15. B 点拨：weight *n.* 重量；weigh *v.* 称；量。

四、16. had better 17. paid for 18. forget to take

19. make a list of 20. is crazy about

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 Fill out our form and come to learn English in Los Angeles!

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

1. C 2. C 3. D 4. D 5. A

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. culture 2. certain 3. progress 4. test 5. provide

二、6. A

7. B 点拨:provide sb. with sth. 给某人提供某物。

8. B

9. D 点拨:prefer doing... to doing... “(两者比较)喜欢做……胜过做……”。

10. D 点拨:prefer to do...rather than do... “宁可做……也不愿做……”。

三、11. Fill out 12. have formed close; with 13. at the same time 14. stay/keep in touch 15. at least

四、16. depends on 17. provided 18. form 19. to get 20. daily life

Unit 3 Language in use

Ⅴ. 课时针对训练

一、1. C 点拨:hear sb. do sth. 听到某人做某事;practise doing sth. 练习做某事。

2. D 点拨:try on “试穿(衣物)”;put on “穿上”;come out “出来”;try out “尝试,试验”。由“before buying it”可知“最好试一下机器”。

3. C 4. B 5. B

二、6. B 7. B 8. B 9. B

10. B 点拨:由后句句意“你们中的一人不得不在家照看奶奶”可知,空格处需用“或者……或者……”,故选B。

三、11. at the end of 12. provide 13. made 14. to experience 15. take part in 16.fill out 17. pay for 18. culture 19. improve 20. at the same time

Module 8 Time off

Unit 1 I can hardly believe we're in the city centre.

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

1. A 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. point 2. sights 3. top 4. thirsty 5. waste

二、6. going 7. at the top of 8. takes up 9. points out 10. is famous for

三、11. B 点拨:be famous as... 以某种职业或身份而出名; be famous for 后跟出名的原因。

12. C

13. A 点拨:当宾语从句表示的是客观真理,从句仍然要用一般现在时态。

14. C 点拨:take up 意为“开始学”,took up dancing 意为“开始学跳舞”。选项A意为“打扮”;选项B意为“查阅”;选项D意为“张贴”,均不符合句意。

15. C

四、16. Welcome to 17. hardly finish 18. takes up 19. point him out 20. allow; to come

Unit 2 We thought somebody was moving about.

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

1. I'm having a wonderful time here in Zhangjiajie.

2. C 3. A 4. D 5. B

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. shapes 2. paths 3. Humans 4. promise 5. kilometres

二、6. C 7. C 8. A

9. A 点拨:everybody “人人,每个人”;nobody “没有人”;somebody “某人”;something “某个东西”。由句意“水对每个人都是重要的”可知选A。

10. D 点拨:wake sb. up “把某人叫醒”;wake与up中间应用代词的宾格形式。

三、11. move about 12. pull; off 13. look like 14. without paying 15. the second-longest

四、16. has been 17. would come 18. to study 19. saying 20. was cleaning

Unit 3 Language in use

Ⅴ. 课时针对训练

一、1. B 点拨:agree with sb. 同意某人。

2. C 点拨:not...any more=no more 侧重于做事的次数或事物在数量、程度上的不再增加。not...any longer=no longer 侧重于动作在时间方面不再延续。

3. B 点拨:neither意思是“两个都不”;either的意思是“两个中的任何一个”;both表示“两者都”;another表示“另一个”。

4. B 点拨:get lost动词短语,意为“迷路”;lose动词“丢失”;lost形容词“迷路的”; get lose没有这种说法。故选B。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

5. C 点拨:receive 指客观上“收到”，符合第一个空，且由 just now 可知前半句时态为一般过去时，故第一个空答案为 received。accept 指主观上“接受”，为第二个空的答案。

二、6. C

7. B 点拨:宾语从句描述客观事实、真理时，时态要用一般现在时。

8. D 点拨:由主句的谓语动词 said 为过去式可知宾语从句的时态应用过去的某一时态，由 soon 可知应用过去将来时。

9. D 点拨:宾语从句是陈述的事实，故用 that 引导且 that 在从句中不作任何成分，可以省略。

10. D 点拨:宾语从句不缺少句子成分，也不含疑问意义，应用 that 引导。

三、11. woke 12. kilometres 13. hardly
14. to look 15. were walking 16. brightly
17. pointed 18. scenery 19. thirsty

Module 9 Friendship

Unit 1 Could I ask if you've mentioned this to her?

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

1. B 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. A

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. separate 2. herself 3. mention
4. treat 5. introduce

二、6. D
7. B

8. C 点拨:have difficulty (in) doing sth.“做某事有困难”；remember to do sth.“记得去做某事”。

9. A 点拨:此题用词义辨析法解答。explain“解释”；offer“提供”；know“知道”；talk“讨论”。句意为“请你解释一下你迟到的原因，好吗？”故选 A。

10. B 点拨:regret doing sth. 后悔做了某事。

三、11. join in 12. refused to move
13. introduced; to 14. treat; as 15. got separated

Unit 2 I believe that the world is what you think it is.

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1. Smile at the world and it will smile back.

二、2. A smile.
3. A 4. B 5. C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. silence 2. treasure 3. includes
4. trust 5. bright

二、6. believe in 7. circle of friends
8. hidden 9. smiles at 10. day by day

三、11. B

12. C 点拨:even 用于比较级前，加强语气；bad 的比较级是 worse。

13. D 点拨:including 为介词，意为“包括”。

14. B 点拨:宾语从句要用陈述语序；结合答语可知，询问的是他们在做什么，故疑问词用 what。

15. C 点拨:“Why not...?” 用来提出建议，故 suggestion“建议”符合语境。

四、16. Every time
17. stay/keep in touch with
18. passed; turned back
19. me some advice/suggestions
20. glue; stick

Unit 3 Language in use

Ⅴ. 课时针对训练

一、1. A

2. C 点拨:surprised 形容人因为某事而感到惊讶，表示人的情感，主语是人；surprising 是事物本身令人吃惊，表示事物的属性；in surprise 惊奇地。

3. B

4. A 点拨:考查连词。句意为“绝不要把今天能做的推迟到明天”。until 直到……为止；before 在……之前；when 当……的时候；as 因为，当……时候。until 符合句意。故选 A。

5. C 点拨:support“支持”；explain“解释”；share“分享”；belong“属于”。由“它们共享许多历史和文化”。可知选 C。

二、6. B 点拨:考查疑问词辨析。分析句子结构可知“_____ you are”为宾语从句，而此空在从句中作主语，要用关系代词，四个选项中只有“who”为关系代词，其余三项为关系副词。

7. B 8. A 9. D 10. B

三、11. afraid 12. problem 13. lonely 14. silence
15. treasure 16. Day by day 17. trust 18. included
19. circle 20. bright 21. stick

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Module 10 On the radio

Unit 1 I hope that you can join us one day.

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

1. three 2. three 3. England 4. winning 5. result

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. directors 2. National 3. interview
4. international 5. background

二、6. giving 7. presenter 8. taking 9. being
10. meaning, means

三、11. B 12. C 13. A
14. A 点拨：have an interview with sb. 采访某人。
15. A

四、16. on air 17. showed; around
18. mean to go 19. come this way 20. remember to

Unit 2 It seemed that they were speaking to me in person.

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1. Yes, he did.

二、2. At the age of four.
3. At the age of nine.
4. a radio manager
5. Internet radio

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. part-time 2. seems 3. articles 4. purpose
5. listeners

二、6. A 点拨：at the age of “在……岁时”。
7. B 点拨：It seems that... “好像……”。
8. B 点拨：in fact “事实上”；in person “亲自”；in total “总共”；in disagreement “不同意”。由“我父亲亲自照顾”。可知选 B。
9. B 点拨：on purpose “故意地”，符合句意。
10. D

三、11. when she was five years old
12. close to 13. prepare for 14. looking down at
15. Not; but; has

四、16. look down on
17. close down 18. grows up
19. learn about 20. once a week

Unit 3 Language in use

Ⅴ. 课时针对训练

一、1. not only 2. closes down 3. to improve
4. realise 5. become

二、6. D 点拨：根据答语句意推知宾语从句问地点，C 和 D 选项符合句意，宾语从句用陈述句语序。
7. C 点拨：宾语从句用陈述句语序，排除 A、D；主句是一般过去时，提示从句要用过去的某种时态。
8. C 9. A 10. B

三、11. director 12. studio 13. on air 14. avoid
15. presenters 16. national 17. international
18. interview 19. in person 20. Listeners

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

教材习题参考答案

Module 1 Feelings and impressions

▶ Unit 1 It smells delicious.

1 a—2;b—1;c—3;d—4

2 **2.** smells sour **3.** feels a bit soft
4. looks very strong

3 a√ b√ c√ e√

4 **1.** sweet **2.** strong **3.** sugar **4.** sour
5. soft **6.** lovely

5

Ear	sound	quiet, lovely
Eye	look	strong
Hand	feel	soft
Mouth	taste	sweet
Nose	smell	sour, strong

6 **1.** smells,strong,tastes,sour
2. taste, sweet, feel soft, middle

7 略

▶ Unit 2 I feel nervous when I speak Chinese.

1 略 **2** a

3 a)Paragraph 3.b)Paragraph 4.c)Paragraph 2.

4 **1.** She's quite tall with long hair.She's wearing a dress and she's carrying a bag.
2. Tom is quite tall with short black hair.He's wearing blue jeans and a white shirt.

5 **1.** Sad. **2.** A bit sad. **3.** Quite shy.
4. Nervous. **5.** Sorry. **6.** Afraid.

6 (1)fair (2)marks (3)hobbies
(4)message (5)proud

7 略

▶ Unit 3 Language in use

1 These are possible answers:
1. smell good **2.** look happy **3.** smell sweet
4. tastes delicious **5.** feel comfortable
6. sounds beautiful

2 略

3

What does he/she look like?	What is he/she like?
beautiful, dark, fair, old, pretty, short, tall, young	friendly, nice, proud, quiet, shy, strict

4 略

5 (1) look (2)tastes (3)looks (4)is (5)look

6 (1) meet (2) close (3) with (4) look
(5) noisy (6) friendly

7 略 **8** 略

9 The music:terrible, too loud, sounds like noise, not music.
The room:too hot for dancing.
The food:has too much salt.
The drink:too cold.
The people:not very friendly.

10 略

11 This is a model answer:
My friend is fourteen years old.He is tall and looks strong.He plays football well.He has short and yellow hair.His face is round and he smiles a lot.He is about 1.76 metres tall.And he also likes playing basketball.He does well in it.He is a nice boy.He often helps me with my English.We help each other and learn from each other.

12 略

Module 2 Experiences

▶ Unit 1 I've also entered lots of speaking competitions.

1 ever—1;exciting—4;tired—5;visit—2;
wonderful—3

2 **1.** hasn't ever visited **2.** hasn't asked
3. has travelled

3

Name	Experiences	Yes	No
Lingling	has won some prizes.		√
	has always wanted to go on a dream holiday.	√	
Tony	has entered lots of speaking competitions.	√	
	has won some prizes.		√
	has travelled a lot.		√

4 略

5 **1.** dream **2.** prizes **3.** competition
4. afford **5.** pity **6.** invited

6 略 **7** 略 **8** 略

▶ Unit 2 They have seen the Pyramids.

1 略

2 **1.** For two years.
2. Because Peter's company sent him to work in

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Cairo.

3. They have seen the Pyramids,travelled on a boat on the Nile River,and visited the palaces and towers of ancient kings and queens.

4. They find it hard to spell and pronounce the words.

5. Their friends. **6.** Yes, they are.

3 (1)example (2)ancient (3)kings (4)queens (5)mix (6)counting

4 略

5 This is a model answer:

Last summer holiday, I visited the famous Stone Forest in Kunming with my parents.When we got there by bus, we were completely attracted by the scenery.There was a beautiful lake, around which were many trees and hills.In fact, they were not hills.They were all stones in different shapes! Some looked like strong tigers; others looked like two birds feeding each other.How wonderful! A lot of visitors were among the stones.I had a good time there.I will never forget the beautiful Stone Forest!

▶ Unit 3 Language in use

1 **1.** Have you ever had a Western meal?

2. Have you ever lived in another city?

3. Have you ever entered a singing competition?

4. Have you ever travelled by train?

5. Have you ever travelled to the seaside?

6. Have you ever tried seafood?

7. Have you ever cooked dinner for your parents?

2 略

3 **1.** has/has not ever had

2. has/has not ever lived

3. has/has never entered

4. has/has not ever travelled

5. has/has not ever travelled

6. has/has never tried

7. has/has not ever cooked dinner

4 Dear David,

I'm having a wonderful time in Beijing.I've done so many things! I've seen the Beijing Opera.And I've eaten Beijing duck.I have also visited the Palace Museum.

There's only one thing I haven't done: I haven't climbed the Great Wall.

Bye for now,

Rob

5 **1.** competition **2.** spell **3.** pronounce **4.** tower **5.** afford

6

People	China	the US
Winnie	√	√
Diana	√	
Bob		

7 **1.** She has been to the US three times.

2. She would like to go to China again.

3. She has travelled around South China.

4. She travelled there by train.

5. Yes,he has.He has been all over Europe.

8 (1)d (2)c (3)b (4)e

9 略 **10** 略 **11** 略 **12** 略

Module 3 Journey to space

▶ Unit 1 Has it arrived yet?

1 earth—1;land—2;message—5;moon—7; news—3;planet—8;reach—4;scientist—6

2 (1)Mars (2)eight (3)messages (4)life

3 **1.** Making a model spaceship.

2. He isn't sure how to make it.

3. Scientists have sent a spaceship to Mars.

4. No. Because Mars is very far away, much farther than the moon.

4 (1)sent (2)arrived (3)planet (4)discovered (5)yet

5 略

6 These are possible answers:

We have...

(1) sent a spaceship to Mars.

(2) sent astronauts to the moon.

(3) sent astronauts to the space station.

We have not...

(1) sent a manned spaceship to Mars.

(2) discovered life on Mars.

(3) sent astronauts to Mars.

7 略

▶ Unit 2 We have not found life on any other planets yet.

1 略

2 Anyone out there?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

3 True sentences: 2, 3, 4

4 (1)solar system (2)none
(3)environment (4)communicate
(5)universe

5 **1.** It has landed on Mars.
2. It has discovered people on Mars.
3. Because they do not know how to send us a message.
4. Because they do not know how to visit us on the earth.

6 This is a model answer:

We have just received a message from our spaceship to Mars, and we have discovered people. These people haven't sent us a message because they don't know how to send a message. They haven't visited us on the earth because they don't know how to visit us. They have used parts from the other spaceships from the earth to make TVs, radios and cars.

▶ Unit 3 Language in use

1 (1)already (2)just (3)already (4)yet

2 **1.** been **2.** gone **3.** gone **4.** been

3 **1.** has gone **2.** have been **3.** have been
4. have gone

4 (1)watched (2)discovered (3)are trying
(4)haven't found (5)Have; seen

5 略

6 (1)just (2)read (3)been (4)never (5)met
(6)written (7)yet

7 **1.** six **2.** two **3.** excited **4.** twice
5. beautiful **6.** interested

8 略

9 (1)astronaut (2)moon (3)news (4)reach
(5)discovered (6)spaceships (7)yet

10 略 11 略 12 略

Module 4 Seeing the doctor

▶ Unit 1 I haven't done much exercise since I got my computer.

1 图一：headache 图二：stomach ache
图三：cough 图四：toothache 图五：fever

2

	cough	fever	headache	stomach ache	toothache
Betty	√	√			√
Daming			√	√	

3

Illness	Stomach ache and headache.
How long	For about three days.
Why	Fast food and no breakfast. Spend too much time in front of the computer.
What to do	Stop eating fast food and have breakfast every day. Get some exercise. Take some medicine.

4 (1) health (2) stomach ache
(3)cough (4)fever (5)temperature

5 略 6 略

▶ Unit 2 We have played football for a year now.

1 图一：The man is drinking while he is playing computer games.
图二：They are running.
图三：They are playing football.
图四：They are riding to work.
图五：She is taking a dog for a walk.
除了图一的活动之外，其余的活动都是健康的。

2 Paragraph 1: 图片五
Paragraph 2: 图片三
Paragraph 3: 图片四
Paragraph 4: 图片二

3 **1.** well **2.** exercise **3.** dog;walk **4.** first
5. year; fit **6.** underground **7.** bike
8. smile **9.** week **10.** enjoy **11.** weak

4 **1.** condition **2.** active **3.** awful **4.** member
5. Perhaps **6.** daily

5 These are possible answers:
Colin was very fat and often caught a cold.The doctor told him to do more exercise. He started running to lose weight. Now Colin is thin and very healthy.

6 This is a model answer:
Healthy living is important for us. Li Jin sets a good example for us. He does exercise every day. He likes sports, such as swimming, running and playing basketball. He goes to bed at ten in the evening and gets up at six in the morning. He looks after himself.He takes a bath every day and washes his hands before meals. He always has breakfast. He likes all kinds of healthy food, such as fish, eggs, vegetables and meat. He also eats a lot of fruits. So he looks very strong and healthy.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

▶ Unit 3 Language in use

1 略 **2** 略

3 **1.** been **2.** seen **3.** walked **4.** been
5. have; had

4 (1)well (2)coughs (3)exercise
(4)fast food (5)weak (6)cold
(7)stomach ache

5 (1)Can I help you?
(2) How long have you been like this?
(3)That's it.
(4) What's wrong with me?

6 1—b) 2—a) 3—c)

7 (1)awful (2)very tired (3)three days
(4)headache (5)stomach ache
(6)drink more water (7)three times
(8)stay in bed

8 略 **9** 略 **10** 略

Module 5 Cartoons

▶ Unit 1 It's time to watch a cartoon.

1 **1.** I like funny cartoons.
2. Yes, they do.
3. *Pleasant Goat and Big Big Wolf* or *Tom and Jerry*.

2 **1.** Betty likes exciting cartoons;Tony likes funny cartoons.
2. Betty and Tony say cartoons always have happy endings.
3. Tony thinks *Tom and Jerry* is funny.

3 **1.** He thinks it's more modern.
2. Because he thinks Superman is stronger than Spiderman.
3. Because they think Tom and Jerry are very funny.
4. Sometimes you can work with your competitor.

4 (1)cartoons (2)humorous (3)laughing
(4)heroes (5)fight (6)lessons

5 略

6 **1.**That's a real hero !
2. I don't think we agree.
3. They fight a lot, but they really love each other.
4. I think there's a lesson there!

7 **1.** —What cartoons do you like watching on TV?—I like watching *Superman* and *Tom and Jerry* on TV.
2. —When do you watch them?—I often watch them in the evening.
3. —Which one do you like best?Why?—I like *Tom and Jerry* best. Because it's very funny and it can make me feel relaxed.

▶ Unit 2 Tintin has been popular for over eighty years.

1 **1.** I know the Monkey King and Snoopy.
2. I like the Monkey King. Because I think he's very brave and clever.

2 a)

3 **1.** cute; ugly **2.** young **3.** hero **4.** monkeys
5. red; white **6.** newspaper; exciting
7. private; hard **8.** older

4 **1.** ugly; schoolbags **2.** leads
3. invented; copies **4.** private; satisfy

5 My favourite cartoon is *Tom and Jerry*. Tom is a cute cat and Jerry is a clever mouse. Tom tries his best to catch Jerry, but he has never succeeded. They keep fighting, but sometimes they protect each other and work together. We can learn a lesson from it.

▶ Unit 3 Language in use

1 (1)Have; ever read (2)have never read
(3)Are (4)have been (5)appeared
(6)works (7)has (8)do; have

2 (1)didn't like (2)ate (3)was watching
(4)looks (5)loses (6)grow (7)scored
(8)have loved

3 (1)laugh (2)mess (3)ugly
(4)private (5)own (6)create (7)satisfy

4 a—4;b—2;c—3;d—1

5 **1.** Because she has not understood it at first.
2. Because the policeman could catch the man in the lift, but he doesn't. They both just stand there, waiting for the lift to stop.

6 **1.** humorous faces **2.** came to life;smiled
3. jumped through a ring **4.** make films
5. with sound **6.** people of all ages
7. many more

7 略 **8** 略 **9** 略

Revision module A

1 ⓐ The music sounds too loud.
ⓑ The flower smells sweet.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

ⓒ The cake tastes delicious.

ⓓ The dress looks nice.

2 略

3 **1.** has never written **2.** left **3.** haven't met
4. Have you seen **5.** did you go **6.** called
7. arrived **8.** went

4 (1)just (2)yet (3)already (4)yet (5)already

5 (1)look (2)been (3)have got (4)eat (5)went
(6)drank (7)ate (8)drink (9)eat (10)eat

6 略

7 **1.**feel/look **2.** smell/look **3.** sounds
4. feels **5.** looks **6.** smell/taste

8 (1)created (2)fight (3)discovered
(4)laugh (5)expect

9 (1)caught a cold (2)arrived at (3)take part in
(4)at the moment (5)proud of

10

Questions	Daming	Betty
1. Who has a pet?	√	√
2. Who walks his/her dog?	√	√
3. Whose dog has entered a competition?	√	
4. Who can go to Qingdao?	√	

11 略 **12** 略

13 (1)the stars and planets
(2)a model space station
(3)the science museum
(4)more about space
(5)Thursday
(6)5:00 pm
(7)the Science Lab
(8)A famous scientist

14 略

Module 6 Hobbies

▶ Unit 1 Do you collect anything?

1 Tony—a,c Tony's dad—b,c
Tony's mum—d,e

2 **1.** She wants him to tidy up his room.
2. Tony thinks collecting stamps is expensive.
3. I think collecting toy cars takes up the most space.

3 Lingling's hobby: Collecting fans
Betty's hobbies: Collecting coins and notes and collecting stamps
Tony's hobby: Collecting old tickets

4 (1)somewhere (2)shelf (3)coins
(4)pounds (5)dollars (6)remember

5 略 **6** 略

▶ Unit 2 Hobbies can make you grow as a person.

1 略 **2** 略

3 **1.** Hobbies can make young people grow as a person, develop their interests and help them learn new skills.
2. Writing and playing volleyball.
3. In 2012.
4. Yes, they will.

4 **1.** activities **2.** skills
3. pleasure; success **4.** result

5 略

6 **1.** Some hobbies,such as reading and painting are very relaxing.
2. David likes writing as well as playing volleyball.
3. Many young people love David's book. As a result, his hobby has brought him success.

7 略

▶ Unit 3 Language in use

1 略 **2** 略

3 **1.** pleasure **2.** activities **3.** success
4. As a result **5.** come out

4 (1)tidying up (2)interesting
(3)hobbies (4)As a result (5)stamps
(6)such as (7)fan (8)model (9)ticket

5

Sports	Collections	Others
climbing, swimming, tennis, volleyball	fans, models, stamps, tickets	growing vegetables, looking after animals, painting, taking photos, camping

My hobby is climbing. Climbing can make me strong.
My hobby is collecting stamps. Collecting stamps can make me learn more about the world.
My hobby is growing vegetables. Growing vegetables can make me know more about the biology.
My hobby is taking photos. Taking photos can make me enjoy beautiful views.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

My hobby is playing volleyball. Playing volleyball can keep me fit.

6 Girls:singing, dancing
Both:playing table tennis
Boys:playing football,watching people play football
Because you can learn about new things and develop new skills.

7 (1)get ready for his journey (2)alone
(3)fish and other sea animals
(4)chocolate (5)go sailing with his friends

8 略 **9** 略 **10** 略 **11** 略

Module 7 Summer in Los Angeles

▶ Unit 1 Please write to me and send me some photos!

1 **1.** They are going to LA.
2. They are going to do an English course.
3. They'll stay for about four weeks.
4. They are going to be in a group of 20.

2 **1.** dollars √ **2.** shorts √ **5.** pens √
6. a dictionary √ **7.** passport √ **8.** sunglasses √
9. notebooks √

3 **1.** Can you help me? **2.** Sure.How can I help?
3. What else?
4. Oh,by the way, don't forget to take your passport.

4 (1)list (2)crazy (3)shorts (4)trousers
(5)weigh (6)total (7)weight (8)passport

5 **1.** clothes;take;LA
2. haven't got;sunglasses;buy;pair there
3. Many things;more expensive;America

6 略

7 (Model:)A: How are you going to travel to LA?
B: We're going there by plane.
A: Where are you going to stay?
B: In a hotel.

▶ Unit 2 Fill out our form and come to learn English in Los Angeles!

1 略

2 b)

3 Paragraph 1:e);Paragraph 2:a);
Paragraph 3:c);Paragraph 4:b);Paragraph 5:d)

4 **1.** The shortest course lasts for four weeks.
2. They set tests every week to check our progress.
3. Many students stay as a guest with an American family and take part in their daily life.They have meals with the family and do some activities with the family too.
4. We should pay for our course at least one month before it starts.

5 (1)certain (2)culture (3)friendships
(4)guest (5)depends on (6)provides
(7)tests (8)progress (9)fill out

6 略

▶ Unit 3 Language in use

1 **1.** and→b **2.** or→e **3.** or→f
4. but→c **5.** and→a **6.** but→d

2 (1)and (2)and (3)or (4)but

3 略

4 **1.** cost **2.** culture **3.** come **4.** studies
5. take part in **6.** progress

5 略

6 (1)information (2)experience (3)last
(4)provide (5)take part in (6)chance
(7)grow up

7 **1.** Wang Feng has left the message.
2. He's at home with his American family.
3. He thinks that they're really nice.
4. They're going to watch a beach volleyball match.
5. They think that they're really good.

8 **1.** The Music Planet **2.** France
3. $5 **4.** free drink

9 (Model:)

Two good things	Two bad things
1. We can make more friends with other students.	1. We can't have enough time to do other activities.
2. It helps us to get more knowledge.	2. We feel more tired.

10 略 **11** 略

Module 8 Time off

▶ Unit 1 I can hardly believe we're in the city centre.

1 The conversation is about going to Beihai Park.

2 **1.** has **2.** very popular
3. they spend the day there **4.** doesn't think

3 **1.** quiet **2.** lake **3.** over half **4.** sights
5. in the lake

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

4 1. He knows they are in the city centre.
2. She wants them to look at something.
3. Yes, he does.
4. He thinks they are spending their time badly.

5 略 6 略

▶ Unit 2 We thought somebody was moving about.

1 略

2 1. It's in Hunan Province.
2. It's about 480 square kilometres.
3. We can camp by a small lake.
4. Monkeys.
5. The mountains, forests, lakes and rivers.

3 略

4 a) 5 b) 3 c) 4 d) 2 e) 1 f) 6

5 1. human; shapes 2. kilometres
3. path 4. wish

6 (答案不唯一)
1. Yes, there are./ No, there aren't.
2. About 900 kilometres.
3. It is safer to walk along a path.
4. Paris.

7 Betty's email.

8 Zhangjiajie is about 480 square kilometres.It is about 400 kilometres from my home town.We can see the mountains, rivers, forests and many kinds of plants and animals.The strange shapes of tall rocks and beautiful sights are very special. We can stay in hotels or camps.That must be very interesting.

▶ Unit 3 Language in use

1 略

2 (1) will agree (2) go (3) want
(4) are (5) is (6) have to

3 1. pointed out 2. not; any more
3. woke up 4. famous for

4 (1)quiet (2)birds (3)shouting (4)air (5)clear
(6)along (7)crossed (8)climbed

5 (1)go climbing in the mountains,camp out,cook food
(2)15/fifteen
(3)mobile phone,lots of warm clothing
(4)camp out
(5)food cooked by themselves

6 1. B 2. A 3. C

7 略

8 Welcome to Huangshan Mountain for your holiday.

It's in Anhui Province. Huangshan Mountain is well known for its legendary pines,grotesque rocks, the sea of clouds and hot springs.

You can come at any time of the year,and stay here as long as you can.

"No mountain can be called a mountain compared with the Five Sacred Mountains. While the Huangshan Mountain is beyond them."—the famous saying shows us the beauty of Huangshan Mountain.

Many people have said that the trip to Huangshan Mountain is very enjoyable.

Wish you a happy visit.

Module 9 Friendship

▶ Unit 1 Could I ask if you've mentioned this to her?

1 1. Betty 2. out 3. Mrs King's friend

2 a)—2 b)—3 c)—1 d)—5 e)—4 f)—6

3 2. √ 3. √ 5. √

4 (1)separated (2)treats (3)herself
(4)lonely (5)regrets (6)patient
(7)introduce (8)encourage

5 1. Don't; is 2. Tell;started
3. tell;different 4. sure;herself;new school
5. encourage;join in

6 —This is Mary on the helpline.How can I help you?
—This is Tina speaking.I am shy and I don't have many friends.
—Well, do you want to make friends with others?
—Yes, but...
—OK.Please follow me.First, smile at others to show you're friendly.Second, try to talk with your classmates after class.Then join in the activities more.Day by day, your classmates will treat you as a friend.
—Thank you.I'll try!

▶ Unit 2 I believe that the world is what you think it is.

1 1. Last month.
2. I told my best friend that I was sad.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

3. I listened to music to feel better.
4. I can tell them some jokes to make them happy.

2 1. Yes. Because an important gift was a smile.
2. She felt lonely.
3. She feels happy.
4. Smile at the world and it will smile back.

3 (1)No one (2)lonely (3)make friends
(4)smiled (5)happy (6)best friend
(7)what you think (8)it will smile back

4 1. suggestion 2. treasure 3. trust
4. stick 5. glue 6. circle 7. silence

5 Paragraph 1 Paragraph 2
Paragraph 3 Paragraph 4
Paragraph 5 Paragraph 6
Paragraph 7 Paragraph 8

6 Last year, I didn't make friends with Judy.I usually talked to other students happily but left her alone and didn't tell her anything.She felt very puzzled.One day, a friend of mine told her that I was envious of her.She always got better grades than me.After that, she helped me with the schoolwork and we discussed the math problems in pairs.Finally, I did better in the lessons.Both of us felt pleased.Now I think a friend is just like a treasure.

▶ Unit 3 Language in use

1 1—c) 2—e) 3—d) 4—b) 5—a)

2 (1)if/whether (2)if/whether (3)what
(4)when (5)if/whether (6)why

3 1. is coming tomorrow
2. he doesn't like apples
3. we'll travel
4. the new movie will be on
5. he did his homework or not

4 (1)b) (2)a) (3)e) (4)d) (5)c)

5 (1)worried (2)trust (3)lonely
(4)include (5)suggestion

6 (1)followed (2)treasure
(3)circle of friends (4)stayed in touch

7 b)

8 a)—2 b)—3 c)—1

9 1. My best friend is a tall and thin girl.She is helpful and easy-going. Three years ago, we became deskmates.
2. We usually helped each other.
3. We have fun in playing table tennis.
4. I think our friendship will stay the same in the future, because we both believe a friend is just like a priceless treasure.

10 略 **11** 略 **12** 略

Module 10 On the radio

▶ Unit 1 I hope that you can join us one day.

1 government √ sports √

2 1. the latest news from China and around the world
2. three days
3. China;England

3 1. we are on air
2. the latest national and international news
3. speak English really well
4. do interviews

4 1. interviews 2. international
3. national 4. avoid 5. background

5 略 **6** 略

7 1. I like listening to music.
2. I don't like listening to talk shows.
3. The programme that I listened to the last time was a music programme.
4. We should keep studying hard and be interested in it.

▶ Unit 2 It seemed that they were speaking to me in person.

1 略

2 b)

3 1. the radio manager 2. in radio
3. sat close to the radio in the living room
4. small radio stations 5. Internet radio
6. first real job in radio

4 (1)seems (2)studio (3)at the age of
(4)purpose (5)articles (6)listeners

5 略 **6** 略

▶ Unit 3 Language in use

1 1—b) 2—c) 3—a) 4—e) 5—d)

2 (1)who (2)how (3)when (4)that
(5)why (6)if

3 (1)won the English Writing Competition
(2)Lingling was surprised
(3)the prize was (4)it was
(5)to study hard

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

4 (1)show you around (2)are on air
(3)making noise (4)in person (5)the end of

5 b)

6 runs; Kate listens to the latest news on the radio; starts; interviews; newsreader; five weather report; phone; talk to; finishes

7 (1)present music shows for the school radio
(2)youngest (3)four (4)work hard
(5)be interested in something and keep on practising

8 略 **9** 略 **10** 略 **11** 略

Revision module B

1 **1.** —Can you tell me how I can make friends with others?
—You should be friendly to them.
2. —Can you tell me why they don't talk to me?
—You should tell them the truth.
3. —Can you tell me who I should talk to?
—You should talk to your friends.

2 **1.** b) **2.** a) **3.** b) **4.** b) **5.** b) **6.** d)

3 (1) where (2) why (3) that (4) how old
(5) how long (6) when (7) if

4 (1)looking forward (2)will be (3)takes off
(4)have never been (5)will enjoy (6)told
(7)will/can understand (8)wrote
(9)to remember (10)to know

5 (1) but (2) and (3) but (4)but (5)or

6

Hobby	Holiday	Friendship	News
chess, fan, painting, stamp, travel	beach, camp, relaxing	classmate, get on well, make friends, stay in touch	magazine, programme, the latest news

My hobby is collecting stamps.
I'm sure my holiday will be relaxing.
I get on well with my classmates.
The latest news will be on the programme.

7 略

8 **1.** pay for **2.** think of **3.** wake up
4. know about **5.** ask for

9 (1)mentioned (2) introduced
(3)encouraged (4)included (5) separated
(6)provides (7)depend

10 (1)important news stories
(2)important and famous people
(3)video camera (4)news reports
(5)camera (6)small television station

11 略

12 I can't remember the new words.
I can't understand what the others say.
I am afraid to speak English in public.
I don't know the grammar.
...
—I can't remember the new words.
—You can use word maps.
—I can't understand what the others say.
—You should listen to the English radio.
—I am afraid to speak English in public.
—You should join an English club and speak English as much as possible.
—I don't know the grammar.
—You can ask the teacher for help.
...

13 **1.** *Treasure Island* is a famous story.
2. Because Captain Flint,a pirate having lots of gold, hid his gold on an island before he died.
3. Jim Hawkins is the hero.
4. Jim and his friends buy a ship, get some men and go to the island to look for the gold.

14 b) d) c) f) a) e)

15 **1.** Because they want to go to the island to look for the gold.
2. They are all pirates.
3. Because they take the map.
4. It's because of Ben Gunn.
5. Because he helps Jim and his friends.

16 **1.** He becomes a good man in the end.
2. Because it is very dangerous to go looking for gold.
3. Yes, I'd love to.Because it's exciting.
4. Yes,I do.Because the story is very exciting.

17 I like the film *Toy Story*(1995).It's an animated film (动画片)about toys.They come to themselves when children and adults aren't around.The heroes are the toys, Woody, Buzz Lightyear, Bo Peep and so on.I like it because the storylines are not complicated and the characters use the simple language.It's good for us to learn English.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

廿年磨一剑 · 匠心铸经典

教师的备课笔记 · 学生的随身家教 · 家长的辅导工具



责任编辑：刘　军
封面题字：沈　鹏
封面设计：典点瑞泰
荣德基官方网站：http://www.rudder.com.cn
荣德基天猫旗舰店：http://rongdeji.tmall.com
客服热线：182 1039 5892
荣德基初中频道
ISBN 978-7-5553-0195-0
定价：39.80元

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料